

## Workshop Manual Audi TT 2015 ➤

### General body repairs, interior

Edition 11.2021



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

### Repair Group

- 00 - Technical data
- 68 - Interior equipment
- 69 - Passenger protection
- 70 - Trim, insulation
- 72 - Seat frames
- 74 - Seat - padding, covers



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

---

**All rights reserved.**  
**No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.**



## Contents

<b>00 - Technical data</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1 Safety information</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system	2
1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components	3
1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolators (pyrotechnic components)	5
1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags	5
1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags	6
1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag	6
1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version	7
1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version	7
1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident	8
1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident	9
1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered	10
1.12 Checking seat belts	10
1.13 Checking belt webbing	10
1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)	11
1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle	12
1.16 Functional check of belt buckle	12
1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate	12
1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident	12
1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver seat belt; country-specific version)	13
1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident	13
1.21 Safety regulations for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror	14
<b>2 Repair instructions</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 Contact corrosion	15
2.2 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring	15
<b>68 - Interior equipment</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels</b>	<b>16</b>
1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels	16
1.2 Assembly overview - dash panel cover (driver side)	17
1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim	18
1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment	19
1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)	21
1.6 Removing and installing upper steering column trim	22
1.7 Removing and installing lower steering column trim	23
1.8 Removing and installing glove compartment opening mechanism	24
1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove compartment opening mechanism	26
1.10 Removing and installing glove compartment	27
1.11 Removing and installing glove compartment cover	31
1.12 Removing and installing restrictor for glove compartment cover	32
<b>2 Equipment</b>	<b>34</b>
2.1 Assembly overview - sun visors	34
2.2 Assembly overview - windbreak	35
2.3 Removing and installing sun visor	36
2.4 Removing and installing sun visor centre mount	37
2.5 Removing and installing windbreak	39
<b>3 Centre console</b>	<b>44</b>
3.1 Assembly overview - centre console	44



3.2	Removing and installing rear centre console trim .....	50
3.3	Removing and installing cover for centre console .....	52
3.4	Removing and installing centre console insert .....	53
3.5	Removing and installing front centre console storage compartment .....	55
3.6	Removing and installing centre console .....	57
3.7	Removing and installing trim panel for centre console .....	62
3.8	Removing and installing bracket for centre console .....	64
<b>4</b>	<b>Centre armrest (front) .....</b>	<b>66</b>
4.1	Assembly overview - front centre armrest .....	66
4.2	Removing and installing front centre armrest .....	67
<b>5</b>	<b>Interior mirror .....</b>	<b>68</b>
5.1	Assembly overview - interior mirror .....	68
5.2	Removing and installing interior mirror .....	69
5.3	Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off .....	72
5.4	Switching compass display on and off .....	73
5.5	Setting magnetic deflection zone .....	73
5.6	Calibrating digital compass .....	74
5.7	Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles .....	74
5.8	Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map .....	75
5.9	Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror .....	81
<b>69</b>	<b>Passenger protection .....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Seat belts .....</b>	<b>83</b>
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points .....	83
1.2	Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt .....	85
1.3	Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt .....	88
1.4	Assembly overview - front belt buckle .....	88
1.5	Assembly overview - rear belt buckle .....	89
1.6	Removing and installing front three-point seat belt .....	90
1.7	Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt .....	97
1.8	Removing and installing rear belt guide .....	98
1.9	Removing and installing front belt guide .....	99
1.10	Removing and installing front belt end fitting .....	101
1.11	Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting .....	101
1.12	Removing and installing front belt buckle .....	102
1.13	Removing and installing rear belt buckle .....	103
<b>2</b>	<b>Child seat anchors .....</b>	<b>104</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - front child seat anchors .....	104
2.2	Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors .....	104
2.3	Removing and installing front child seat anchor .....	106
2.4	Removing and installing rear child seat anchor .....	106
<b>3</b>	<b>Airbag system .....</b>	<b>108</b>
3.1	Overview of fitting locations - airbag system .....	108
<b>4</b>	<b>Airbag control unit .....</b>	<b>111</b>
4.1	Assembly overview - airbag control unit .....	111
4.2	Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 .....	111
<b>5</b>	<b>Battery isolation igniter .....</b>	<b>114</b>
5.1	Assembly overview - battery isolation igniter .....	114
5.2	Removing and installing battery isolation igniter .....	114
<b>6</b>	<b>Airbag (driver side) .....</b>	<b>118</b>
6.1	Assembly overview - driver airbag .....	118
6.2	Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters .....	119
6.3	Renewing connector at airbag .....	122
<b>7</b>	<b>Airbag (front passenger side) .....</b>	<b>125</b>

7.1	Assembly overview - front passenger airbag	125
7.2	Removing and installing front passenger airbag unit with igniters	127
7.3	Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side	131
<b>8</b>	<b>Side airbags</b>	<b>133</b>
8.1	Assembly overview - front side airbag	133
8.2	Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter	134
8.3	Removing and installing wire for side airbag	138
<b>9</b>	<b>Curtain airbags</b>	<b>143</b>
9.1	Assembly overview - curtain airbag	143
9.2	Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter	143
<b>10</b>	<b>Knee airbags</b>	<b>149</b>
10.1	Assembly overview - knee airbag	149
10.2	Removing and installing knee airbag with igniter	151
<b>11</b>	<b>Crash sensors for airbags</b>	<b>157</b>
11.1	Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags	157
11.2	Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side G283	158
11.3	Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor G179/G180	161
11.4	Removing and installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256	165
<b>12</b>	<b>Seat position sensor</b>	<b>169</b>
12.1	Assembly overview - seat position sensor	169
12.2	Removing and installing seat position sensor	171
<b>13</b>	<b>Belt-fastened recognition system</b>	<b>175</b>
13.1	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger side G128	175
<b>14</b>	<b>Seat occupied recognition system</b>	<b>176</b>
14.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system	176
14.2	Removing and installing seat occupied sensor	177
<b>15</b>	<b>Pedestrian protection</b>	<b>181</b>
15.1	Assembly overview - pedestrian protection	181
15.2	Removing and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection G579	183
15.3	Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection G693	186
15.4	Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598/G599	189
<b>70</b>	<b>Trim, insulation</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Front door trim</b>	<b>192</b>
1.1	Assembly overview - front door trim	192
1.2	Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	195
1.3	Removing and installing trim panel	196
1.4	Removing and installing front door trim	197
1.5	Removing and installing front armrest	200
1.6	Removing and installing front door puller	201
1.7	Removing and installing switch trim	201
1.8	Removing and installing interior door handle	202
1.9	Removing and installing triangular trim	203
<b>2</b>	<b>Dash panel</b>	<b>205</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - dash panel	205
2.2	Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)	208
2.3	Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel	209
2.4	Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert	210
2.5	Removing and installing loudspeaker trim	213
2.6	Removing and installing dash panel	214
2.7	Removing and installing dash panel vents	221
2.8	Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)	222
2.9	Removing and installing side defroster vent	223
<b>3</b>	<b>Dash panel cross member</b>	<b>224</b>



3.1	Assembly overview - dash panel cross member	224
3.2	Removing and installing crash bar	227
3.3	Removing and installing dash panel cross member	228
<b>4</b>	<b>Passenger compartment trim panels</b>	<b>233</b>
4.1	Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels	233
4.2	Assembly overview - sill panel moulding	235
4.3	Assembly overview - A-pillar trim	236
4.4	Assembly overview - C-pillar trim	237
4.5	Assembly overview - windscreen frame trim	238
4.6	Assembly overview - side trim	239
4.7	Assembly overview - back panel trim	240
4.8	Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering	242
4.9	Assembly overview - rear shelf	244
4.10	Assembly overview - rollover bar trim	245
4.11	Assembly overview - convertible roof compartment trim	246
4.12	Removing and installing sill panel moulding	247
4.13	Removing and installing A-pillar trim	249
4.14	Removing and installing windscreen frame trim	255
4.15	Removing and installing C-pillar trim	257
4.16	Removing and installing side trim	258
4.17	Removing and installing back panel trim	260
4.18	Removing and installing foot rest	265
4.19	Removing and installing floor covering	267
4.20	Removing and installing rear shelf	269
4.21	Removing and installing rollover bar trim	270
4.22	Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim	271
<b>5</b>	<b>Luggage compartment trim panels</b>	<b>276</b>
5.1	Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels	276
5.2	Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim	278
5.3	Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor	282
5.4	Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim	282
5.5	Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim	285
5.6	Removing and installing lower rear lid trim	286
5.7	Removing and installing upper rear lid trim	290
5.8	Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim	291
5.9	Removing and installing luggage compartment trim	294
5.10	Removing and installing lock carrier trim	296
5.11	Removing and installing fastening ring	297
5.12	Removing and installing grip for rear luggage compartment floor	297
<b>6</b>	<b>Roof trim panels</b>	<b>300</b>
6.1	Assembly overview - moulded headliner	300
6.2	Removing and installing moulded headliner	301
6.3	Attaching roof reinforcement to body	304
<b>72</b>	<b>Seat frames</b>	<b>306</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Overview - seat versions</b>	<b>306</b>
1.1	Overview of fitting locations - seat versions	306
<b>2</b>	<b>Front seats</b>	<b>309</b>
2.1	Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components	309
2.2	Assembly overview - front seat	312
2.3	Assembly overview - backrest release mechanism and easy entry system	314
2.4	Assembly overview - front seat backrest	316
2.5	Assembly overview - seat pan	321
2.6	Removing and installing front seat	329
2.7	Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter	335

2.8	Attaching front seat to seat repair stand	338
2.9	Removing and installing seat height adjuster	338
2.10	Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit	340
2.11	Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit	342
2.12	Removing and installing front seat backrest	347
2.13	Removing and installing head restraint	358
2.14	Removing and installing head restraint guide	359
2.15	Dismantling and assembling seat pan	361
2.16	Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism	384
2.17	Removing and installing backrest release mechanism	385
2.18	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176/E177	389
2.19	Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125/V126/V129/V130	390
<b>3</b>	<b>Rear seats</b>	<b>393</b>
3.1	Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats	393
3.2	Assembly overview - rear seat backrest	393
3.3	Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats	395
3.4	Removing and installing rear seat backrest	397
3.5	Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism	400
3.6	Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest	400
<b>4</b>	<b>Front seat pneumatic system</b>	<b>403</b>
4.1	Connection diagram - pneumatic system	403
4.2	Assembly overview - pneumatic system	404
4.3	Checking pneumatic system	405
4.4	Severing and connecting pneumatic lines	412
4.5	Servicing pneumatic lines	414
4.6	Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support	414
4.7	Removing and installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster	415
4.8	Removing and installing control unit for front multicontour seat J872/J873	417
4.9	Removing and installing compressor for multicontour seat V439/V440	419
<b>74</b>	<b>Seat - padding, covers</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>Covers and padding on front seats</b>	<b>421</b>
1.1	Assembly overview - seat pan cover and padding	421
1.2	Assembly overview - backrest cover and padding	424
1.3	Assembly overview - seat heater elements	425
1.4	Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding	427
1.5	Removing and installing backrest cover and padding	433
1.6	Separating seat pan cover and padding	442
1.7	Separating backrest cover and padding	443
1.8	Removing and installing seat heater element Z6/Z8	444
1.9	Removing and installing backrest heater element Z7/Z9	445
<b>2</b>	<b>Covers and padding on rear seats</b>	<b>446</b>
2.1	Assembly overview - cover and padding	446
2.2	Removing and installing cover and padding	447
2.3	Detaching cover from padding	449

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 00 – Technical data

### 1 Safety information

(ARL007796; Edition 11.2021)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



[⇒ p1.1 recuations when working on vehicles with start/stop system", page 2](#)

[⇒ p1.2 recuations when working on pyrotechnic components", page 3](#)

[⇒ t1.3 ransporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolators \(pyrotechnic components\)", page 5](#)

[⇒ s1.4 afety regulations for side airbags", page 5](#)

[⇒ s1.5 afety regulations for curtain airbags", page 6](#)

[⇒ r1.6 egulations for crash sensors \(pressure sensors\) for front side airbag", page 6](#)

[⇒ s1.7 afety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version", page 7](#)

[⇒ f1.8 or dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version", page 7](#)

[⇒ p1.9 yrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident", page 8](#)

[⇒ a1.10 irbag mounting components following an accident", page 9](#)

[⇒ i1.11 n which no airbag was triggered", page 10](#)

[⇒ s1.12 eat belts", page 10](#)

[⇒ b1.13 elt webbing", page 10](#)

[⇒ a1.14 utomatic belt retractor \(locking action\)", page 11](#)

[⇒ i1.15 nspection of belt buckle", page 12](#)

[⇒ c1.16 heck of belt buckle", page 12](#)

[⇒ g1.17 uide fittings and latch plate", page 12](#)

[⇒ s1.18 curing components and anchorage points following an accident", page 12](#)

[⇒ c1.19 hild seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats \(not for driver seat belt; country-specific version\)", page 13](#)

[⇒ c1.20 hild seat anchors following an accident", page 13](#)

[⇒ r1.21 egulations for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 14](#)

## **1.1 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system**

Please note the following when working on vehicles with start/stop system:





**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.*

- ◆ *On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically on demand.*
- ◆ *Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch off ignition, if required switch on ignition again).*

## 1.2 Safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components



**Note**

*Pyrotechnic components are:*

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioners
- ◆ Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- ◆ Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

**General notes** issued unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- ◆ Testing, removal, installation and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- ◆ There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- ◆ Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- ◆ Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ When working on the airbag system (pyrotechnic components, the airbag control unit -J234-, wiring), always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- ◆ After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- ◆ The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles in which the battery is in the passenger compartment.
- ◆ If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver's seat with the seat in the rearmost position.
- ◆ Observe measures to be taken after connecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- ◆ Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching earthed metal components such as the door striker plate.



- ◆ Always wash your hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- ◆ If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- ◆ The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- ◆ When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- ◆ Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

#### Special notes for driver's and passenger's airbags

- ◆ Following removal, driver and front passenger airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:


- 1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 2 - Take new airbag unit out of packaging and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.
- 3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.
- 4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

#### Special notes for belt tensioners

- ◆ When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is a high danger and injury risk.
- ◆ Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- ◆ Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- ◆ When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety information, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- ◆ Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

### 1.3 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolators (pyrotechnic components)

- ◆ Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.
- ◆ Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- ◆ Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *This does not apply to Wankel-type belt tensioners. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- ◆ *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

### 1.4 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- ◆ We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- ◆ It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- ◆ The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- ◆ When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- ◆ All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- ◆ We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- ◆ When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- ◆ For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- ◆ Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- ◆ Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- ◆ All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.



- ◆ If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- ◆ Never pierce the seat cover fabric with upholstery needles or other sharp objects in the vicinity of the airbag, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- and the seat occupied sensor mat.

## 1.5 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- ◆ Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- ◆ Trim repairs (A-pillar trim (top), B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- ◆ When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- ◆ When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag, always remove the complete unit.
- ◆ When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- ◆ After removal, store curtain airbag units in their transportation containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- ◆ After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- ◆ It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- ◆ Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag units.
- ◆ Folding may be possible, provided you are careful not to cause damage (in particular to protective cover).

## 1.6 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- ◆ Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- ◆ Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- ◆ The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- ◆ Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- ◆ Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of

less than  $-40\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).

- ◆ The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- ◆ Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.
- ◆ The retaining clips for the door trim provide a seal for the system. Renew retaining clips if necessary.

## 1.7 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- ◆ Following any repair work on the passenger seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is disengaged, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed  $\Rightarrow$  Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- ◆ The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- ◆ Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition system (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- ◆ Make sure that the mat, the fleece and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- ◆ Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- ◆ Renew all upholstery clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- ◆ The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $+40^{\circ}\text{C}$  if airbag units 8.R and 9.\* are installed, and only between  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $35^{\circ}\text{C}$  if airbag unit 10.\* is installed.
- ◆ Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- ◆ The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

## 1.8 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

- ◆ The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered  $\Rightarrow$  Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ If the seat rail and/or seat pan has/have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must

be renewed using the "seat occupied recognition service kit".  
The "basic setting" for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

## 1.9 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester

### Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- ◆ If message "Control unit defective" appears after event memory is interrogated
- ◆ If housing is damaged
- ◆ In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

### Always renew the following:

- ◆ All triggered airbag units

### If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Dash panel
- ◆ Supports for front passenger airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

### If driver airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Return ring with slip ring
- ◆ All front airbag sensors at front end
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

### If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- ◆ Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ Padding
- ◆ Folding rear seat backrest: side padding (if fitted)
- ◆ Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

### Additionally:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered
- ◆ Belt buckles for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened

- ◆ Belt height adjusters (manual and electrical) for all automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered while belt was fastened
- If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a vehicle diagnostic tester.
- In “15 - Airbag” of the »Guided Fault Finding« function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.
- Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed.



#### Note

- ◆ *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- ◆ *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*
- ◆ *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts ⇒ [page 10](#).*
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual inspection): all damaged components
- After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

## 1.10 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

**It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to »reshape« or rework damaged components.**

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

#### If front passenger airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Dash panel cross member: It must be possible to install front passenger airbag unit and supports so that they are free of stress. Otherwise cross member must also be renewed.
- ◆ Check glove compartment for damage. Renew glove compartment if it is damaged.

#### If driver airbag has been triggered:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.



## 1.11 Accident in which no airbag was triggered

- ◆ Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp -K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

## 1.12 Checking seat belts



### WARNING

*A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.*

### Points to check:

- ◆ Check belt webbing ⇒ [page 10](#) .
- ◆ Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ [page 11](#) .
- ◆ Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ [page 12](#) .
- ◆ Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ [page 13](#) .



### Caution

*If customers decide not to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.*

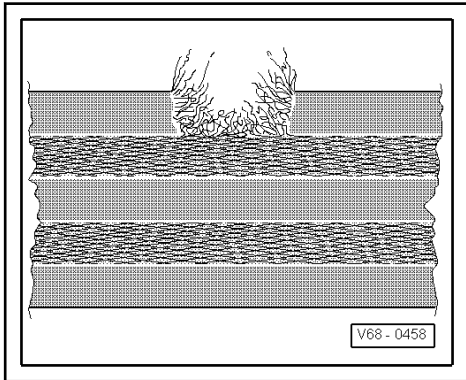
## 1.13 Checking belt webbing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

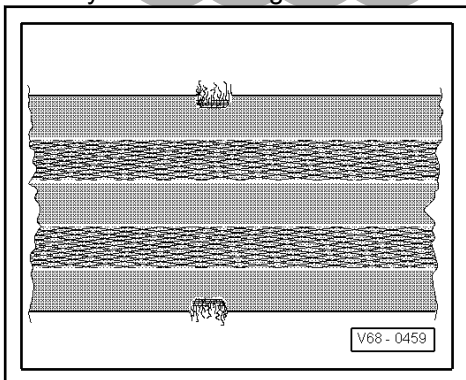
### Procedure

- Pull belt as far as it will go out of automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.
- Inspect belt webbing for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual.
- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1 - Belt webbing is cut, torn or chafed

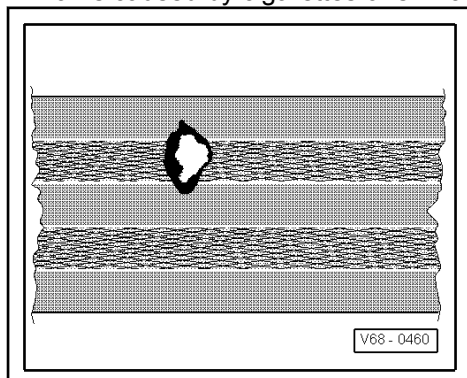




- 2 – Frayed fabric at edge of belt



- 3 - Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar



for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not  
 AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability  
 of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 1.14 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the automatic belt retractor.

### First check

- Pull belt out of automatic belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.
- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of automatic belt retractor has changed.
- The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).



## Second check



### WARNING

*For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.*

- Fasten seat belt.
- Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).
- If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

## 1.15 Visual inspection of belt buckle

- Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.
- If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

## 1.16 Functional check of belt buckle

### Checking belt buckle

- Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

### Checking release function

- Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.
- Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.



### WARNING

*Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.*

## 1.17 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

- Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.
- If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

## 1.18 Checking securing components and anchorage points following an accident

- ◆ Latch plate deformed (strained)
  - ◆ Height adjustment not functioning
- Retrieved by copyright (©) for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- Renew anchorage points.

 **Note**

*In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (such as wear), only the part that is damaged should be renewed.*

## 1.19 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

### Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

- ◆ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

### Correct function

- ◆ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ◆ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

### Deactivating

- ◆ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last approx. 100 mm.
- ◆ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.

If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

## 1.20 Checking child seat anchors following an accident

### Points to check:

- ◆ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

## 1.21 Safety regulations for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror



### WARNING

- ◆ *The interior mirror glass consists of several layers and contains an electrolyte which gives the mirror its properties. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- ◆ *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- ◆ *Should liquid electrolyte come into contact with the eyes or skin, rinse it out/off immediately with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, consult a doctor immediately.*



### Caution

*If liquid electrolyte escapes from a broken mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2 Repair instructions

⇒ [c2.1 orrosion", page 15](#)

⇒ [a2.2 nd attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring", page 15](#)

### 2.1 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

Additionally, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

#### Please note:

- ◆ We recommend using only genuine replacement parts: these have been fully tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- ◆ We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- ◆ Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

### 2.2 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic lines or electrical wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

## 68 – Interior equipment

### 1 Storage compartments/covers/trim panels

⇒ [o1.1 fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels", page 16](#)

⇒ [o1.2 verview - dash panel cover \(driver side\)", page 17](#)

⇒ [o1.3 verview - steering column trim", page 18](#)

⇒ [o1.4 verview - glove compartment", page 19](#)

⇒ [a1.5 nd installing dash panel cover \(driver side\)", page 21](#)

⇒ [a1.6 nd installing upper steering column trim", page 22](#)

⇒ [a1.7 nd installing lower steering column trim", page 23](#)

⇒ [a1.8 nd installing glove compartment opening mechanism", page 24](#)

⇒ [a1.9 nd installing lock cylinder for glove compartment opening mechanism", page 26](#)

⇒ [a1.10 nd installing glove compartment", page 27](#)

⇒ [a1.11 nd installing glove compartment cover", page 31](#)

⇒ [a1.12 nd installing restrictor for glove compartment cover", page 32](#)

#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - storage compartments/covers/trim panels

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Centre console

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 44](#)

2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 17](#)

3 - Steering column trim

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 18](#)

4 - Cross member

- For dash panel
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 224](#)

5 - Dash panel

**! WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

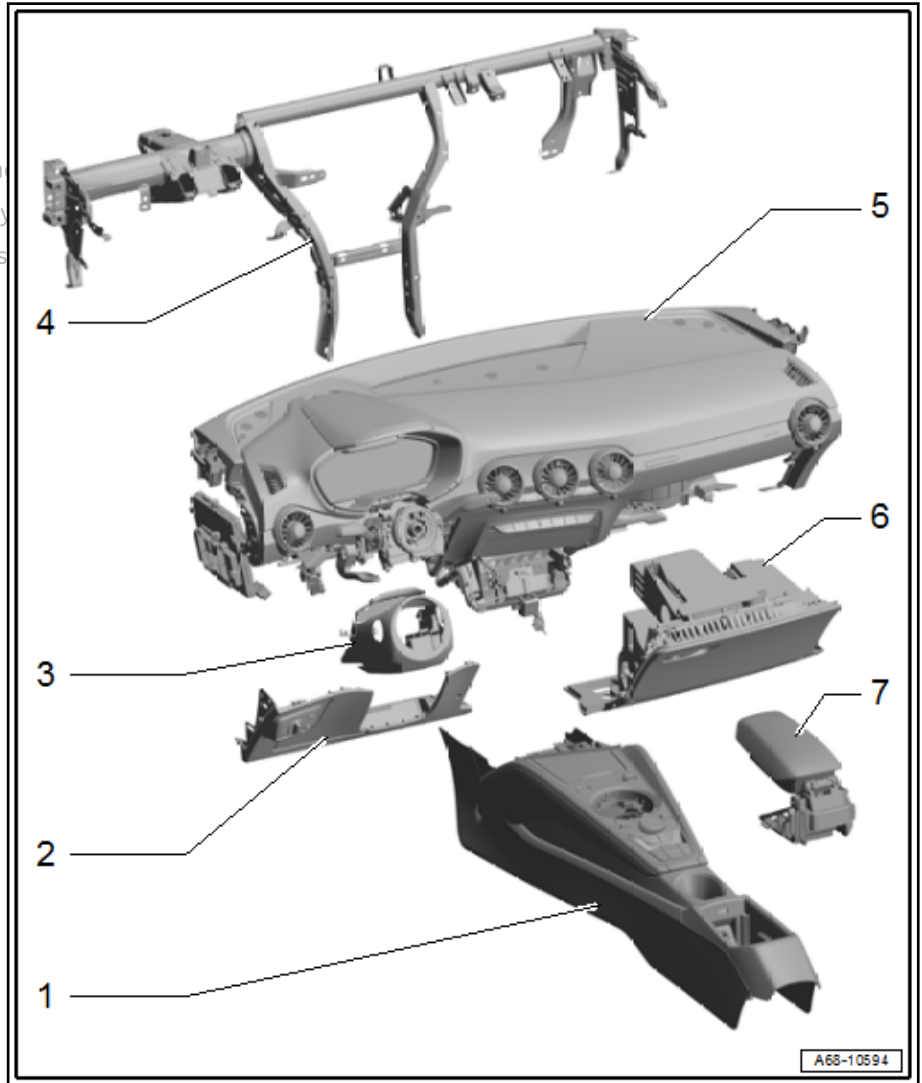
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 205](#)

6 - Glove compartment

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 19](#)

7 - Centre armrest (front)

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 66](#)



## 1.2 Assembly overview - dash panel cover (driver side)

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



**1 - Left footwell light -W9-**

- Depending on version
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

**2 - Dash panel cover (driver side)**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 21](#)

**3 - Bolt**

- 3 Nm

**4 - Cover (side)**

- For dash panel
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 208](#)

**5 - Clip**

- For cover (side)
- 5x
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- Insert in cover

**6 - Light switch -E1-**

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

**7 - Dash panel temperature sensor -G56-**

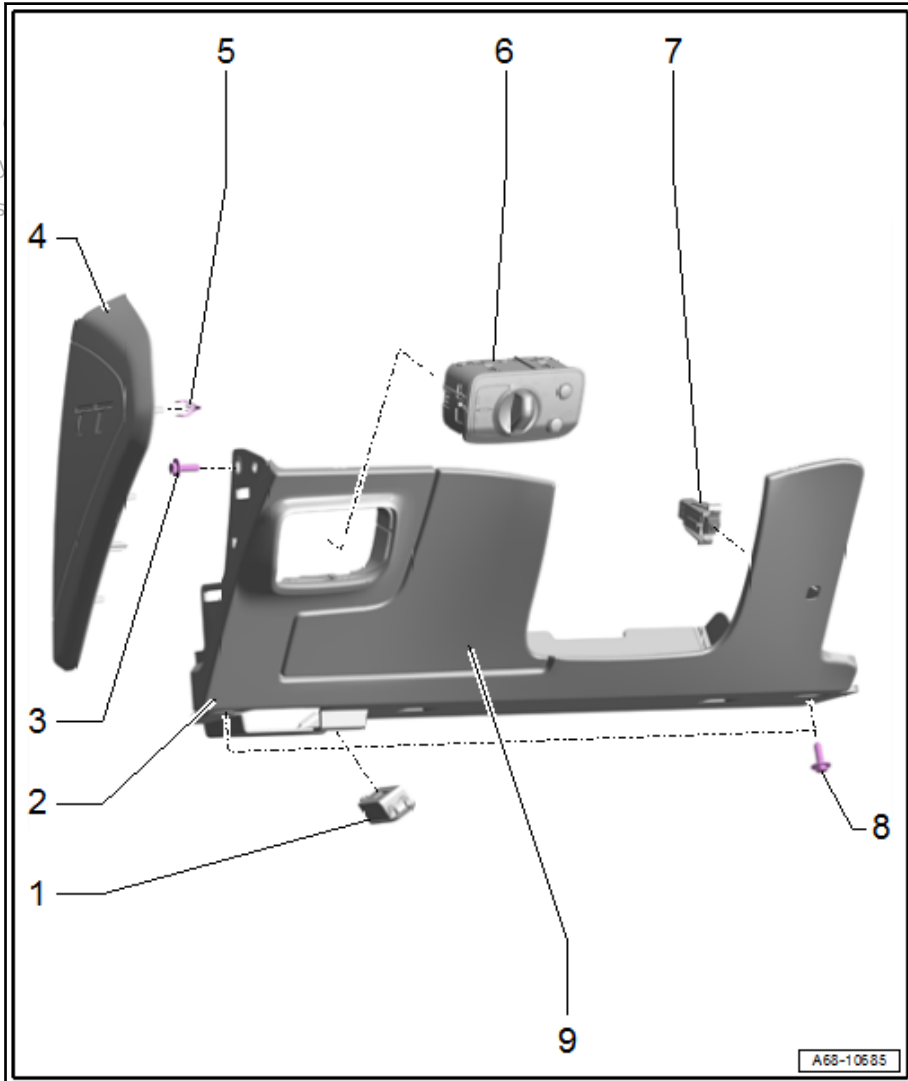
- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Overview of fitting locations - air conditioner; Overview of fitting locations - components in passenger compartment (front)

**8 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 3 Nm

**9 - Cover**

- For fuse holder C -SC-
- Clipped into dash panel cover



**1.3 Assembly overview - steering column trim**





**1 - Bolt**

- 2.5 Nm

**2 - Steering column trim (bottom)**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted, unless authorized by AUDI AG with respect to the correctness of information.

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 23](#)

**3 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 2.5 Nm

**4 - Steering column switch module**

- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

**5 - Steering column trim (top)**

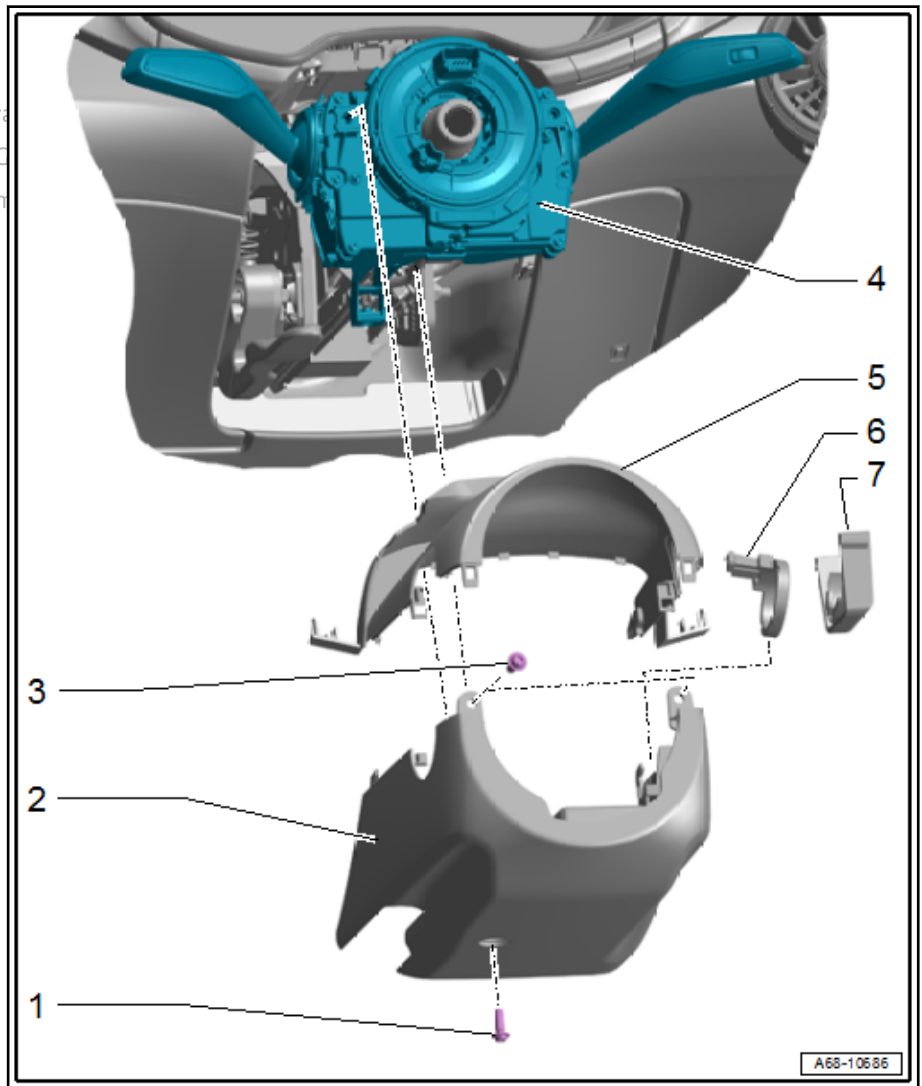
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 22](#)
- Press on until it engages audibly

**6 - Immobiliser reader coil - D2-**

- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

**7 - Mounting**

- For reader coil
- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module



**1.4 Assembly overview - glove compartment**

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



**1 - Hinge pin**

- 2x
- For glove compartment cover

**2 - Glove compartment opening mechanism**

- Removing and installing => [page 24](#)
- Removing and installing lock cylinder => [page 26](#)
- Press into glove compartment cover until it engages audibly

**3 - Glove compartment cover**

- Removing and installing => [page 31](#)
- TT Roadster: With glove compartment locking motor -V224-

**4 - Service cover**

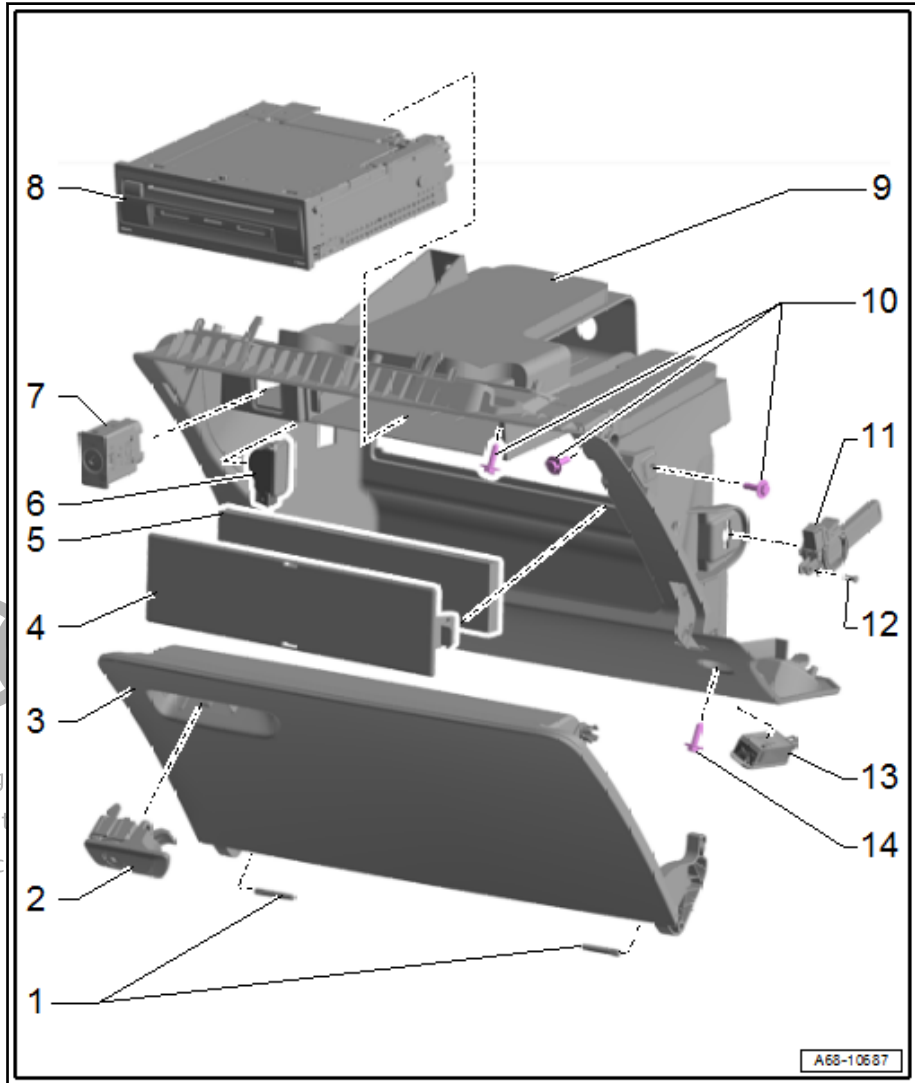
- For pollen filter
- Push on until it engages audibly

**5 - Cover**


permitted unless au

**6 - Glove compartment light -W6-**

- Overview of fitting locations => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel



**7 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-**



**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*

- Depending on version
- Removing and installing => [page 131](#)
- Press into opening until it engages audibly

**8 - Control unit 1 for information electronics -J794-**

- For correct version, refer to => Electronic parts catalogue
- Overview of fitting locations => Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

**9 - Glove compartment**

- For correct version, refer to => Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing => [page 27](#)

**10 - Bolt**

- 6x
- 3 Nm

**11 - Restrictor**

- For glove compartment cover
- With glove compartment light switch -E26-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 32](#)

**12 - Hinge pin**

- For restrictor

**13 - Right footwell light -W10-**

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel

**14 - Bolt**

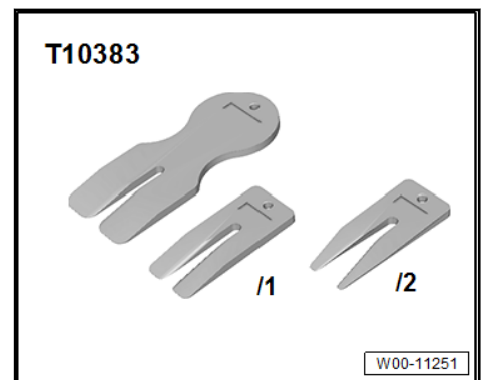
- 2x
- 3 Nm

**1.5 Removing and installing dash panel cover (driver side)**

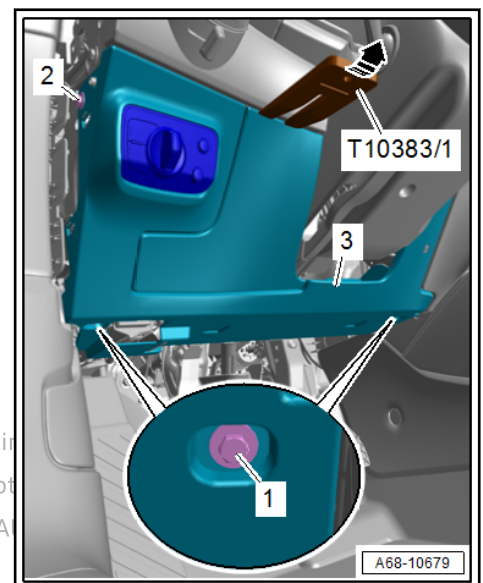
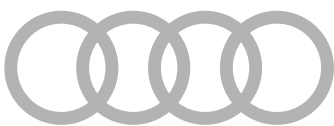
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



**Removing**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG

- Remove side dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 208](#) .



- Depending on equipment version: Remove footwell light  
=> Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in dash panel.
- Remove bolts -1- at bottom.
- Remove bolt -2- at side.
- Unclip dash panel cover (driver side) -3- from dash panel -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1-.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector at dash panel temperature sensor -G56-.
- Unplug electrical connector for light switch.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

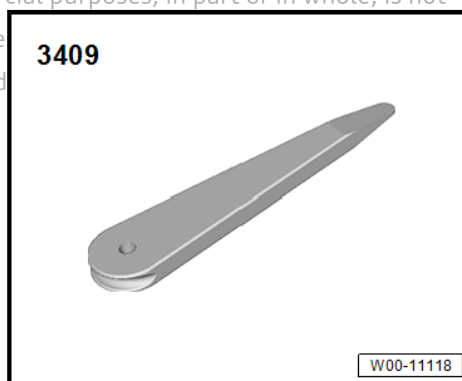
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [01.2 overview - dash panel cover \(driver side\)](#)", page 17

## 1.6 Removing and installing upper steering column trim

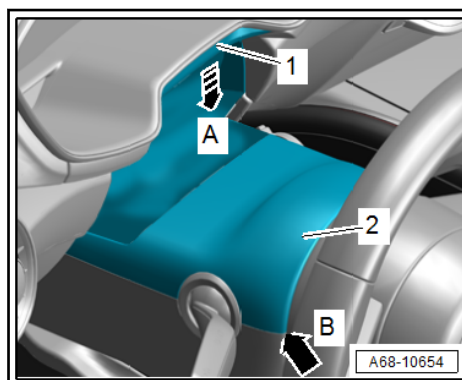
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



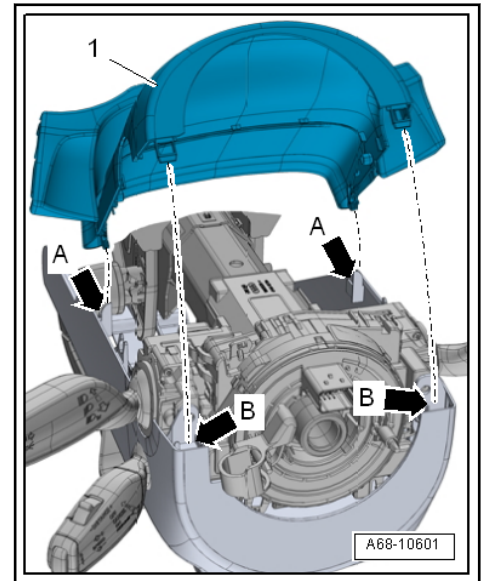
### Removing



- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) => [page 21](#) .
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Unclip strip -1- from dash panel -arrow A- using removal wedge -3409-.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.

- Unclip steering column trim (top) -2- from steering column trim (bottom); to do so, carefully insert small flat-bladed screwdriver into gap -arrow B-.
- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and detach.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

### Installing



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

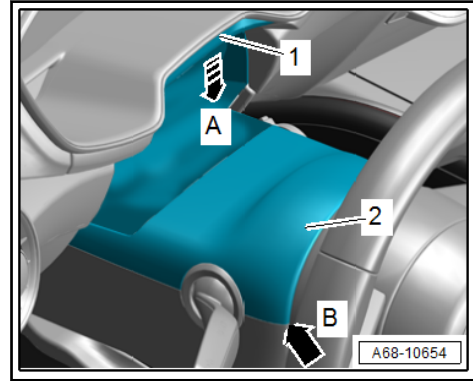
- First engage steering column trim (top) -1- in steering column trim (bottom) -arrows A-.
- Make sure that lug on steering column trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab on steering column trim (top) -arrows B-.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.3 overview - steering column trim](#), page 18

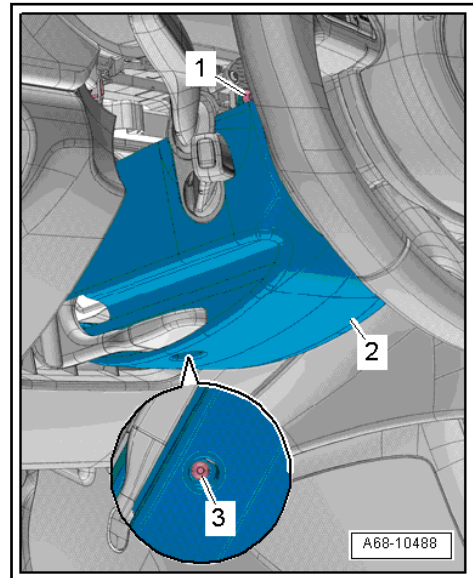
## 1.7 Removing and installing lower steering column trim

### Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Turn steering wheel 90° anti-clockwise from straight-ahead position.
- Unclip steering column trim (top) -2- from steering column trim (bottom); to do so, carefully insert small flat-bladed screwdriver into gap -arrow B-.



- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) and move it upwards and to one side.
- Remove accessible bolt -1- for steering column trim (bottom).



- Turn steering wheel back through 180° and unscrew bolt on opposite side.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).
- Remove bolt -3- and take off steering column trim (bottom) -2-.
- Unplug electrical connector for immobiliser reader coil -D2-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

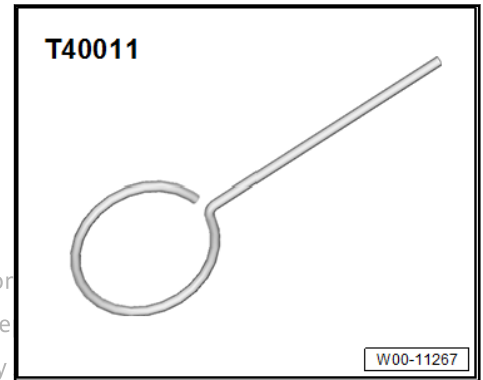
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.3 verview - steering column trim", page 18](#)

## 1.8 Removing and installing glove compartment opening mechanism

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Locking pin -T40011-

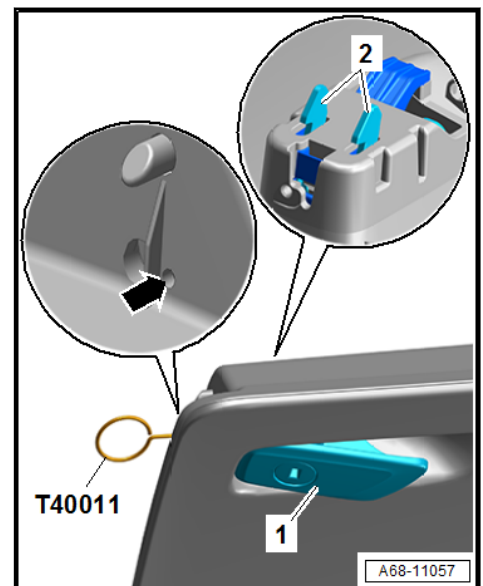


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

◆ Scraper no. 1 from scraper set -VAS 6845-

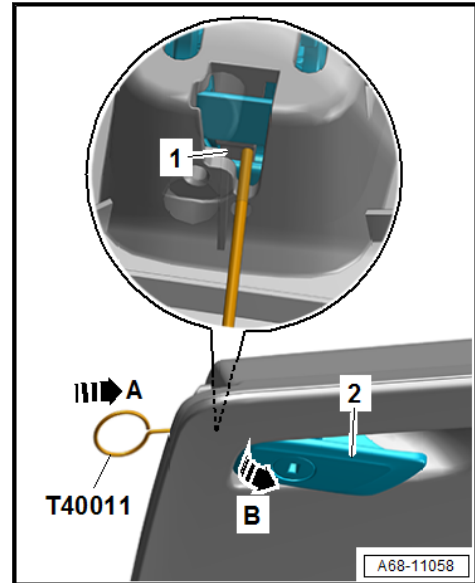


Removing



- Pull glove compartment opening mechanism -1- out as far as stop and wedge a suitable wooden block (or similar) underneath so that hooks -2- remain in removal position.
- Insert locking pin -T40011- or small Torx screwdriver T7 in opening -arrow- in side of glove compartment cover and apply it at retaining hooks for glove compartment opening mechanism.
- Release retaining hook -1- for glove compartment opening mechanism -arrow A- using locking pin -T40011- or Torx screwdriver (through opening in side of glove compartment cover).





- At the same time, press glove compartment opening mechanism -2- off retaining hook -arrow B- using scraper from -VAS 6845-, hold it in position and remove locking pin -T40011-.
- Disengage and detach glove compartment opening mechanism.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

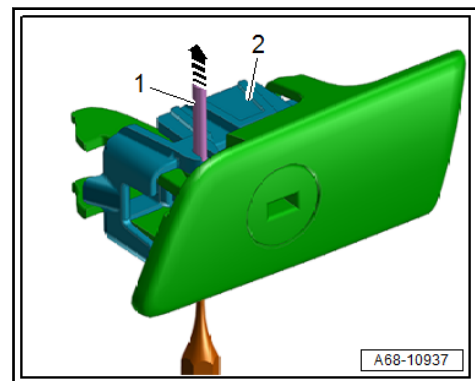
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.4 verview - glove compartment", page 19](#)

## 1.9 Removing and installing lock cylinder for glove compartment opening mechanism

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Removing



- Remove glove compartment opening mechanism ⇒ [page 24](#).
- Drive shaft -1- out of mounting hole in direction of -arrow- using a punch.
- Detach cover -2-.



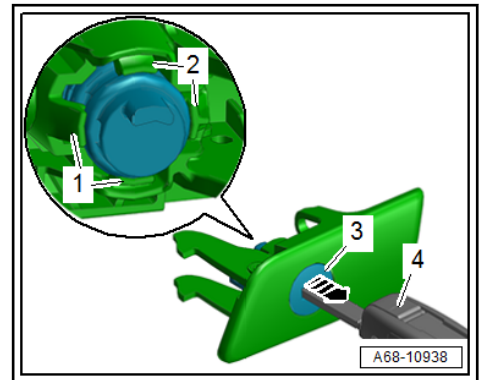


**Caution**

*Risk of irreparable damage to lock cylinder.*

- ◆ *Only remove and install lock cylinder with key properly inserted; this will ensure that tumblers and springs do not fall out.*

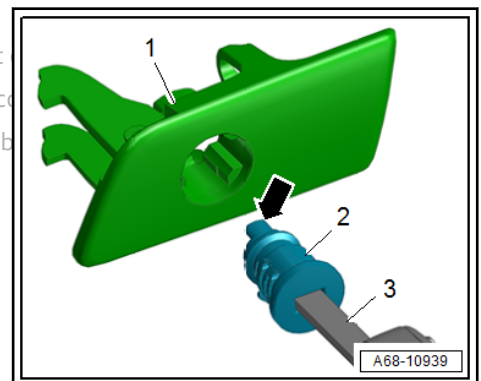
- Insert key -4- into lock cylinder.



- Release fasteners -1, 2- one after another using a small screwdriver, and at the same time press out lock cylinder -3- -arrow-.

**Installing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept responsibility with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



- Insert key -3- into new lock cylinder -2-.
- Pull protective cap off new lock cylinder.
- Insert lock cylinder into glove compartment opening mechanism -1- until it engages (pay attention to correct installation position of lug).
- Lug -arrow- on lock cylinder should be positioned at top.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

## 1.10 Removing and installing glove compartment

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

## Removing



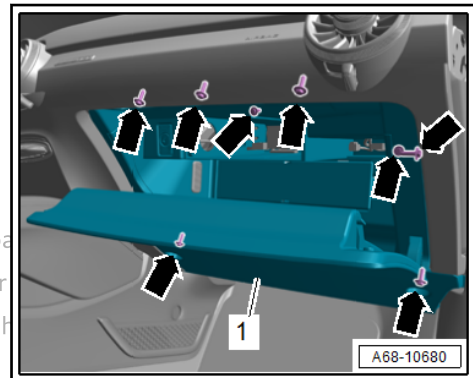
### WARNING

*On equipment version with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-, observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove control unit 1 for information electronics -J794- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system.
- Remove side dash panel cover (passenger side) ⇒ [page 208](#).
- Remove footwell light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Removing and installing footwell light -W9-/W10-.
- Remove glove compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Removing and installing glove compartment light -W6-.
- Open glove compartment cover and unscrew bolts -arrows-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



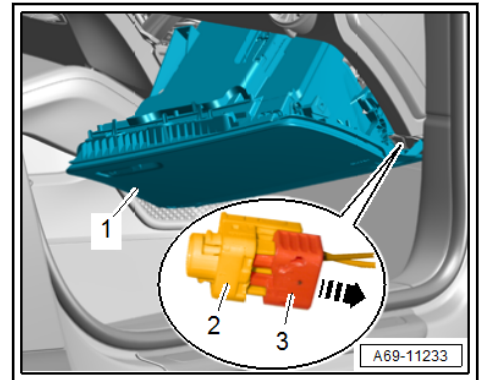
### Caution

*Risk of damage to electrical wiring.*

- ◆ *Proceed carefully when detaching glove compartment and do not lower it too far.*

- Detach glove compartment -1- and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connectors.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

NAR vehicles:



**Caution**

*Risk of damage to electrical wiring.*

◆ *Proceed carefully when detaching glove compartment and do not lower it too far.*

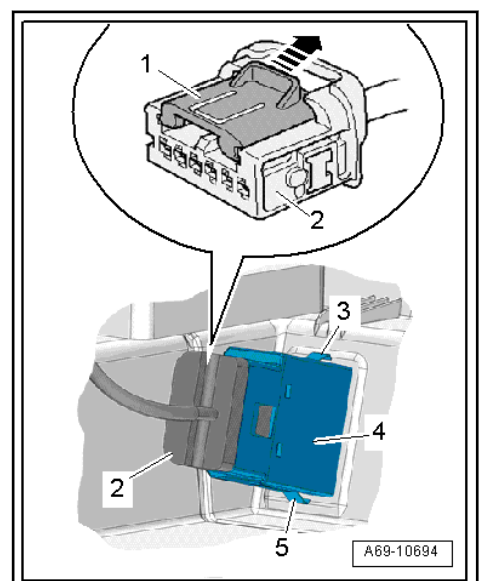
- Detach glove compartment -1- and carefully pull it out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connectors.

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Pull out connector locking element -3- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

Equipment version with key-operated switch -E224-:



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.



**Note**

Disregard -items 3, 4, 5-.

**Installing**



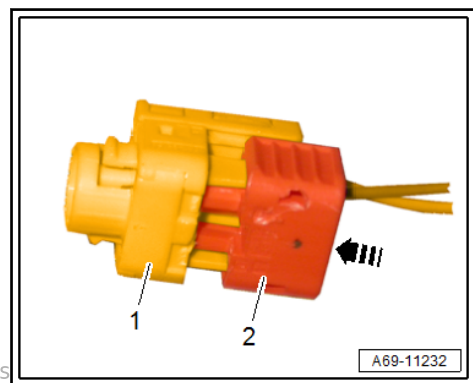
**WARNING**

- ◆ *On equipment version with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-, observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.


**NAR vehicles:**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes


- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

All vehicles (continued):

 **WARNING**  

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

 **WARNING**  

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

 **Note**

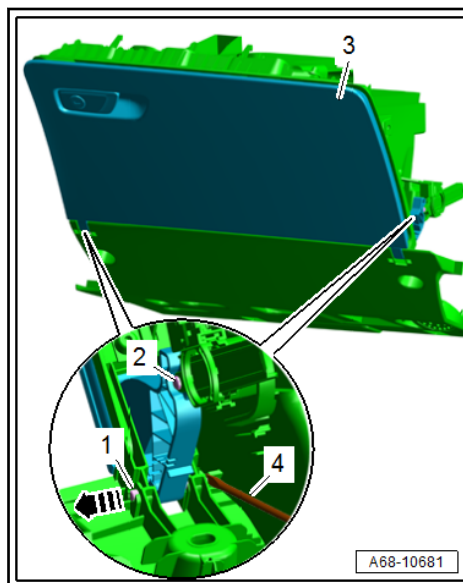
*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.4 verview - glove compartment", page 19](#)

## 1.11 Removing and installing glove compartment cover

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

## Removing



- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .
- Remove hinge pin -1- for restrictor for glove compartment cover.
- Set down glove compartment on a soft surface.
- Push hinge pin -1- for glove compartment cover out in direction of -arrow- with a screwdriver -4- and pull it out using pliers.
- Repeat procedure on hinge pin on opposite side.
- Detach cover -3- from glove compartment.

## Installing

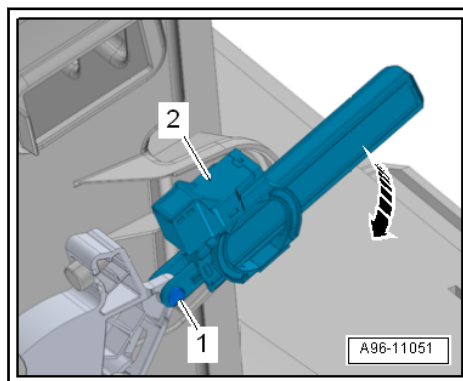
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.4 overview - glove compartment](#), [page 19](#)

### 1.12 Removing and installing restrictor for glove compartment cover

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

## Removing



- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .
- Remove hinge pin -1-.

- Release switch -2- in clockwise direction -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.4 overview - glove compartment", page 19](#)**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2 Equipment

⇒ [o2.1 verview - sun visors", page 34](#)

⇒ [o2.2 verview - windbreak", page 35](#)

⇒ [a2.3 nd installing sun visor", page 36](#)

⇒ [a2.4 nd installing sun visor centre mount", page 37](#)

⇒ [a2.5 nd installing windbreak", page 39](#)

### 2.1 Assembly overview - sun visors

⇒ [o2.1.1 verview - sun visors, TT Coupé", page 34](#)

⇒ [o2.1.2 verview - sun visors, TT Roadster", page 34](#)

#### 2.1.1 Assembly overview - sun visors, TT Coupé

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

##### 1 - Expanding cap

- Clipped into sun visor
- Press on until fully engaged

##### 2 - Centre mount

- For sun visor
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 37](#)
- Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

##### 3 - Expanding cap

- Clipped into sun visor centre mount

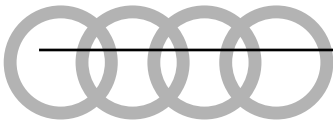
##### 4 - Sun visor

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 36](#)
- Engage sun visor mount in body opening



#### 2.1.2 Assembly overview - sun visors, TT Roadster





### 1 - Cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor
- ❑ Press on until fully engaged

### 2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

### 3 - Centre bracket

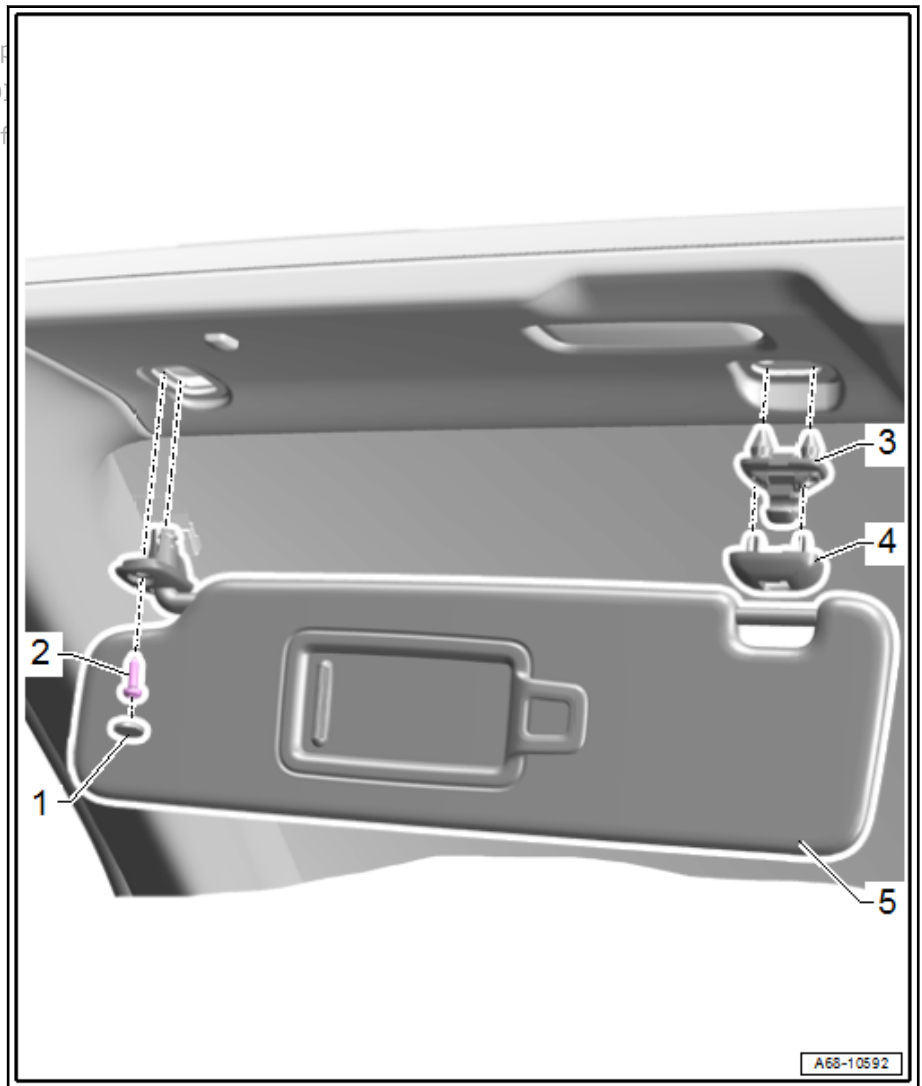
- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 37](#)
- ❑ Take care not to damage fasteners when inserting them

### 4 - Expanding cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor centre mount

### 5 - Sun visor

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 36](#)
- ❑ Engage sun visor mount in body opening



## 2.2 Assembly overview - windbreak



**1 - Bolt**

- 2x on each side
- 7 Nm

**2 - Damping element**

- 2x on each side
- Insert in body

**3 - Mounting**

- Removing and installing => [page 40](#)

**4 - Bolt**

- 2x on each side
- Currently not available as separate part

**5 - Windbreak**

- Currently not available as separate part
- Removing and installing => [page 39](#)

**6 - Cabriolet windbreak motor -V186-**

- Removing and installing => [page 39](#)

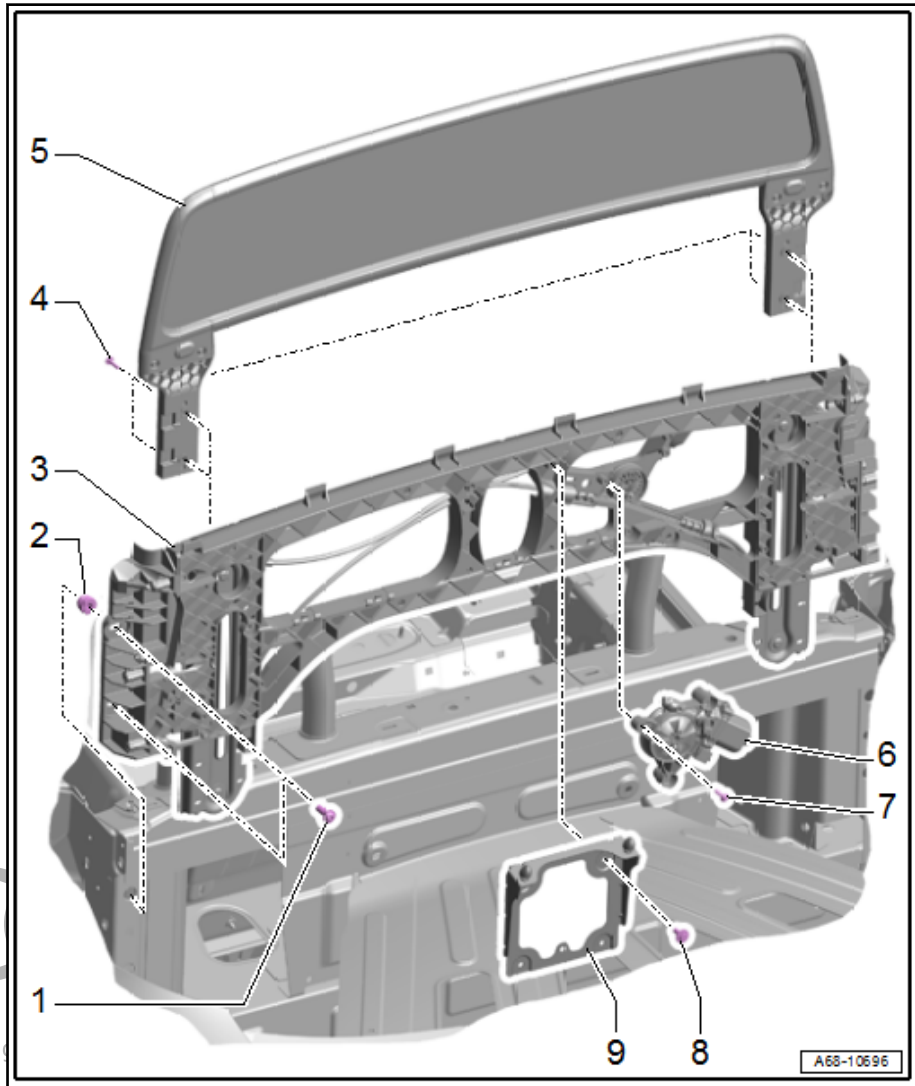
**7 - Bolt**

- 3x
- Currently not available as separate part

**8 - Bolt**

- 4x
- 6 Nm

**9 - Convertible roof locking mechanism**



Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. This document is a technical document and is not to be used for any other purpose. The use of this document is authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 2.3 Removing and installing sun visor

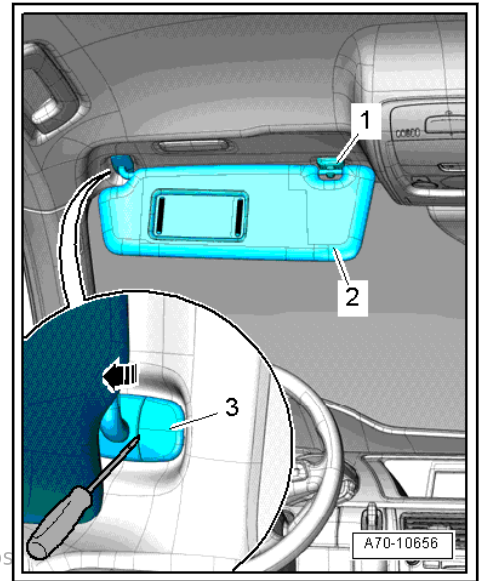
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

## Removing - TT Coupé

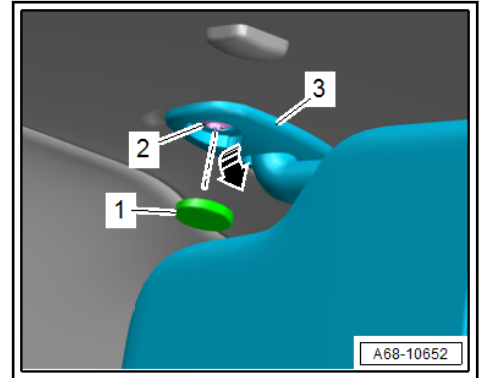


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage sun visor -2- from centre mount -1-.
- Use a screwdriver to unclip expanding cap -3-.
- Remove sun visor mount downwards -arrow- from body opening.
- Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.



## Removing - TT Roadster



- Disengage sun visor from centre mount.
- Using screwdriver, unclip cap -1- and unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.
- Remove sun visor mount -3- downwards -arrow- from body opening.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - sun visors](#), page 34**

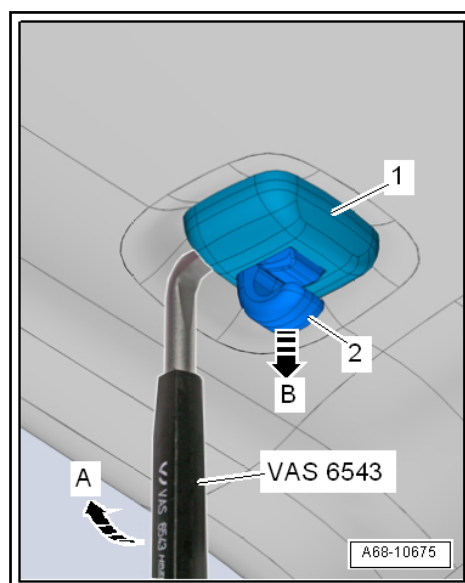
## 2.4 Removing and installing sun visor centre mount

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Angled screwdriver -VAS 6543-



## Removing



- Disengage sun visor from sun visor centre mount and fold to the side.
- Unclip cover -1- for sun visor centre mount -arrow A-. To do so, slide angled screwdriver -VAS 6543- only approx. 1 mm under cap.



### Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

*Inserting angled screwdriver -VAS 6543- further would position it beneath sun visor centre mount. Cover can then not be prised off.*

- Pull out sun visor centre mount -2- -arrow B-.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - sun visors](#), page 34

## 2.5 Removing and installing windbreak

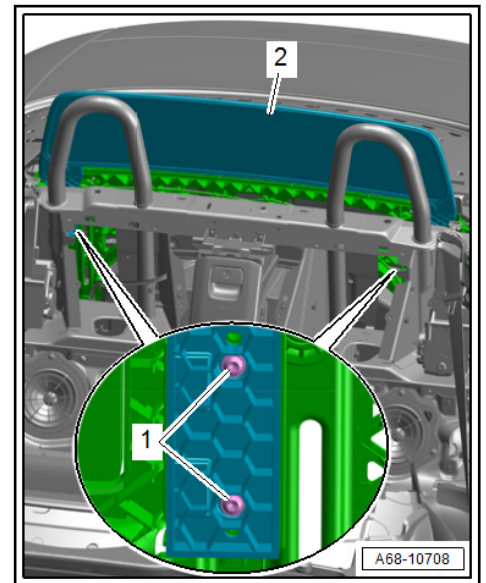
⇒ [a2.5.1 nd installing windbreak](#), page 39

⇒ [a2.5.2 nd installing cabriolet windbreak motor V186](#), page 39

⇒ [a2.5.3 nd installing windbreak mount](#), page 40

### 2.5.1 Removing and installing windbreak

#### Removing



- Open convertible roof.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove back panel trim ⇒ [page 262](#).
- Remove back panel (top) ⇒ [Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51; Inner side panel; Removing and installing back panel.](#)
- Extend windbreak halfway out until bolts for windbreak can be accessed easily.
- Remove bolts -1-.
- Lift windbreak -2- out of opening.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 verview - windbreak](#), page 35

### 2.5.2 Removing and installing cabriolet windbreak motor -V186-

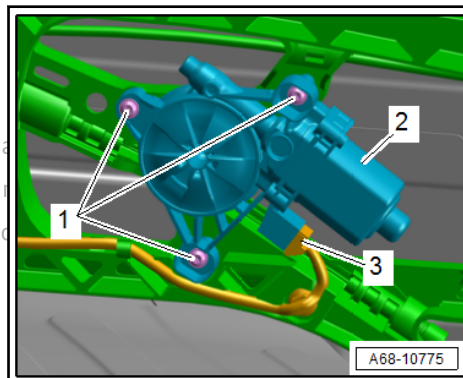
#### Removing

- Close convertible roof.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Lower windbreak.

- Remove convertible roof compartment trim (front) ⇒ [page 271](#) .
- Pull out and press down connector locking element and unplug electrical connector -3-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove bolts -1-
- Unfasten cabriolet windbreak motor -2- from mount and detach.

**Installing**

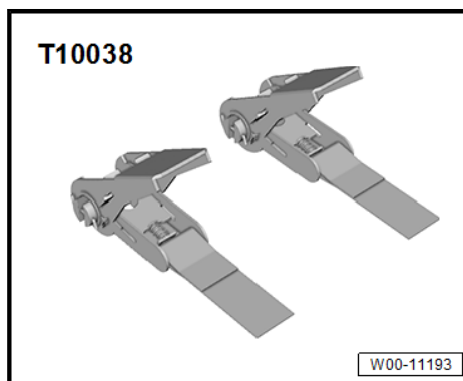
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 overview - windbreak", page 35](#)

**2.5.3 Removing and installing windbreak mount**

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

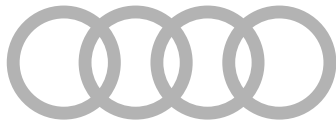
- ◆ Tensioning strap -T10038-



- ◆ Hook -T40306-

**Removing**

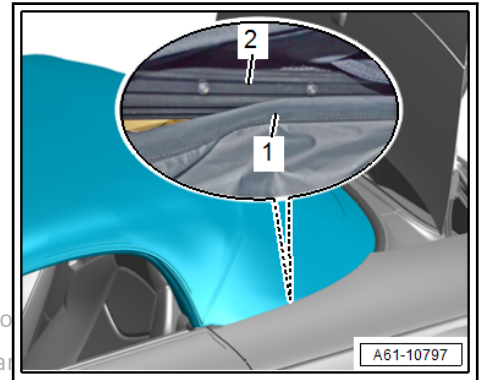
- Move convertible roof to "open" position.
- Lower windbreak.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove back panel cover ⇒ [page 260](#) .
- Remove flap for convertible roof frame ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55; Convertible roof compartment lid.
- Close convertible roof.



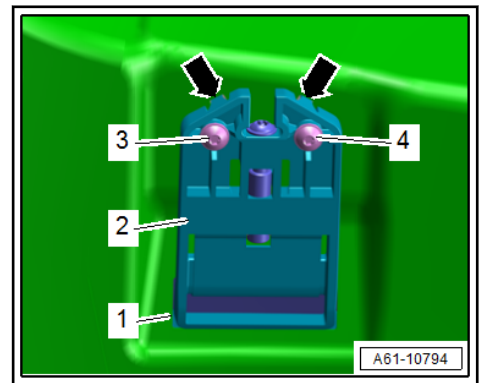
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

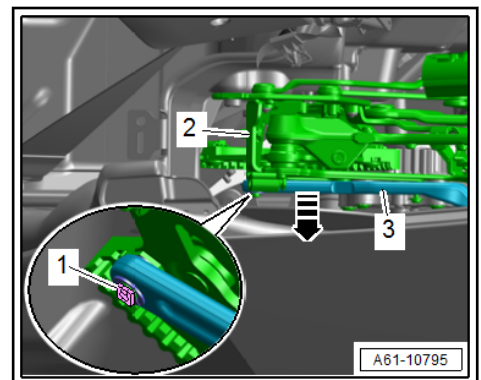
- Starting from outer edge, carefully pull convertible roof compartment trim -1- out of mounting at tensioner -2-.
- Move convertible roof to "open" position.
- Remove luggage compartment trim (top) => [page 294](#) .

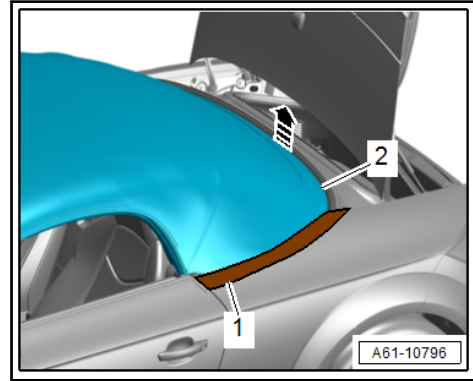


- Remove bolts -3, 4-.
- Disengage catches -arrows-.
- Slide tensioning strap -2- through opening in body -1- into convertible roof compartment.
- Pull off securing element -1- and detach operating lever -3- for tensioner at mounting -2- -arrow-.

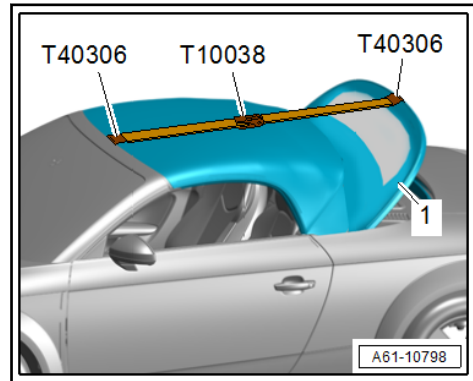


- Mask body to prevent damage to paintwork.



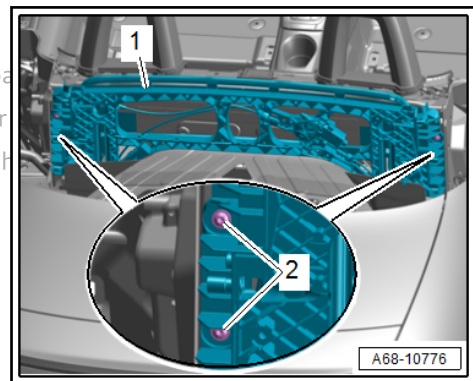


- Use at least four layers of adhesive tape -1-.
- Move convertible roof to “closed” position by hand.
- Lift tensioner -2- out of convertible roof compartment -arrow-.
- Pivot tensioner -1- upwards and secure it in position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally.



- Guide tensioning strap -T10038- into hooks -T40306- and tension strap three revolutions on shaft at quick-release tensioner.
- Engage hooks -T40306- at front and rear centre edge of convertible roof and tension again, if necessary.
- Remove convertible roof compartment trim (front) ⇒ [page 271](#).
- Remove convertible roof locking mechanism.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



- Unplug electrical connectors, unclip wire at mount and move clear.
- Remove bolts -2-.



- Lift off windbreak mount -1-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 verview - windbreak", page 35](#)**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 3 Centre console

⇒ [o3.1 overview - centre console", page 44](#)

⇒ [a3.2 nd installing rear centre console trim", page 50](#)

⇒ [a3.3 nd installing cover for centre console", page 52](#)

⇒ [a3.4 nd installing centre console insert", page 53](#)

⇒ [a3.5 nd installing front centre console storage compartment", page 55](#)

⇒ [a3.6 nd installing centre console", page 57](#)

⇒ [a3.7 nd installing trim panel for centre console", page 62](#)

⇒ [a3.8 nd installing bracket for centre console", page 64](#)

### 3.1 Assembly overview - centre console

⇒ [o3.1.1 overview - centre console", page 44](#)

⇒ [o3.1.2 overview - centre console, insert", page 46](#)

⇒ [o3.1.3 overview - centre console, storage box", page 47](#)

⇒ [o3.1.4 overview - centre console, cover", page 48](#)

⇒ [o3.1.5 overview - centre console, storage net", page 49](#)

#### 3.1.1 Assembly overview - centre console



#### Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Bolt**

- 3x
- 3 Nm

**2 - Bracket (rear)**

- For centre console
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a3.8 nd installing bracket for centre console", page 64](#)

**3 - Nut**

- 2x
- 8 Nm

**4 - Mounting bracket**

- For centre console
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a3.8 nd installing bracket for centre console", page 64](#)

**5 - Nut**

- 4x Protected by copyright. C
- 8 Nm permitted unless authoris
- 8 Nm respect to the correc

**6 - Centre console**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#)
- Depending on equipment version: fitting storage net in new centre console ⇒ [page 61](#)

**7 - Bracket (front)**

- For centre console
- 1x on each side
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a3.8 nd installing bracket for centre console", page 64](#)

**8 - Nut**

- 1x on each side
- 3.5 Nm

**9 - Cap**

- 1x on each side
- Press into centre console

**10 - Bolt**

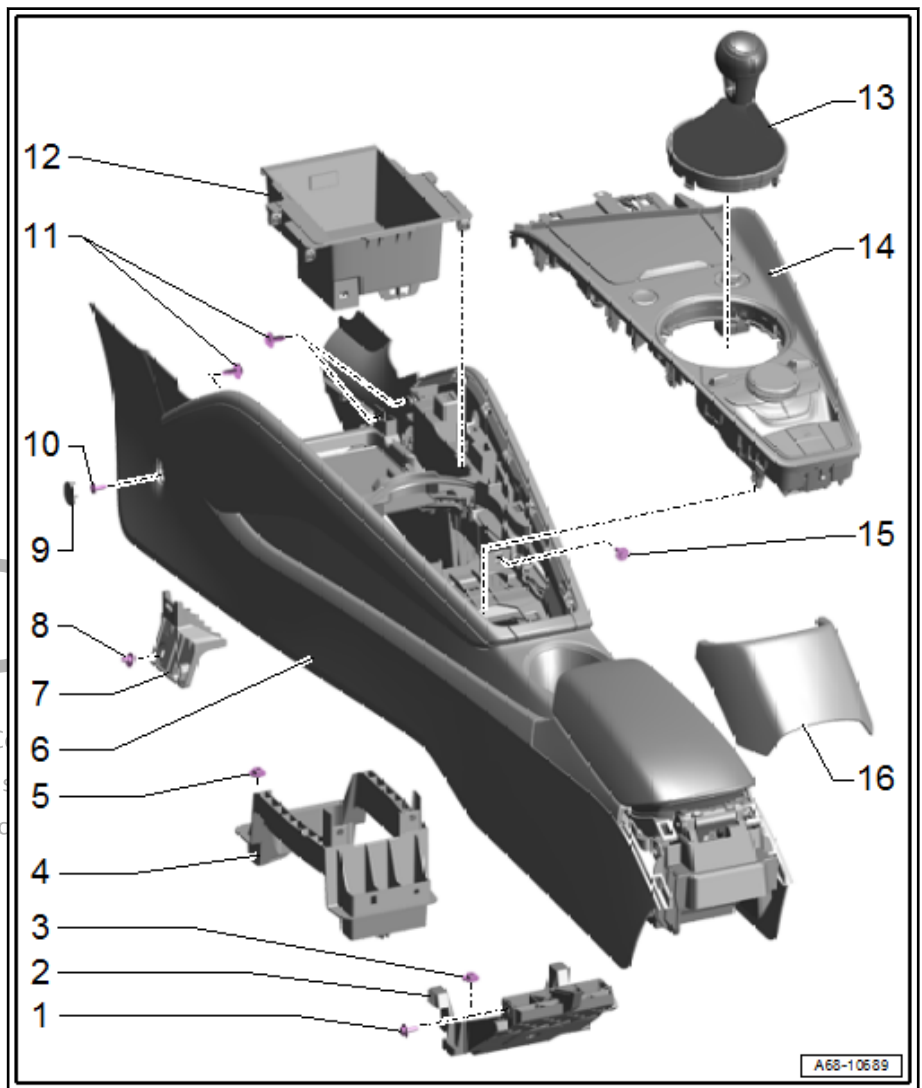
- 1x on each side
- 1.5 Nm

**11 - Bolts**

- 4x
- 3 Nm

**12 - Storage compartment**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 55](#)



### 13 - Gear lever/selector lever

- Assembly overview ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Selector mechanism; Assembly overview - selector mechanism

### 14 - Centre console insert

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 53](#)
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

### 15 - Bolt

- 2x
- 3 Nm

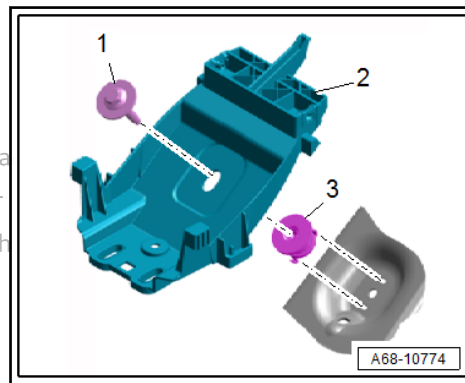
### 16 - Trim (rear)

- For centre console
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 50](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

### Tightening torque - bracket (rear), TT Roadster



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or warrant the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



- 1 - Bolt, 3 Nm
- 2 - Bracket (rear)
- 3 - Compensation element: Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut; screw adjuster nut down as far as it will go but do not tighten

### 3.1.2 Assembly overview - centre console, insert

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

**1 - Bolt**

- 3x
- Tightening torque  
 ⇒ Communication;  
 Rep. gr. 91; Infotainment system; Overview  
 of fitting locations - infotainment system

**2 - Lid for storage compartment**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 55](#)

**3 - Bolt**

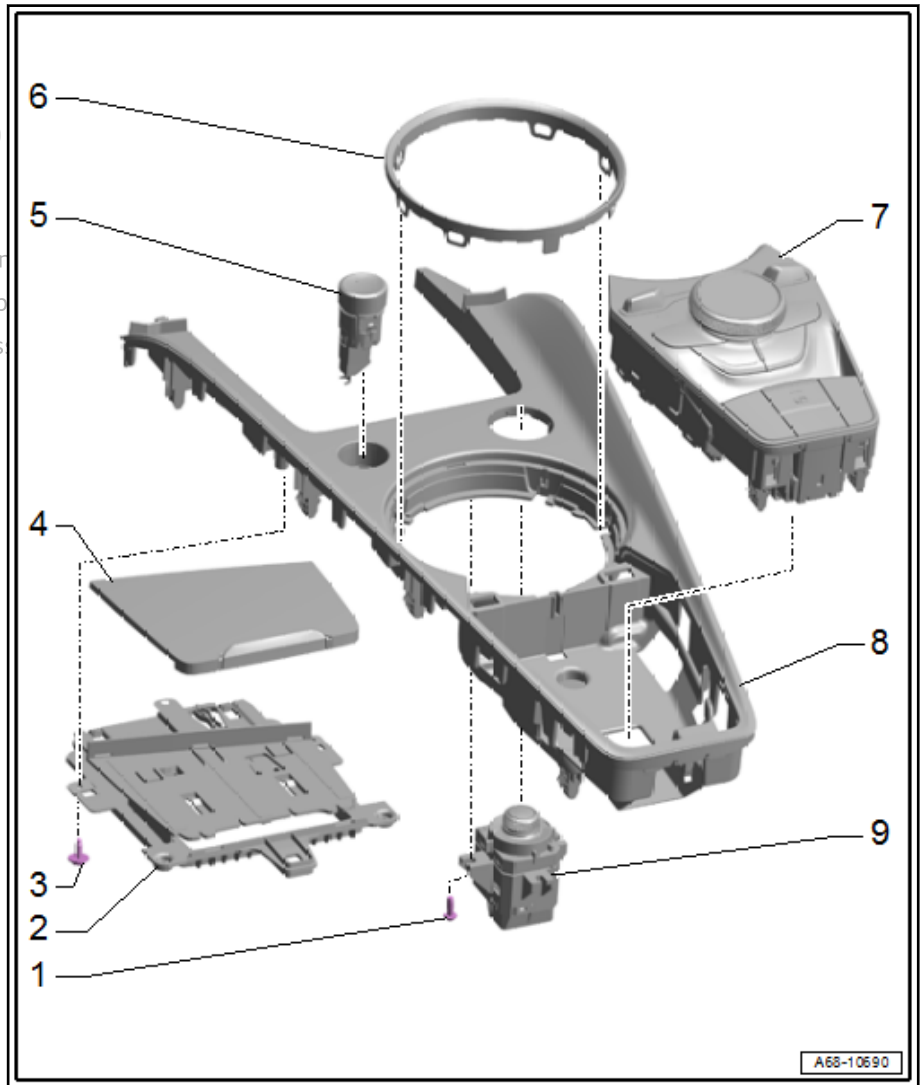
- 4x
- 1.5 Nm

**4 - Trim for lid**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 55](#)
- Engage at lid and press on until it engages audibly

**5 - Entry and start authorisation button -E408-**

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation button - E408-



**6 - Trim panel**

- For centre console insert
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 62](#)
- Fit in insert and press on until it engages audibly

**7 - Multimedia system operating unit -E380-**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system
- Push on until it engages audibly

**8 - Centre console insert**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 53](#)
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed
- Engage in front of centre console and press on until it engages audibly

**9 - Driver side volume regulator -E67-**

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Infotainment system; Overview of fitting locations - infotainment system

**3.1.3 Assembly overview - centre console, storage box**



**1 - Storage compartment (rear)**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#)

**2 - Connection for external audio sources -R199-**

- Depending on version

**3 - Storage compartment (front)**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 56](#)
- Insert in installation position and press in as far as stop

**4 - Trim/connection for external audio sources -R199-**

**5 - Lining mat**

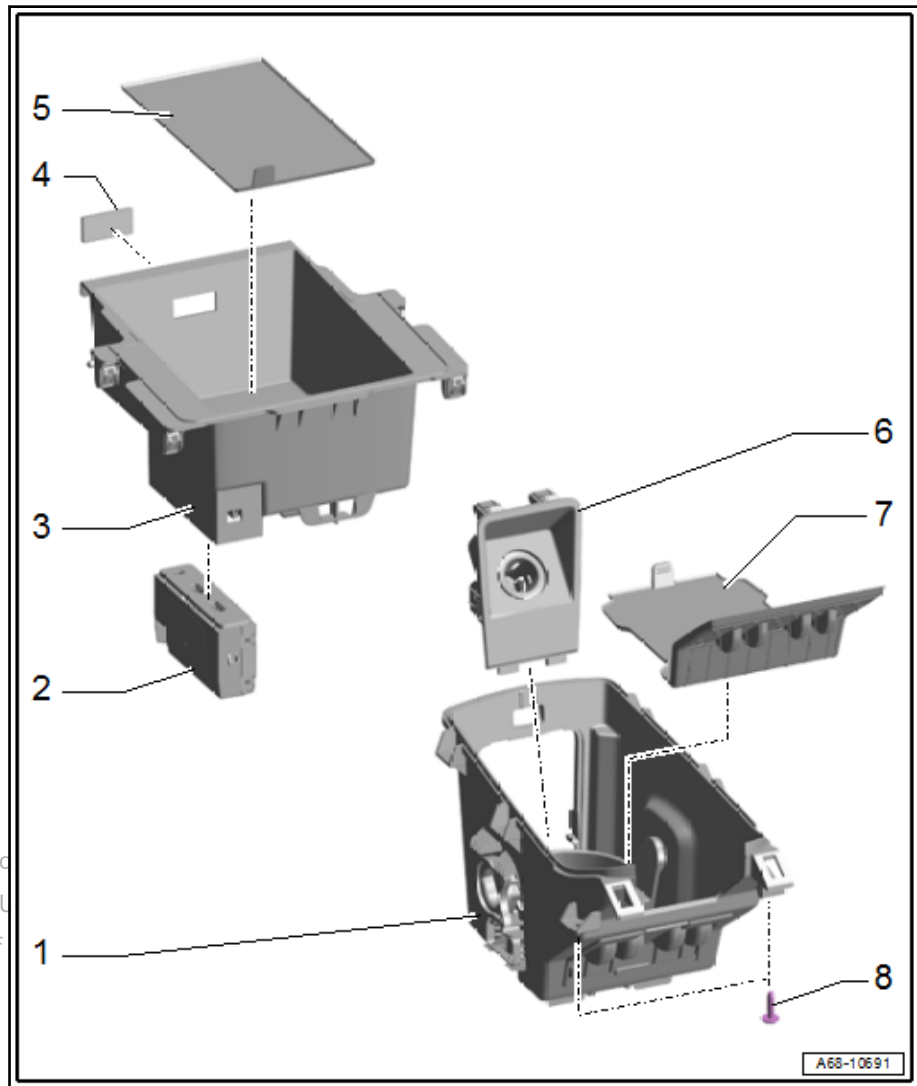
**6 - Mounting**

- For socket
- Removing and installing ⇒ [Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Cigarette lighter, socket; Assembly overview - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket](#)
- Engage at storage compartment and press on so that it engages audibly

**7 - Lining mat**

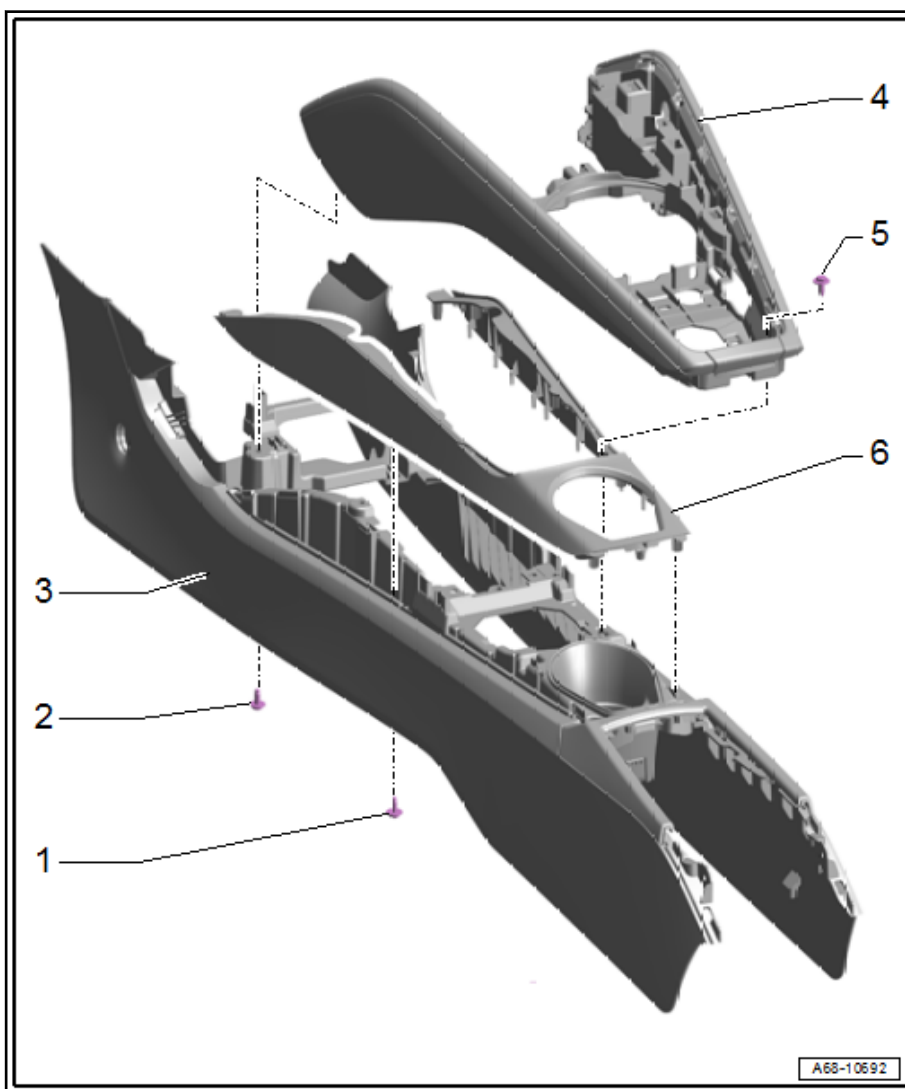
**8 - Bolt**

- 6x
- 1.4 Nm



**3.1.4 Assembly overview - centre console, cover**

- 1 - Bolt**
  - 8x
  - 1.4 Nm
- 2 - Bolt**
  - 4x
  - 3 Nm
- 3 - Centre console**
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 57](#)
  - Depending on equipment version: fitting storage net in new centre console ⇒ [page 61](#)
- 4 - Cover (top)**
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 52](#)
- 5 - Bolt**
  - 4x
  - 3 Nm
- 6 - Cover (bottom)**
  - Depending on version
  - For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 52](#)



### 3.1.5 Assembly overview - centre console, storage net

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Pop rivet**

- 6x
- Set rivet using pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-.

**2 - Storage net**

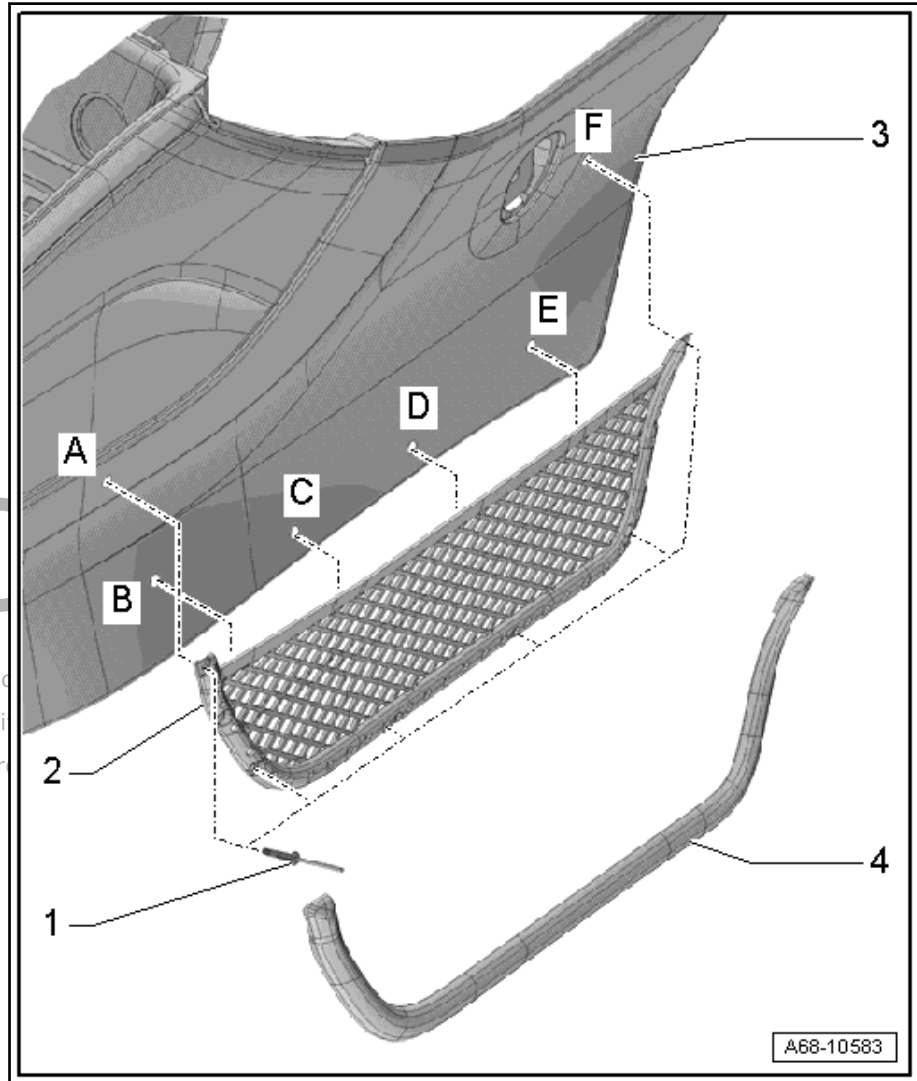
- Attached to centre console (passenger side)
- Removing and installing => [page 59](#)

**3 - Centre console**

- Holes -A ... F- (Ø 3.5 mm) must be drilled
- Fitting storage net in new centre console => [page 61](#)

**4 - Trim for storage net**

- Removing and installing => [a3.6.2 nd installing storage net", page 59](#)
- Engage trim at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly

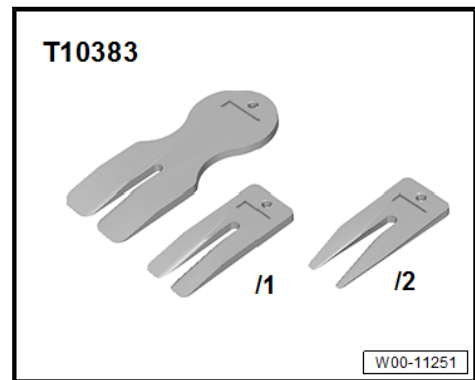


A68-10583

### 3.2 Removing and installing rear centre console trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

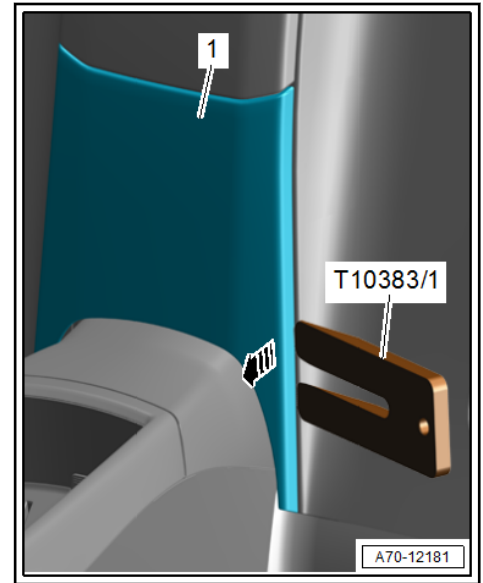
- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



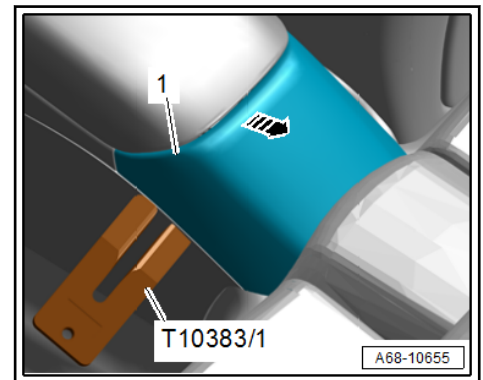
W00-11251



## Removing



- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- TT Roadster: Unclip back panel trim (centre) -1- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and detach.
- Slide centre armrest padding forwards.



- Starting at top, unclip trim -1- from centre console using wedge -T10383/1-.
- Pull trim off centre console -arrow- and detach.



### Note

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*The illustration shows the trim for the TT Coupé as an example.*

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

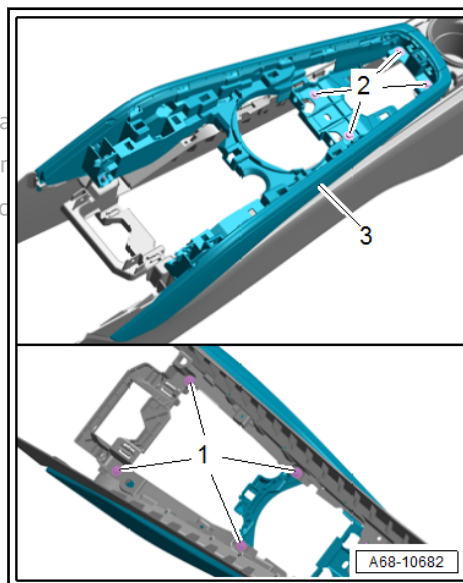
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o3.1.1 overview - centre console", page 44](#)

### 3.3 Removing and installing cover for centre console

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

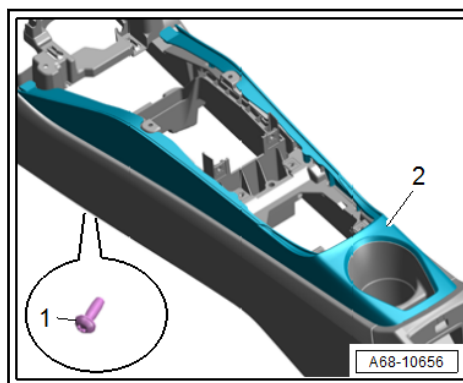


- Remove centre console => [page 57](#) .

#### Cover (top):

- Unscrew bolts -1- from underside of centre console.
- Unscrew bolts -2-, disengage cover -3- from centre console and detach.

#### Cover (bottom):



- Unscrew bolts -1- from underside of centre console.
- Unfasten cover -2- from centre console and detach.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

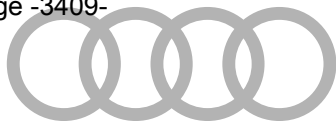
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.4 overview - centre console, cover](#), page 48

### 3.4 Removing and installing centre console insert

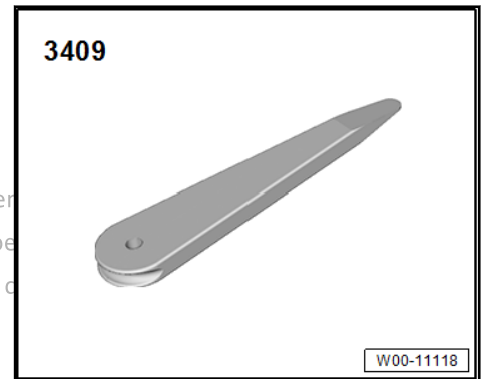
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

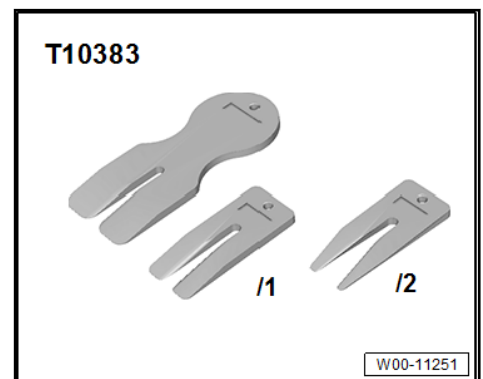
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



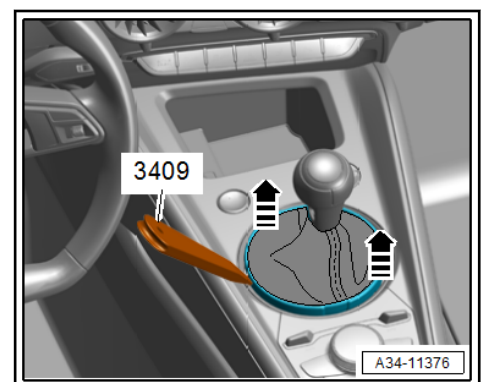
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- ◆ Wedges -T10383-

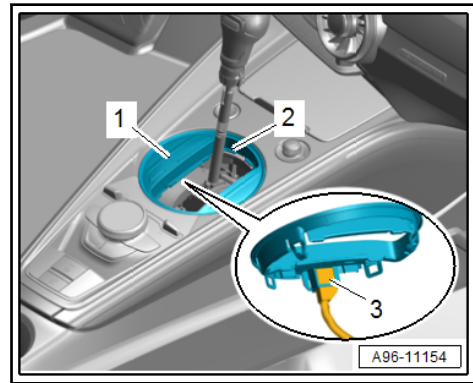


#### Removing



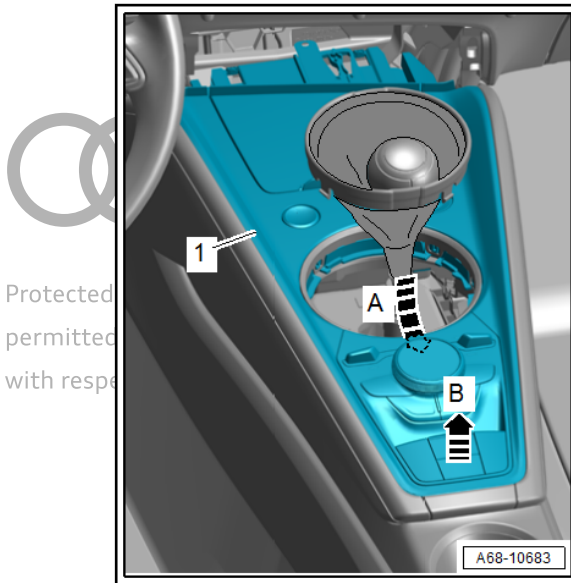
- Switch off ignition.
- Remove trim for switch panel ⇒ [page 220](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Move selector lever to “D/S”.
- Carefully prise selector lever/gear lever boot off centre console -arrows- using removal wedge -3409- and fold up.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove selector lever position display -Y26- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96;

Lights; Removing and installing selector lever position display -Y26-.



**i** Note

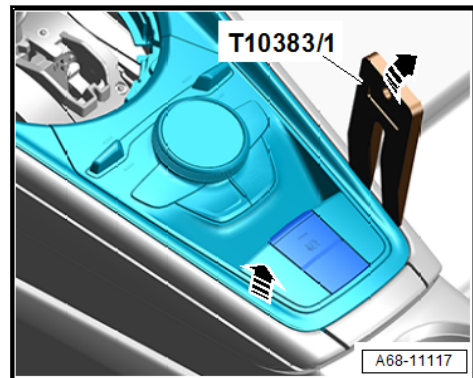
Considerable force is required to unclip the insert from the centre console.



Protected  
 permitted  
 with resp

mercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not  
 does not guarantee or accept any liability  
 is document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Reach beneath centre console insert -1- -arrow A- and carefully lift insert out of centre console -arrow B-.
- At the same time, unclip rear of centre console insert from centre console -arrows- using wedge -T10383/1-.



- Unplug electrical connectors and carefully take out insert for centre console by lifting over selector lever/gear lever.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.1 overview - centre console](#), page 44

## 3.5 Removing and installing front centre console storage compartment

⇒ [a3.5.1 nd installing storage box lid](#), page 55

⇒ [a3.5.2 nd installing centre console storage compartment \(front\)](#), page 56

⇒ [a3.5.3 nd installing centre console storage compartment \(rear\)](#), page 57

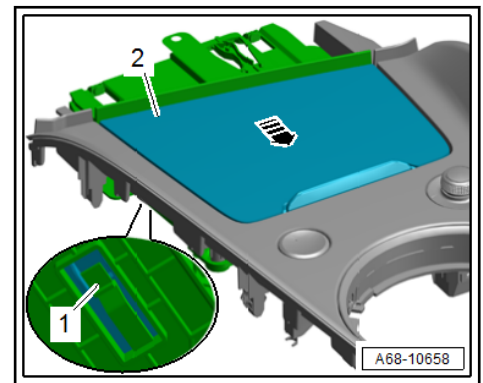
### 3.5.1 Removing and installing storage box lid

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### Removing

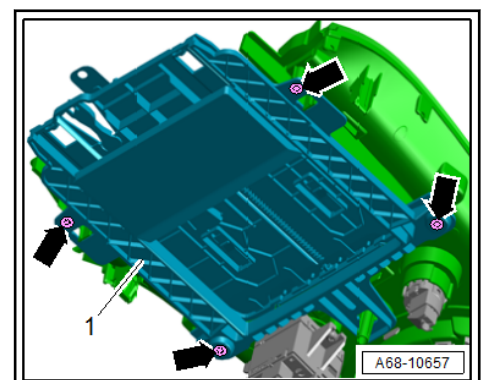
Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 53](#)

#### Removing trim



- Partially open lid, sliding it forwards slightly.
- Use a small screwdriver to lift catches -1- on underside and at the same time press trim in direction of -arrow-.
- Detach trim -2- from cover.

#### Removing lid



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach lid -1-.

#### Installing

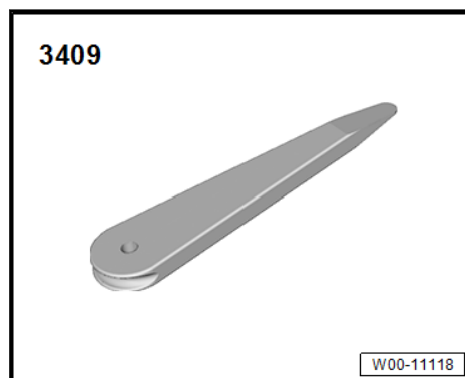
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o3.1.2 overview - centre console, insert](#), page 46

### 3.5.2 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

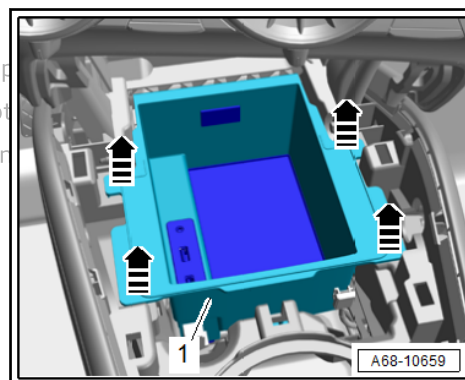
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



#### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove centre console insert => [page 53](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment light => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in centre console.
- Unclip storage compartment -1- from centre console -arrows- using removal wedge -3409-.
- Unplug electrical connectors and remove storage compartment.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

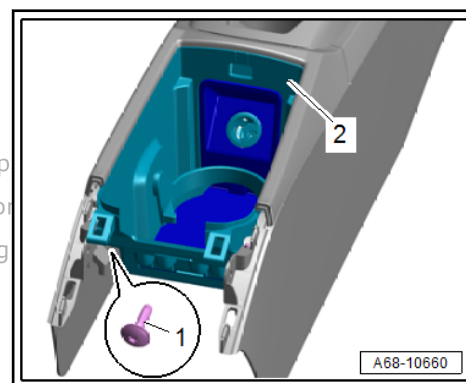
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.3 overview - centre console, storage box](#), page 47

### 3.5.3 Removing and installing centre console storage compartment (rear)

#### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2015



- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Remove bracket (rear) for centre console ⇒ [page 64](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove centre armrest ⇒ [page 67](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- and detach storage compartment -2- downwards.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.3 overview - centre console, storage box](#), page 47

### 3.6 Removing and installing centre console

⇒ [a3.6.1 nd installing centre console](#), page 57

⇒ [a3.6.2 nd installing storage net](#), page 59

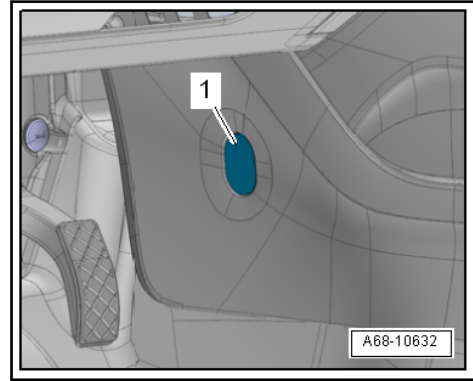
⇒ [s3.6.3 storage net in new centre console](#), page 61

#### 3.6.1 Removing and installing centre console

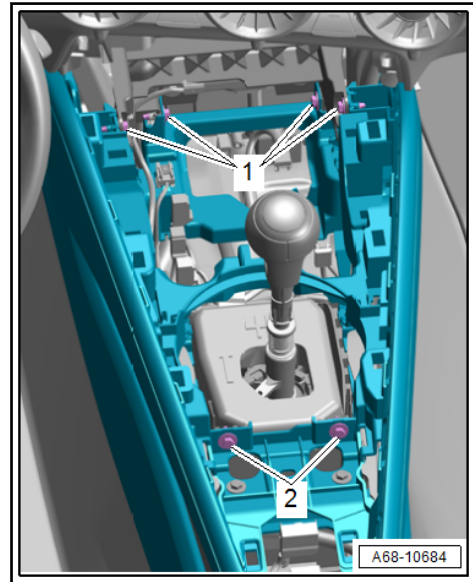
##### Removing

- TT Roadster: Remove lid for storage compartment (centre) in back panel ⇒ [page 264](#) .
- Right-hand drive vehicles: Remove foot rest ⇒ [page 266](#) .
- Remove centre console insert ⇒ [page 53](#) .
- Remove centre console trim (rear) ⇒ [page 50](#) .
- Remove storage compartment (front) in centre console ⇒ [page 56](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connectors for background lighting bulb.
- Remove cigarette lighter/socket ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Cigarette lighter, socket; Assembly overview - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket.
- Prise off cap -1- with a screwdriver.



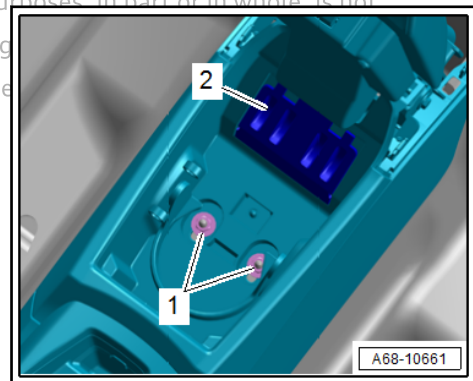


- Unscrew bolt for centre console (underneath cap).
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- from centre console.



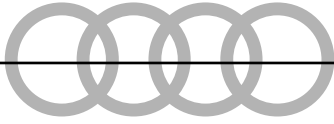
- Remove lining mat from storage compartment (rear).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove nuts -1-.
- TT Coupé with centre armrest / TT Roadster: Unclip cover -2- and unscrew nuts/bolts beneath.
- Lift centre console with centre armrest off studs and pull it towards rear out of dash panel.
- Unplug electrical connectors.





- Pull centre console with centre armrest towards rear out of dash panel and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order, note the following:

- Fit centre console in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in centre console.

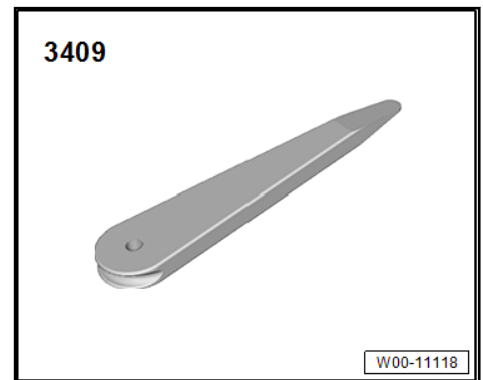
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.1 overview - centre console](#), page 44

## 3.6.2 Removing and installing storage net

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



- ◆ Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-

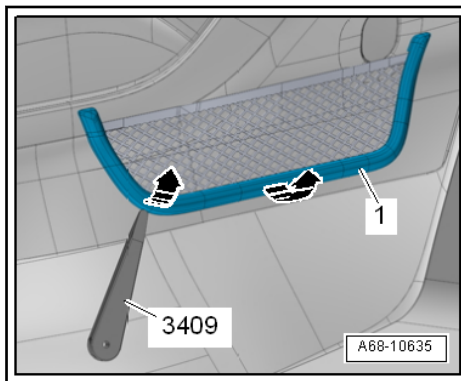



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit, Ø 3.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

## Removing



- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Starting at bottom, unclip trim -1- -arrows- using removal wedge -3409-.
- Disengage trim at top of frame and detach.

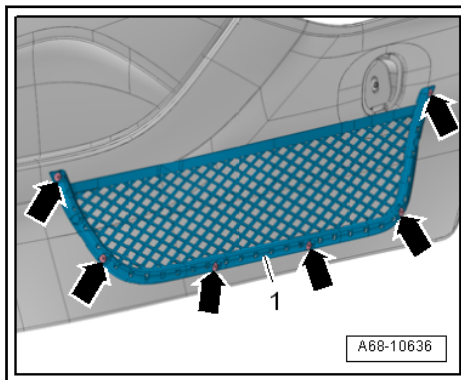


 **WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries!*

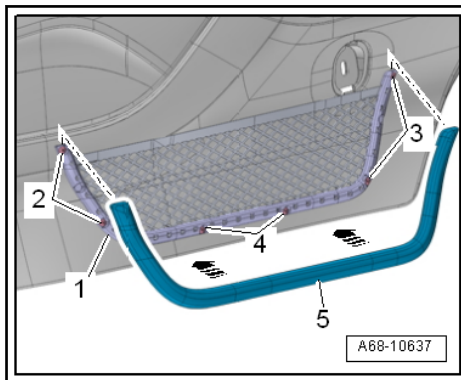
◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

- Carefully drill out pop rivets -arrows- using Ø 3.5 mm bit.



- Detach frame -1- with storage net.

## Installing



- Starting in centre, rivet frame -1- with storage net to centre console -2, 3, 4- using pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-.

- Engage trim -5- at top of frame and press on so that it engages audibly -arrows-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o3.1.5 overview - centre console, storage net", page 49](#)

### 3.6.3 Fitting storage net in new centre console

**i** Note

- ◆ *The centre console does not include the storage net when it is supplied as a genuine replacement part.*
- ◆ *For the equipment version with a storage net, the storage net must be fitted in the new centre console as described below.*

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-

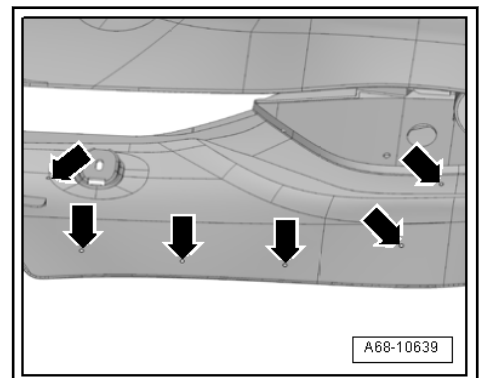


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.




- ◆ Drill (angle drill or angled drill attachment)
- ◆ Drill bit, Ø 3.5 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

#### Procedure



- Set down centre console on a stable, clean surface.

 **WARNING**  
*Risk of eye injuries!*  
◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

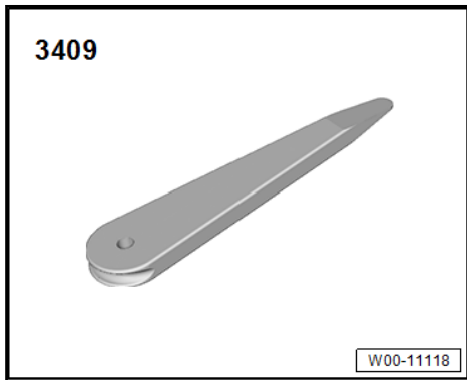
- Punch holes (Ø approx. 3.5 mm) according to embossing -arrows- on inside of centre console, as shown in illustration.
- Install storage net ⇒ [page 59](#) .
- Install centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .

### 3.7 Removing and installing trim panel for centre console

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

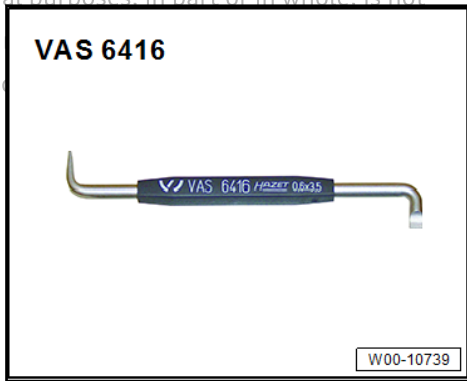
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

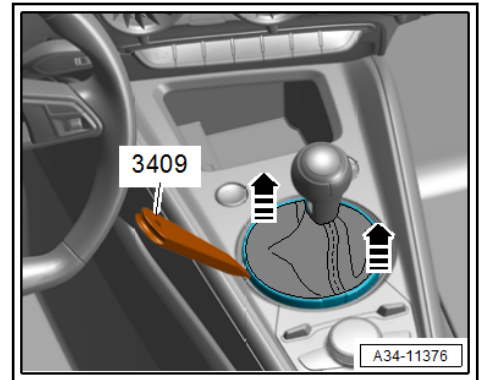


- ◆ Angled screwdriver -VAS 6416-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



## Removing



### Vehicles with manual gearbox:

- Carefully prise selector lever/gear lever boot off centre console -arrows- using removal wedge -3409- and fold up.



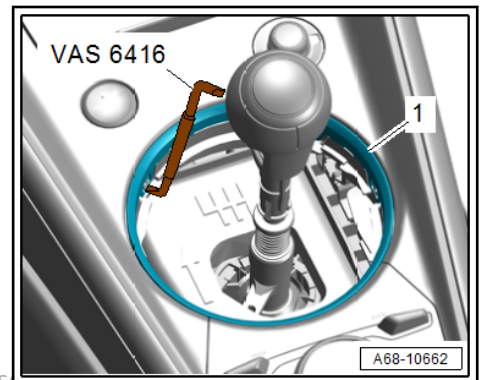
#### Caution

*Risk of damage to trim panel.*

- ◆ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing as the fasteners can be damaged quite easily.*

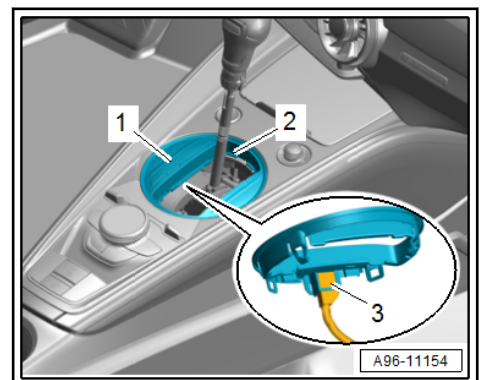


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is prohibited.



- Carefully release trim panel -1- from fasteners using angled screwdriver -VAS 6416- and lift off trim panel.

### Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox:



**i** Note

The trim panel and the selector lever position display -Y26- are combined in one component.

- Remove selector lever position display -Y26- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Removing and installing selector lever position display -Y26-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1.2 verview - centre console, insert](#), page 46

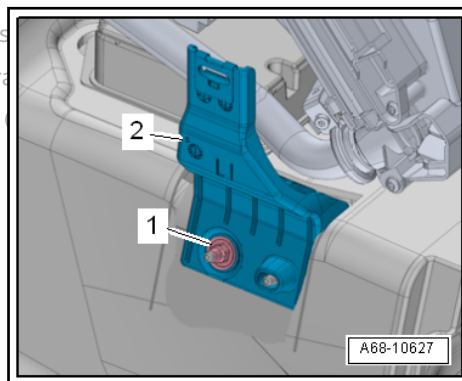
### 3.8 Removing and installing bracket for centre console

**Removing**

- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .

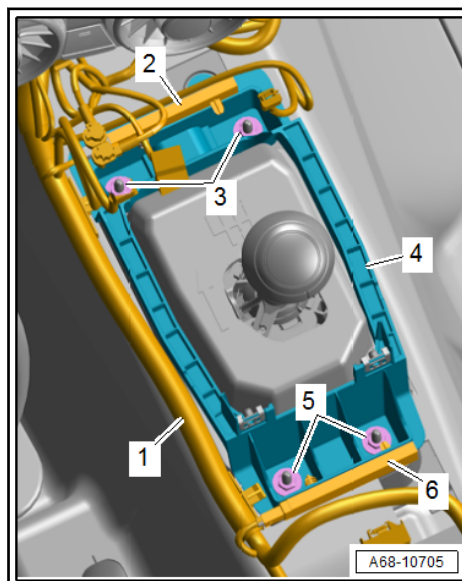
**Bracket (front) for centre console:**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



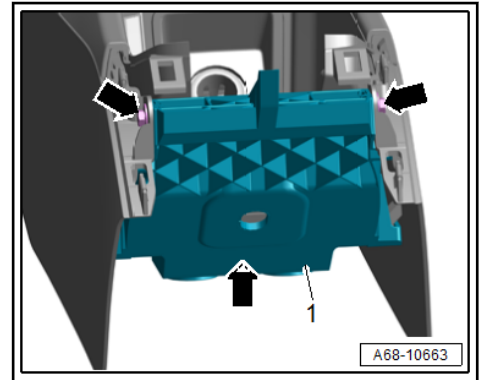
- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection and unscrew nut -1-.
- Detach bracket -2- for centre console.

**Mounting bracket for centre console:**



- Unclip aerals -2 and 6- from mounting bracket.
- If fitted, disengage control unit for seat belt microphone from bracket.
- Unclip electrical wiring harness -1- from mounting bracket.
- Unscrew nuts -3 and 5- and detach mounting bracket -4-.

**Bracket (rear) for centre console:**



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach bracket -1-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1 verview - centre console](#), page 44**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 4 Centre armrest (front)

⇒ [04.1 verview - front centre armrest](#)", page 66

⇒ [a4.2 nd installing front centre armrest](#)", page 67

### 4.1 Assembly overview - front centre armrest



**Note**

A repair set is available for repairing the centre armrest ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue.*

**1 - Bolt**

- 3 Nm

**2 - Nut**

- 4x
- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 3 \(page 45\)](#)

**3 - Washers**

- For repair kit refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue.*

**4 - Bolt**

- 1x on each side
- 7.5 Nm
- For repair kit refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue.*

**5 - Centre armrest (front)**

- Not available as separate part
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)

**6 - Speed nut**

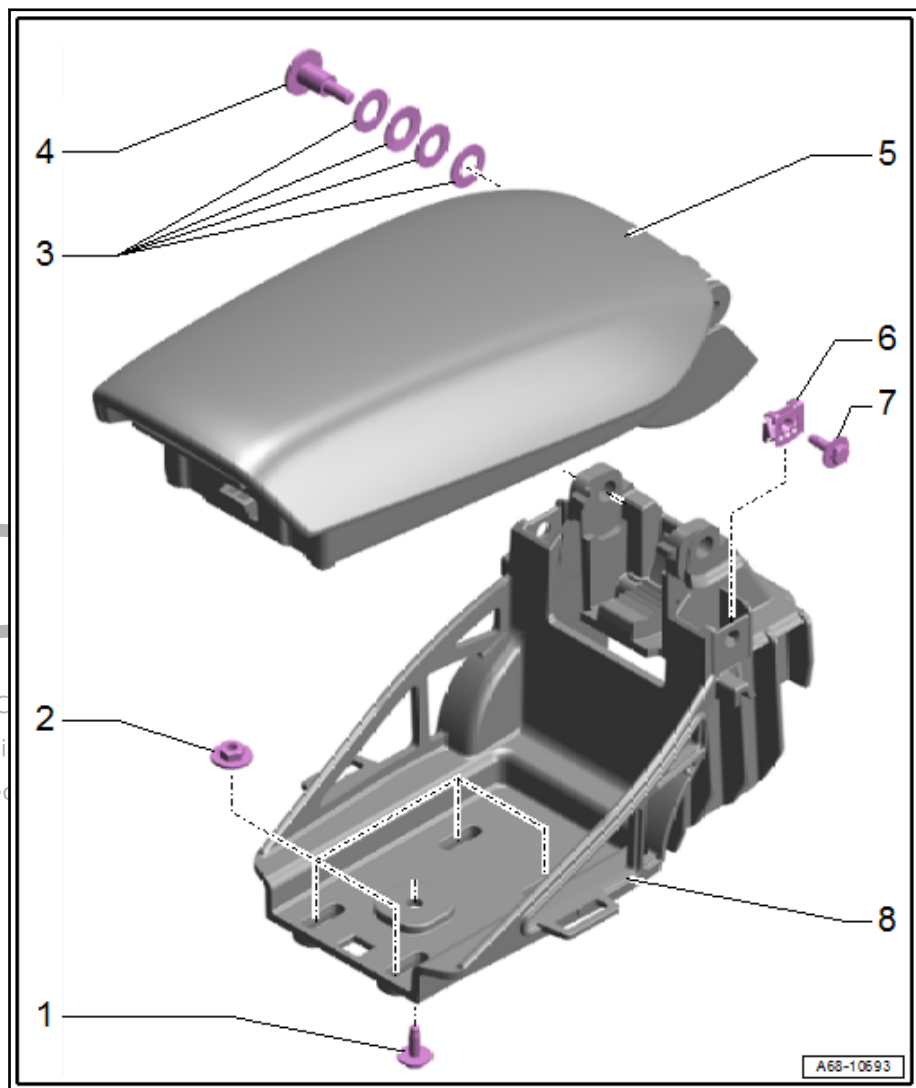
- 1x on each side
- Insert in centre armrest

**7 - Bolt**

- 1x on each side
- 3 Nm

**8 - Mounting for centre armrest**

- Not available as separate part
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 67](#)

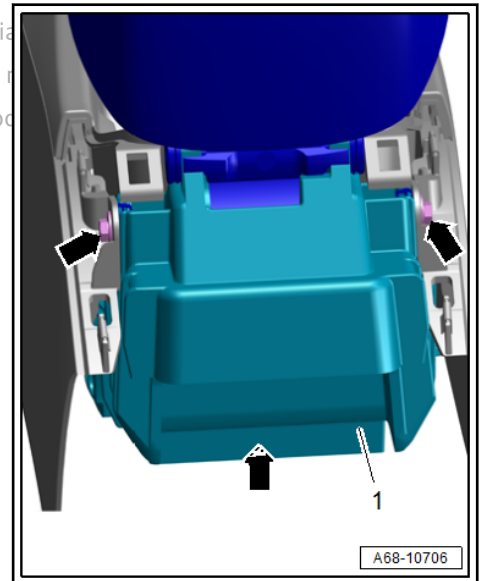




## 4.2 Removing and installing front centre armrest

### Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Open centre armrest.
- Remove centre armrest -1- downwards from centre console.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.1 overview - front centre armrest](#), [page 66](#)**

## 5 Interior mirror

⇒ [o5.1 Overview - interior mirror", page 68](#)

⇒ [a5.2 and installing interior mirror", page 69](#)

⇒ [a5.3 Automatic anti-dazzle function on and off", page 72](#)

⇒ [c5.4 Compass display on and off", page 73](#)

⇒ [m5.5 Magnetic deflection zone", page 73](#)

⇒ [d5.6 Digital compass", page 74](#)

⇒ [a5.7 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles", page 74](#)

⇒ [t5.8 The applicable deflection zone from the map", page 75](#)

⇒ [o5.9 Operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror", page 81](#)

### 5.1 Assembly overview - interior mirror

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Cover (front)**

- For mirror base
- Push on until it engages audibly

**2 - Retaining clip**

- For interior mirror
- Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Renew after removing interior mirror

**3 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 1.5 Nm

**4 - Cover (rear)**

- For mirror base
- For interior mirror without optional equipment
- Push on until it engages audibly

**5 - Retaining plate**

- For interior mirror
- Bonded to windscreen

**6 - Cover**

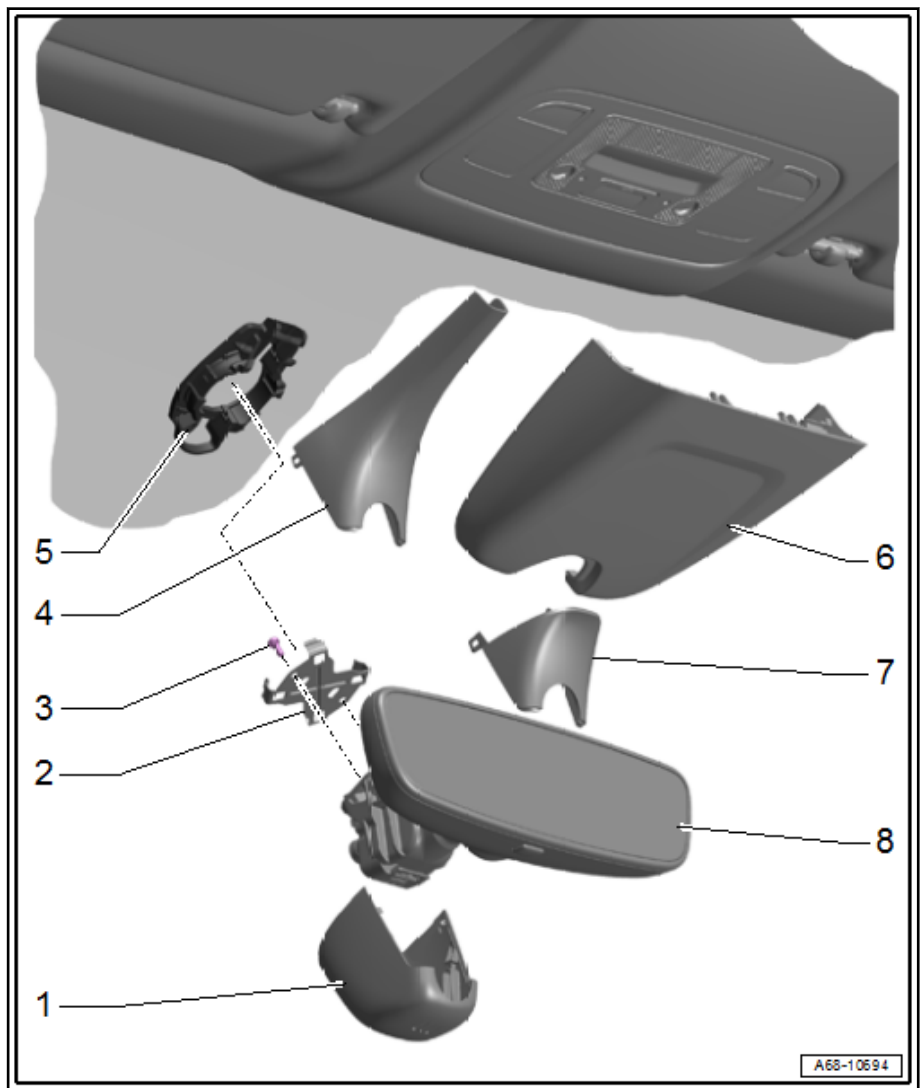
- For sensors control unit
- For interior mirror with optional equipment

**7 - Cover (rear)**

- For mirror base
- For interior mirror with optional equipment

**8 - Interior mirror**

- Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 69](#)
- Position at 20° angle to installation position and turn clockwise as far as stop
- Renew retaining clip after removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.2 Removing and installing interior mirror

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**



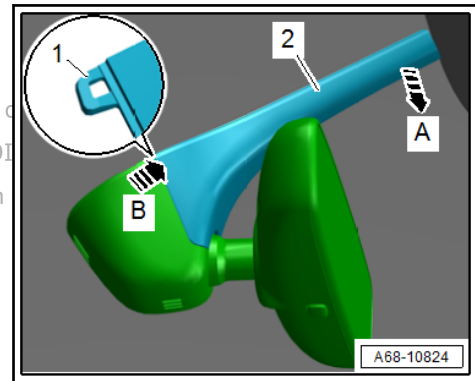
- ◆ Clip release lever no. 5 from scraper set -VAS 6845-



### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information.



is not  
liability

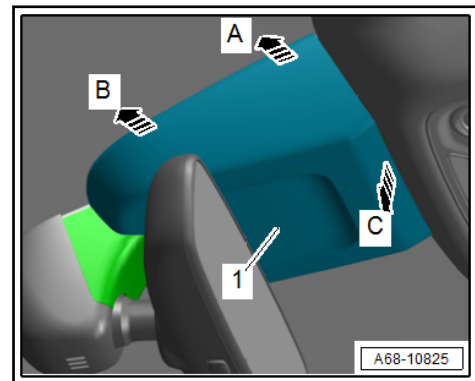


### WARNING

- ◆ *Note safety precautions for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇒ [page 14](#)*

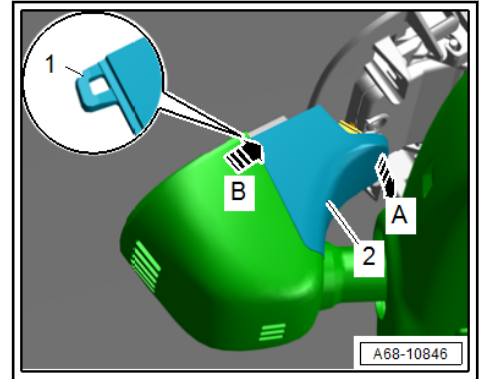
- Swivel interior mirror down as far as possible (approx. 25°).
- Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.
- Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.

### Interior mirror with optional equipment:



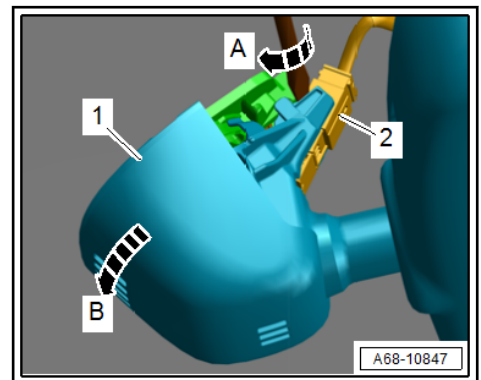
- TT Roadster: Remove windscreen frame trim ⇒ [page 255](#) .
- Unclip cover -1- -arrows A, B, C- using clip release lever from -VAS 6845-; to do so, carefully insert clip release lever between windscreen and cover.

- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Disengage cover -1- at front and pull out towards rear.
- Pull cover -2- downwards at rear -arrow A-, and at the same time release fasteners -1- by pressing firmly on cover -arrow B-.



- Disengage cover at mirror base and detach.

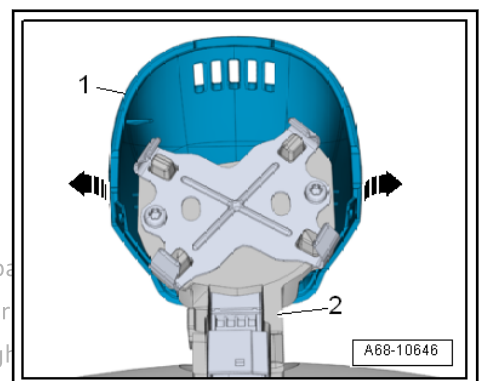
**All mirror versions (continued):**



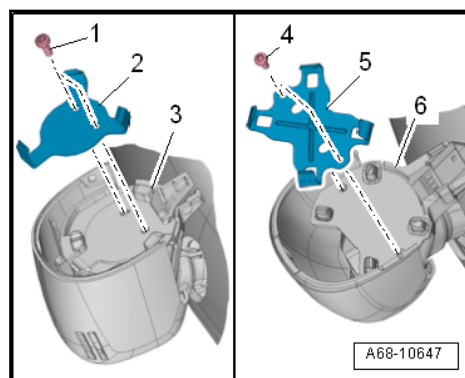
- Insert screwdriver between retainer and mirror base.
- Carefully rotate screwdriver about its own axis -arrow A- until retaining tab is disengaged from retainer.
- At the same time turn mirror base -1- as far as it will go in anti-clockwise direction -arrow B-.
- Detach interior mirror from retainer and unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Carefully disengage retaining tabs -arrows- and pull cover -1- at front downwards out of guide elements on interior mirror base -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



## Installing



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Renew retaining clip -2- or -5- after removing interior mirror; for allocation see ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Fit interior mirror at 20° angle to installation position.
- Turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.



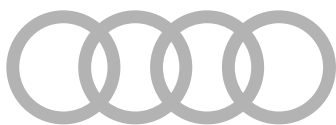
### Note

If renewing the interior mirror and the integrated main beam assist control unit -J844-, select the function "Replace control unit" of the corresponding control unit ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester, Diagnosis.

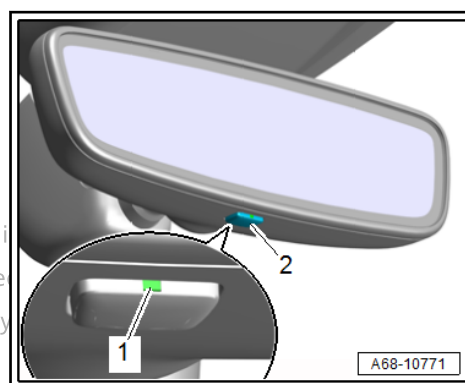
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.1 overview - interior mirror](#), page 68

## 5.3 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

- Press button -2- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



Automatic anti-dazzle function "On": Indicator lamp -1- lights up.

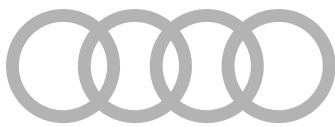
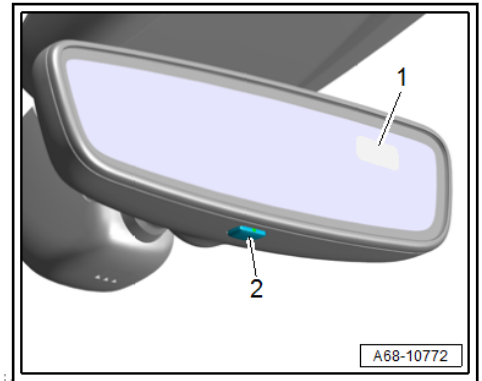
Automatic anti-dazzle function "Off": Indicator lamp -1- goes out.

- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- ◆ If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.

- ◆ When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- ◆ The automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear sun blind is retracted.

## 5.4 Switching compass display on and off

- Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display -1- will be switched "on" or "off".



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the use of this information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Compass display "on" direction is indicated.

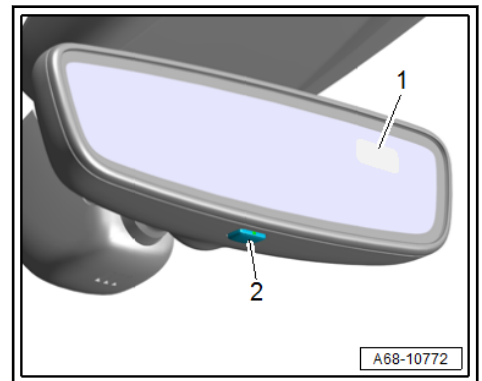
Compass display "off" direction is not indicated.

## 5.5 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.
- A distance more than two zones away from the pre-set reference zone has been reached after travelling long distances; you should then set a different magnetic deflection zone.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:



- Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows "Z" and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
- Press the button repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
- Select applicable deflection zone from the world map:
  - ◆ Europe ⇒ [page 75](#)
  - ◆ North America ⇒ [page 76](#)
  - ◆ South America ⇒ [page 77](#)



- ◆ Asia ⇒ [page 78](#)
- ◆ Africa ⇒ [page 79](#)
- ◆ Australia ⇒ [page 80](#)

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ [page 73](#) after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

## 5.6 Calibrating digital compass

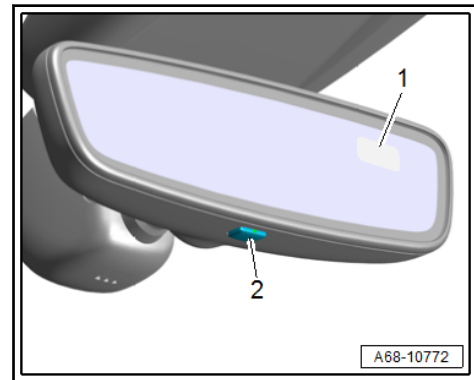
It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate.
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

- The vehicle battery is reconnected after it has been disconnected for a long period.
- A new audio system or audio system components has/have been fitted.

Calibrating digital compass:



- Switch on ignition.
- Compass display -1- should show “C”.
- If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display.
- Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 10 km/h (5 mph) until a direction is indicated on the compass display.
- After completing the calibration, re-activate the automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror ⇒ [page 72](#).

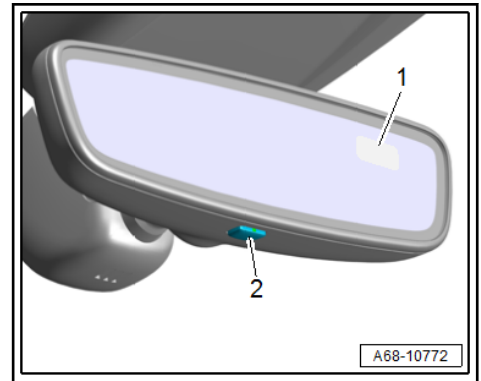
## 5.7 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.



- Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows “L” (for left-hand drive vehicles) or “A” (for right-hand drive vehicles).



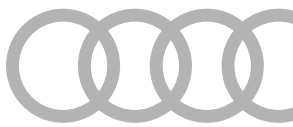
- Press the button again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.
- After a short while, the display will automatically show “C” (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated => [page 74](#) .
- Switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on => [page 72](#) after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

## 5.8 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

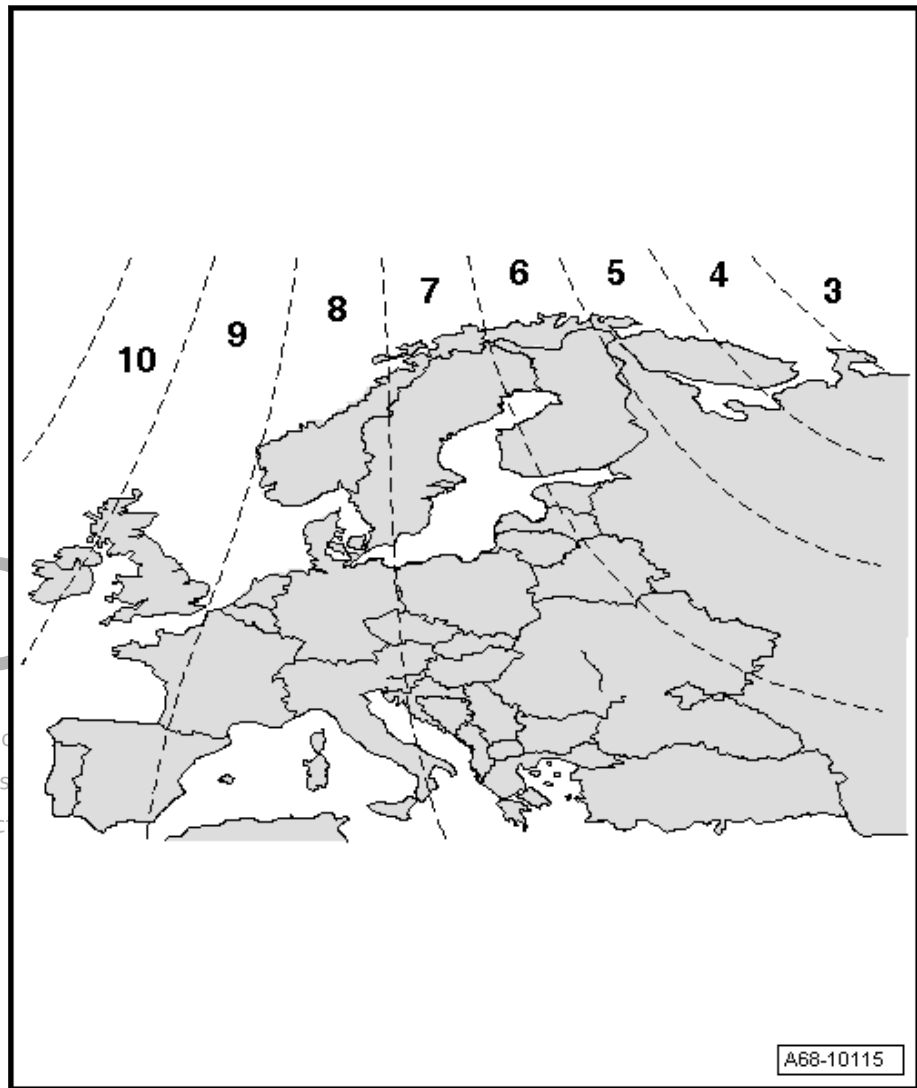
### Europe



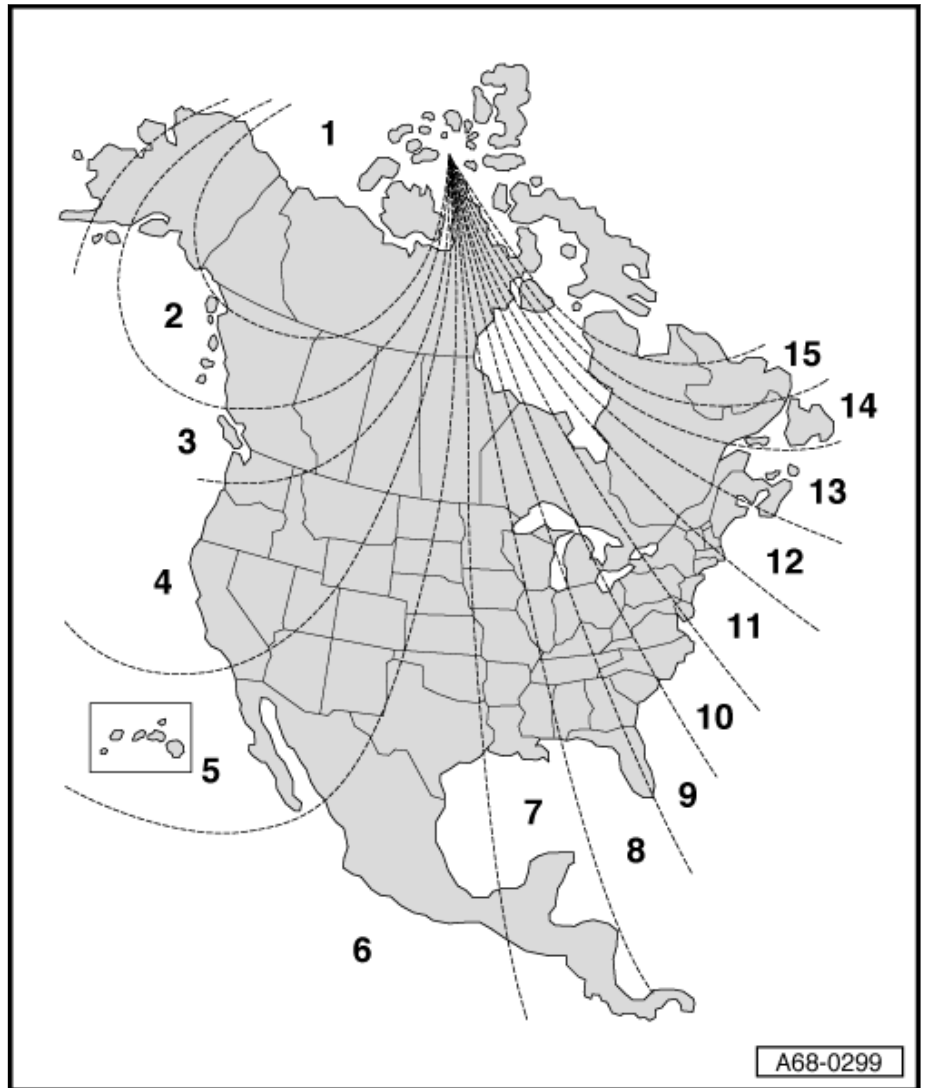
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



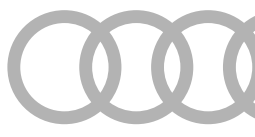
Protected by copyright. Copying is not permitted unless authorized in writing with respect to the correct use of the material.



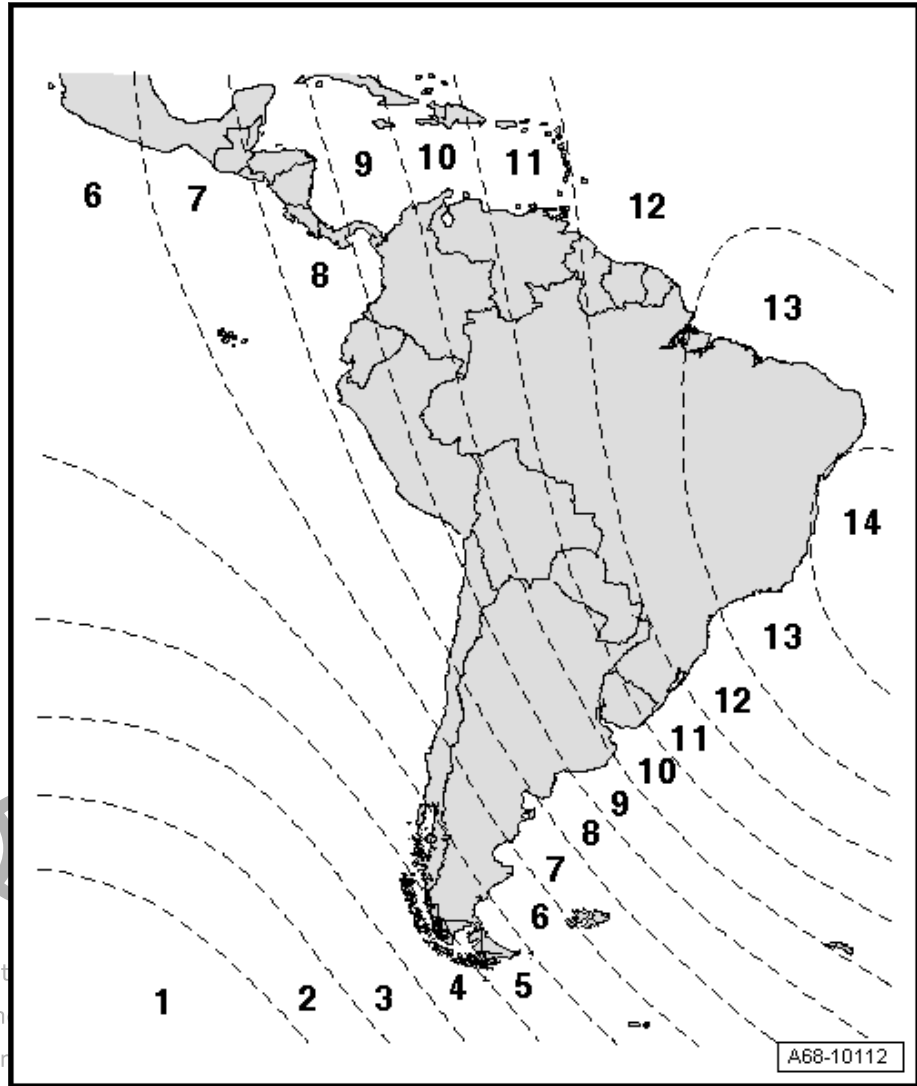
## North America



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



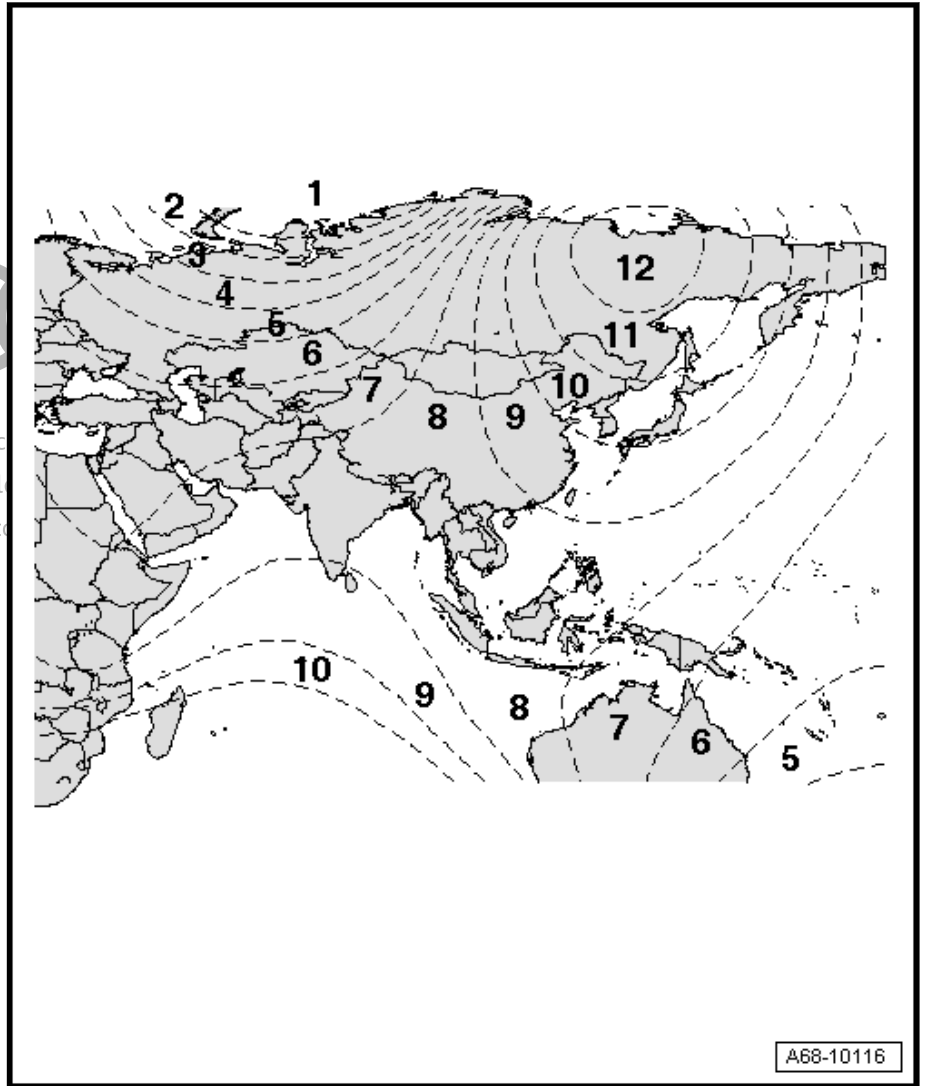
Protected by copyright  
permitted unless auth  
with respect to the cor



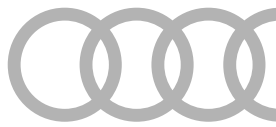
Asia



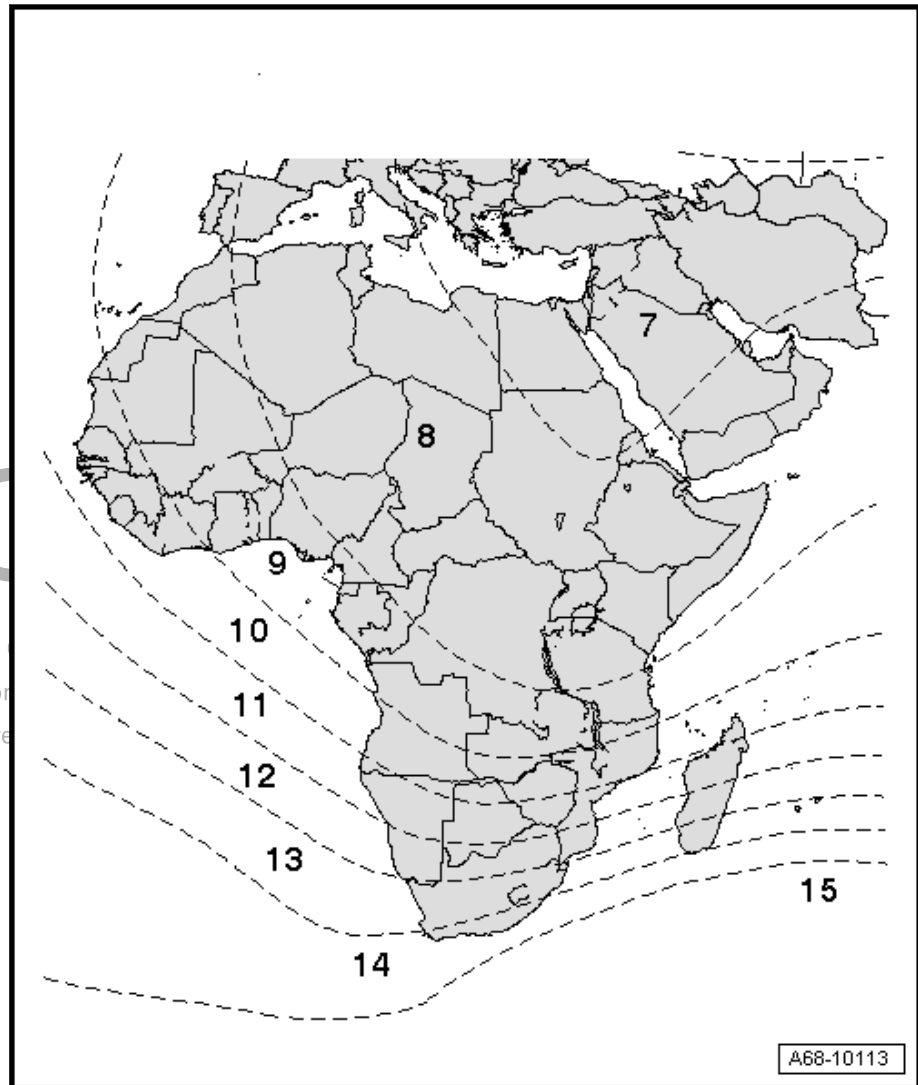
Protected by copyright  
permitted unless  
with respect to



Africa



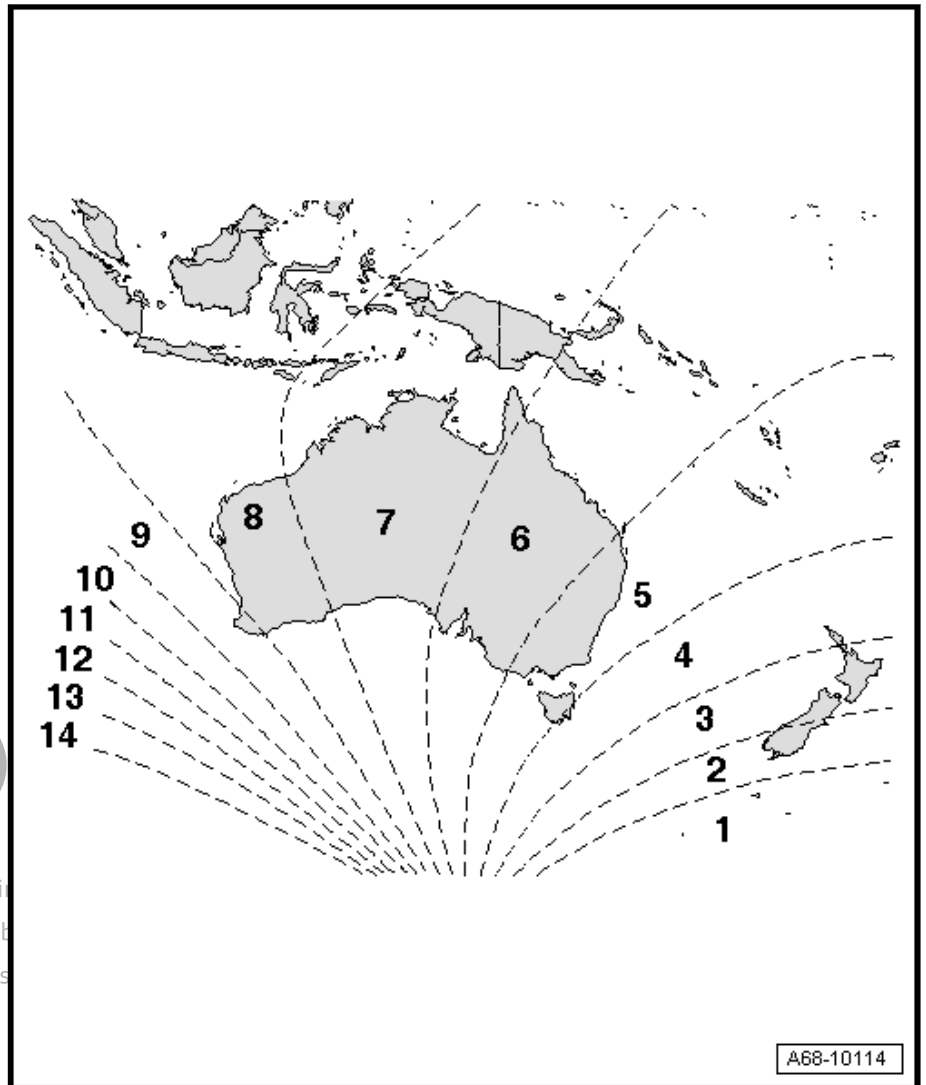
Protected by copyright.  
permitted unless author  
with respect to the corre



**Australia**



Protected by copyright. Copying  
permitted unless authorised by Audi AG  
with respect to the correctness

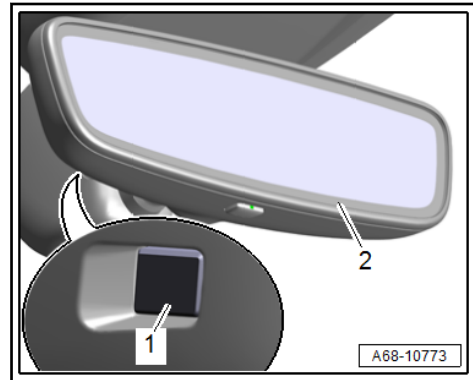


## 5.9 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

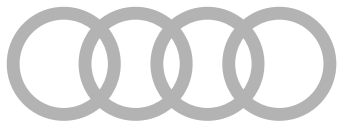
The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

## Test sequence



- Cover photosensor -1- on housing side.
- Aim a light source, e.g. a torch, at photosensor -2- (in mirror) on mirror side.
- Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## 69 – Passenger protection

### 1 Seat belts

⇒ [01.1 fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points](#), page 83

⇒ [01.2 overview - front three-point seat belt](#), page 85

⇒ [01.3 overview - rear outer three-point seat belt](#), page 88

⇒ [01.4 overview - front belt buckle](#), page 88

⇒ [01.5 overview - rear belt buckle](#), page 89

⇒ [a1.6 installing front three-point seat belt](#), page 90

⇒ [a1.7 installing rear three-point seat belt](#), page 97

⇒ [a1.8 installing rear belt guide](#), page 98

⇒ [a1.9 installing front belt guide](#), page 99

⇒ [a1.10 installing front belt end fitting](#), page 101

⇒ [a1.11 installing rear outer belt end fitting](#), page 101

⇒ [a1.12 installing front belt buckle](#), page 102

⇒ [a1.13 installing rear belt buckle](#), page 103

#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat belts and anchorage points

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Note

*The illustration shows the seat belts for the TT Coupé as an example.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Front belt buckle**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**2 - Front belt end fitting**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)

**3 - Automatic belt retractor**

- For front three-point seat belt
- With:

◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N154-

◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter -G552-

◆ Equipment version/country-specific version: control unit for front right belt tensioner -J855-

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)

**4 - Front belt guide fitting**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)

**5 - Rear belt end fitting**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**6 - Automatic belt retractor**

- For rear three-point seat belt
- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**7 - Rear belt guide fitting**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**8 - Rear belt buckle**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 89](#)

**9 - Rear belt guide fitting**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**10 - Automatic belt retractor**

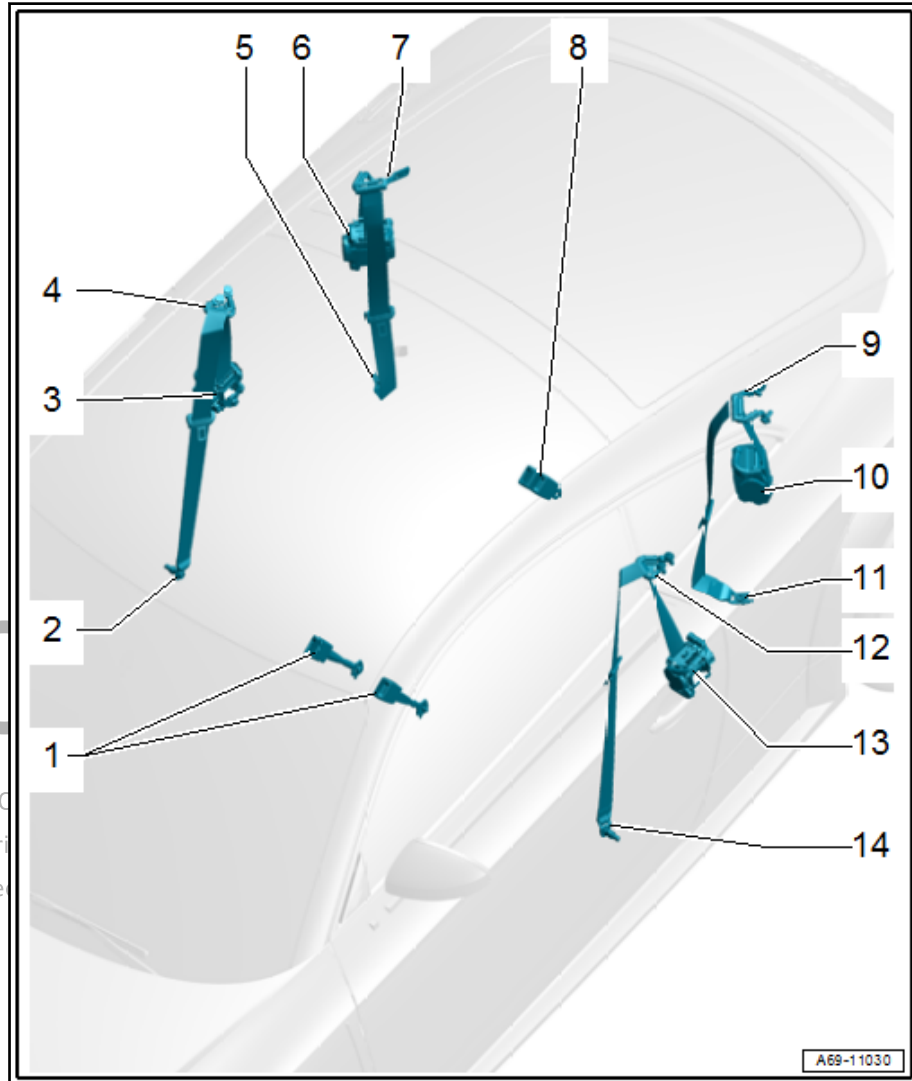
- For rear three-point seat belt
- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**11 - Rear belt end fitting**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 88](#)

**12 - Front belt guide fitting**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)



### 13 - Automatic belt retractor

- For front three-point seat belt
- With:
  - ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N153-
  - ◆ Driver side belt force limiter -G551-
  - ◆ Equipment version/country-specific version: control unit for front left belt tensioner -J854-
    - Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)

### 14 - Front belt end fitting

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 85](#)

## 1.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt

⇒ [01.2.1 overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Coupé](#), page 85

⇒ [01.2.2 overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Roadster](#), page 87

### 1.2.1 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Coupé

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Bolt**

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

**2 - Automatic belt retractor**

- Driver side with
  - ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N153-
  - ◆ Driver side belt force limiter -G551-
  - ◆ Equipment version/country-specific version: control unit for front left belt tensioner -J854-
- Passenger side with
  - ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N154-
  - ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter -G552-
  - ◆ Equipment version/country-specific version: control unit for front right belt tensioner -J855-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 90](#)

**3 - Electrical connector**

**4 - Belt guide fitting**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.6.1 nd installing front three-point seat belt - TT Coupé](#), [page 90](#)

**5 - Bolt**

- 2x
- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

**6 - Belt guide**

- Clip in at belt guide fitting
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.6.1 nd installing front three-point seat belt - TT Coupé](#), [page 90](#)

**7 - Belt guide**

- Clip into side trim
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 99](#)

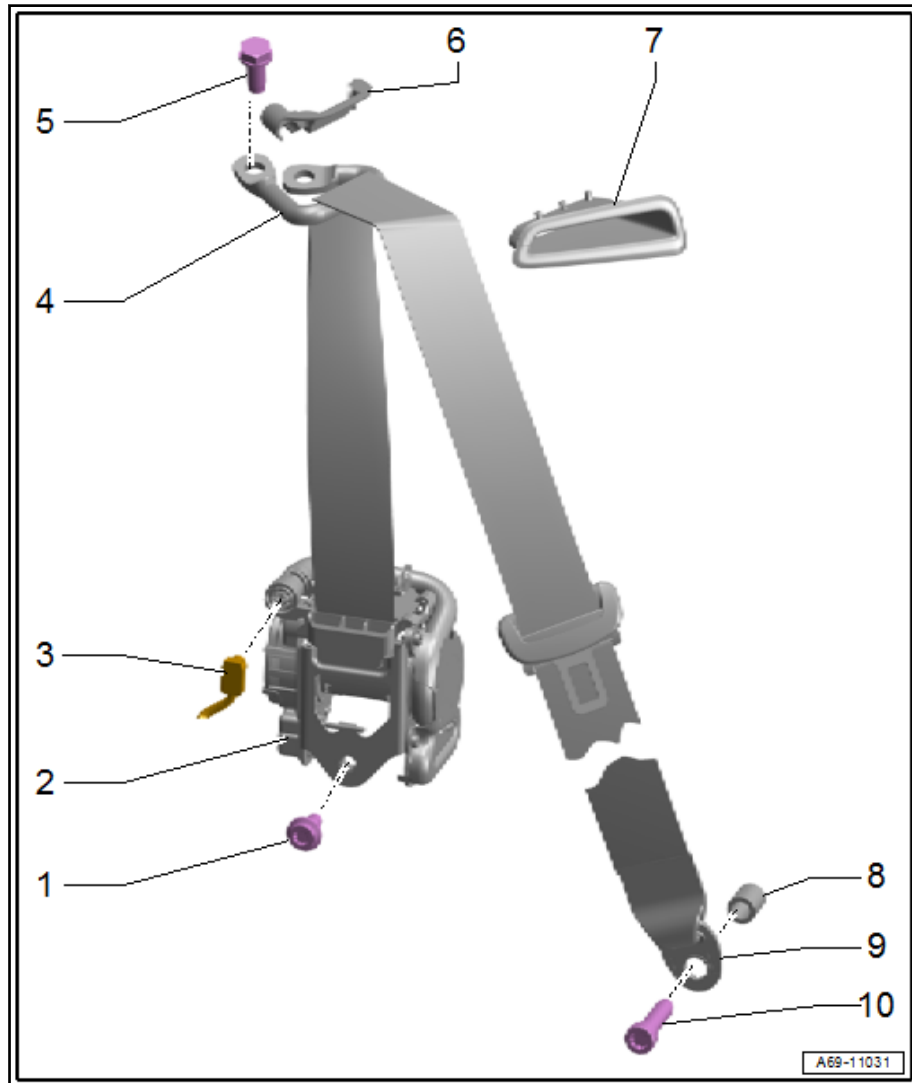
**8 - Stop sleeve**

**9 - Belt end fitting**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 101](#)

**10 - Bolt**

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this information. All rights reserved. © Audi AG.

## 1.2.2 Assembly overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Roadster

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

### 1 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

### 2 - Automatic belt retractor

- Driver side with
- ◆ Driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N153-
- ◆ Driver side belt force limiter -G551-
- Passenger side with
- ◆ Front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N154-
- ◆ Front passenger side belt force limiter -G552-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 94](#)

### 3 - Electrical connector

- For belt force limiter -G551-/-G552-

### 4 - Electrical connector

- For belt tensioner igniter -N153-/-N154-

### 5 - Belt guide fitting

### 6 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

### 7 - Belt guide

- Clip in at back panel cover
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 99](#)

### 8 - Electrical connector

- For microphone 1 on driver side -R224-
- Passenger side: microphone 1 on front passenger side -R227-

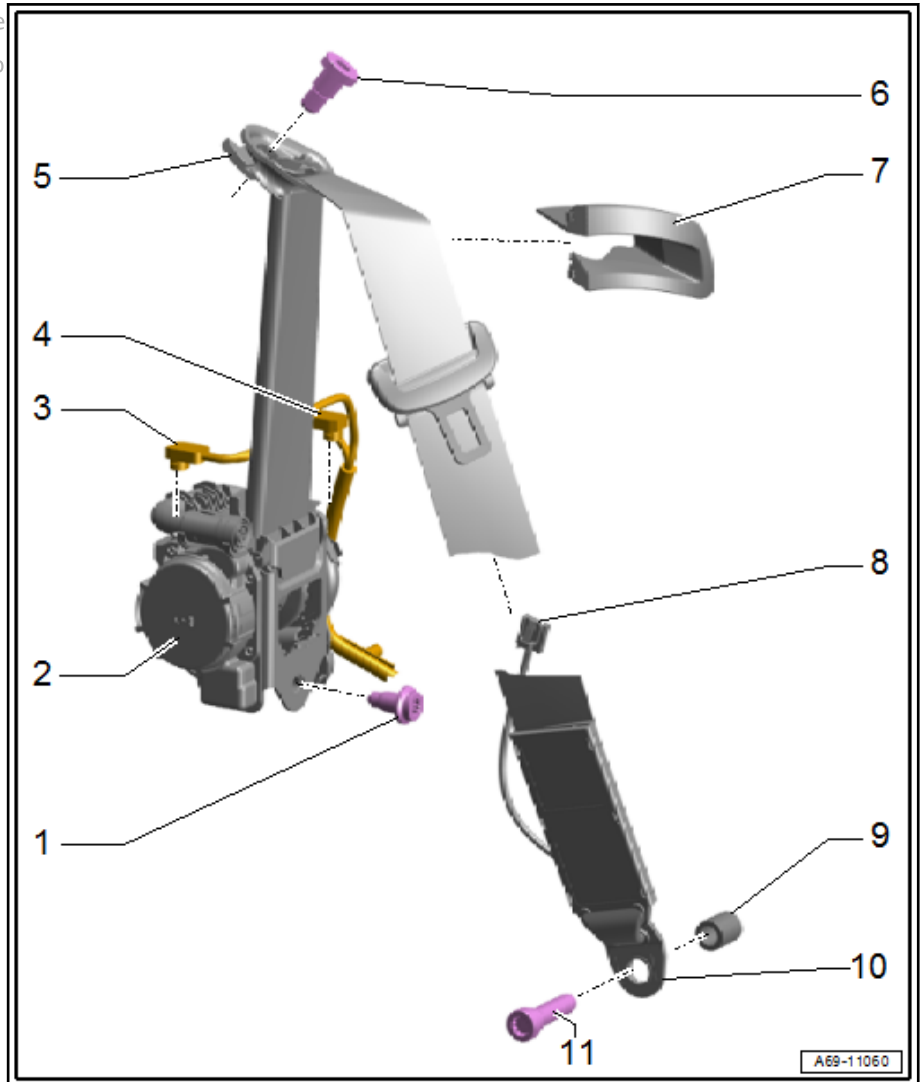
### 9 - Stop sleeve

### 10 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 101](#)

### 11 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm



### 1.3 Assembly overview - rear outer three-point seat belt

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

#### 1 - Belt end fitting

- Removing and installing => [page 101](#)

#### 2 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

#### 3 - Belt guide

- Clip into C-pillar trim
- Removing and installing => [page 98](#)

#### 4 - Bolts

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

#### 5 - Belt guide fitting

- Removing and installing => [a1.7 nd installing rear three-point seat belt", page 97](#)

#### 6 - Belt guide

- Clip in at belt guide fitting
- Removing and installing => [a1.7 nd installing rear three-point seat belt", page 97](#)

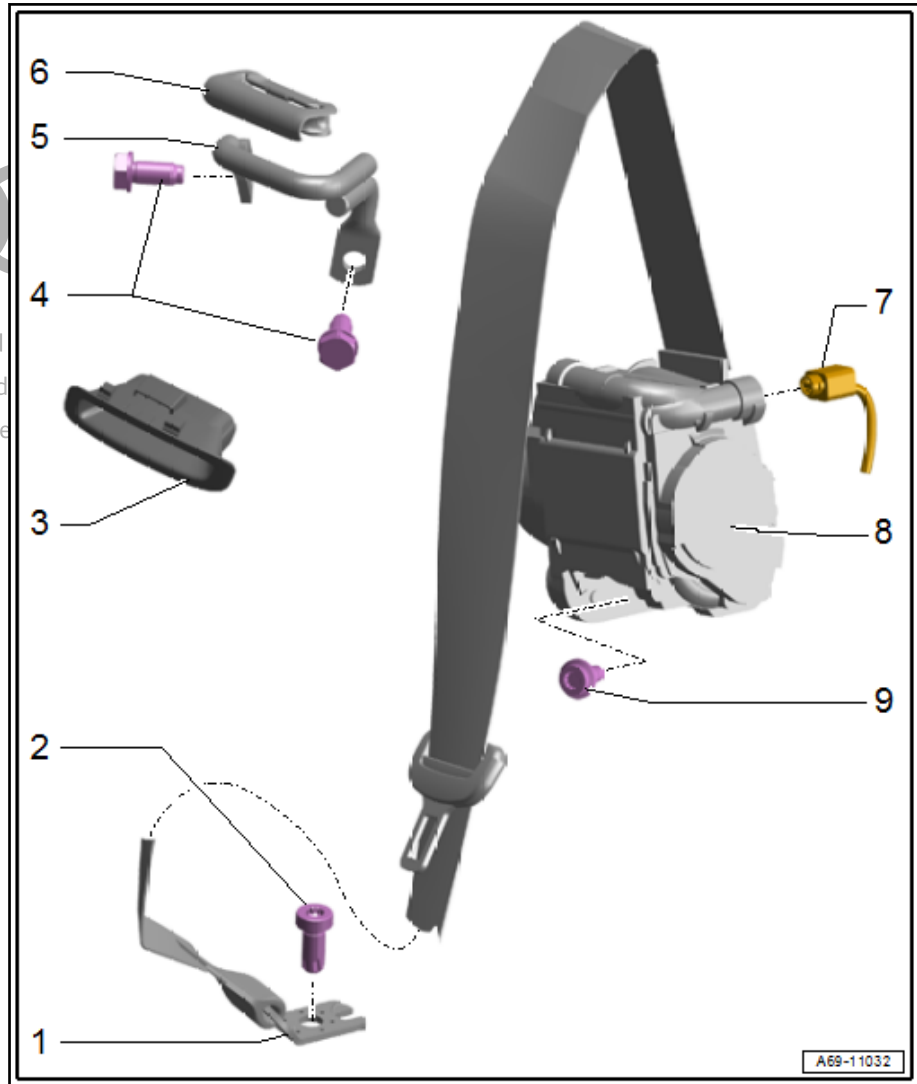
#### 7 - Electrical connector

#### 8 - Automatic belt retractor

- Driver side: with rear belt tensioner igniter on driver side -N196-
- Passenger side: with rear belt tensioner igniter on passenger side -N197-
- Removing and installing => [page 97](#)

#### 9 - Bolt

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm



### 1.4 Assembly overview - front belt buckle

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Front seat**

**2 - Front belt buckle**

- Driver side: with driver side belt switch -E24-
- Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch -E25-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)
- Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

**3 - Electrical connector**

- For belt switch

**4 - Wire retainer**

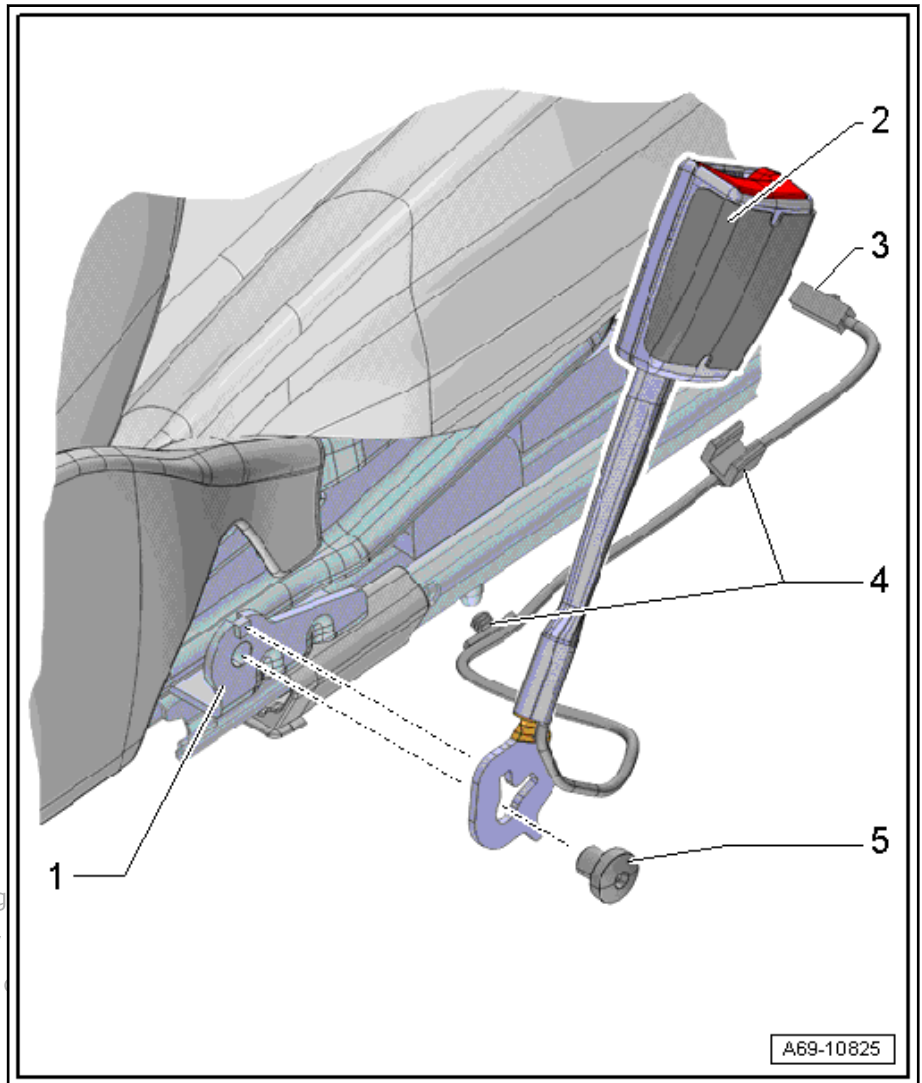
- Clip into seat pan

**5 - Bolt**

- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 34.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctness



**1.5 Assembly overview - rear belt buckle**

**1 - Compression spring****2 - Right belt buckle**

- With rear belt switch, passenger side -E259-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 103](#)
- Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened

**3 - Bolt**

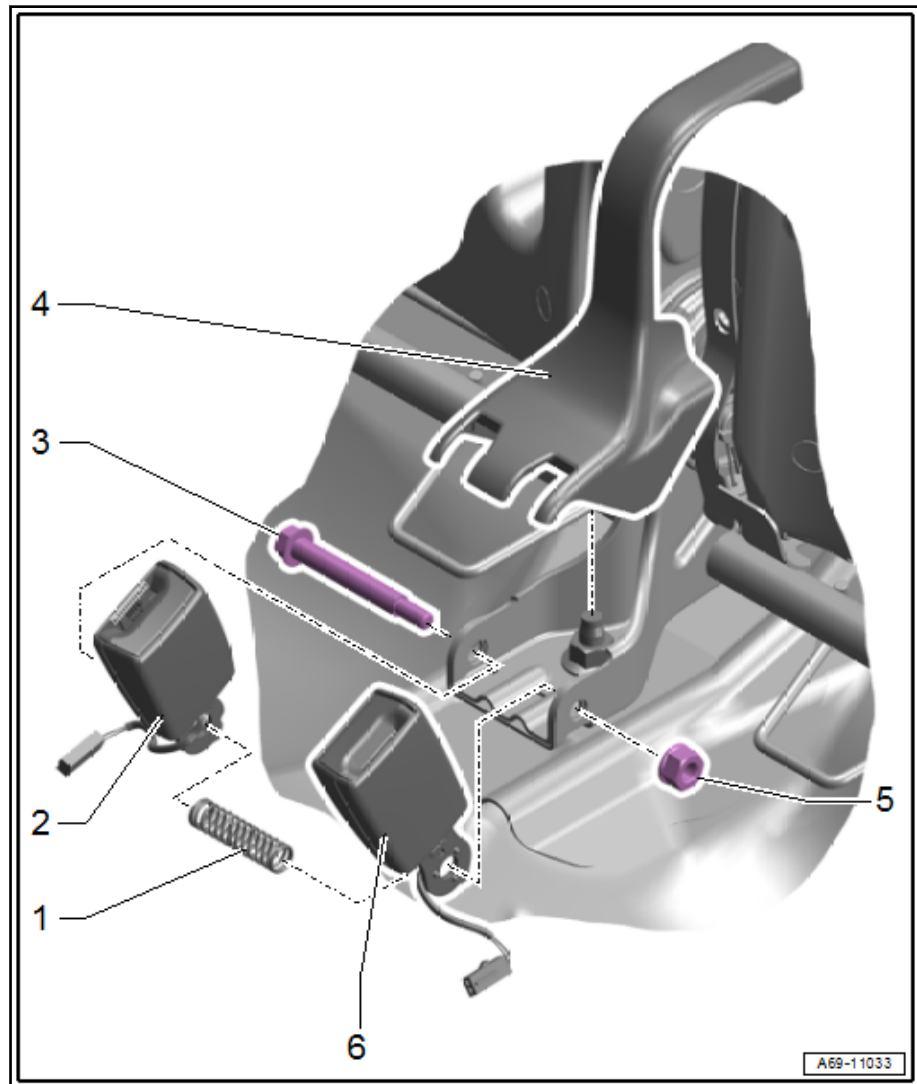
- Renew bolt if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened

**4 - Cover****5 - Nut**

- Renew nut if removed following an accident while seat belt was fastened
- 40 Nm

**6 - Left belt buckle**

- With rear belt switch, driver side -E258-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 103](#)
- Renew belt buckle if belt tensioner was triggered while belt was fastened



## 1.6 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt

⇒ [a1.6.1 nd installing front three-point seat belt - TT Coupé](#), [page 90](#)

⇒ [a1.6.2 nd installing front three-point seat belt - TT Roadster](#), [page 94](#)

### 1.6.1 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt - TT Coupé

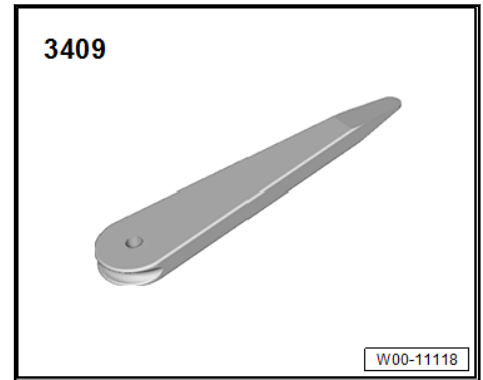
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge -3409-



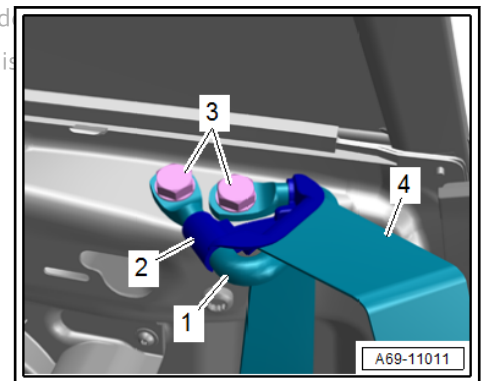
Removing

**! WARNING**

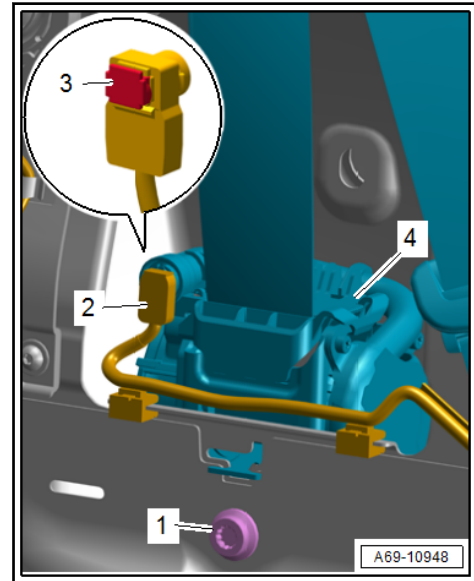
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#) .*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove front belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 258](#) .
- Unclip belt guide -2- using removal wedge -3409-

... private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove bolts -3-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -1- and guide out belt -4-.

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking element -3- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -2- for belt tensioner igniter 1.
- Remove bolt -1- and take automatic belt retractor -4- out of mounting.

**Installing****WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

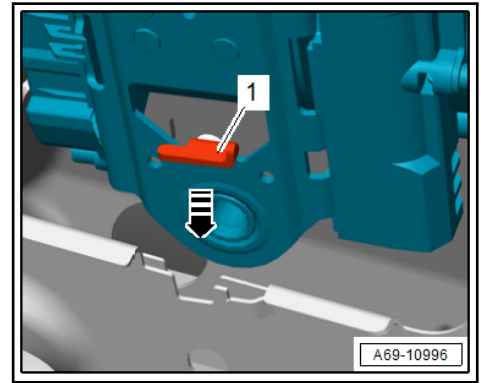
- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.

**Note**

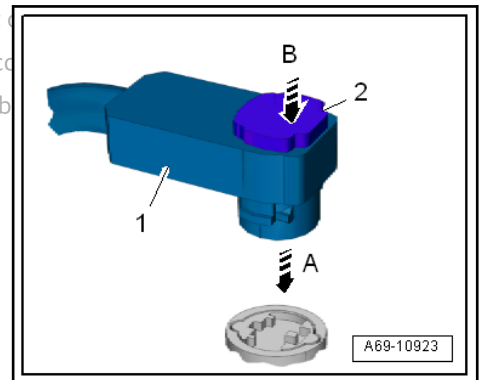
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Control unit -J854-/-J855- must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and tighten bolt.



- Attach connector -1- to igniter -arrow A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in igniter while at the same time locking it.

**! WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**! WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.2.1 overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Coupé](#), [page 85](#)

## 1.6.2 Removing and installing front three-point seat belt - TT Roadster

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

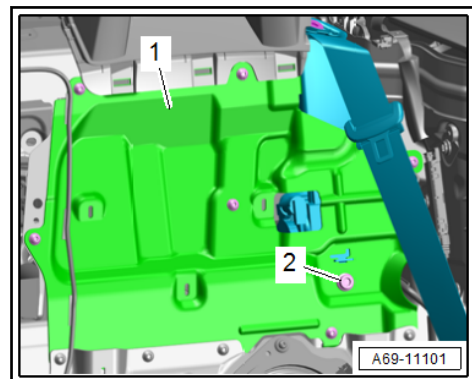
### Removing



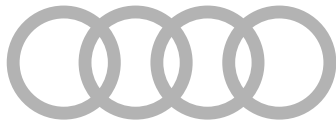
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* ⇒ [page 3](#).
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ [page 5](#).

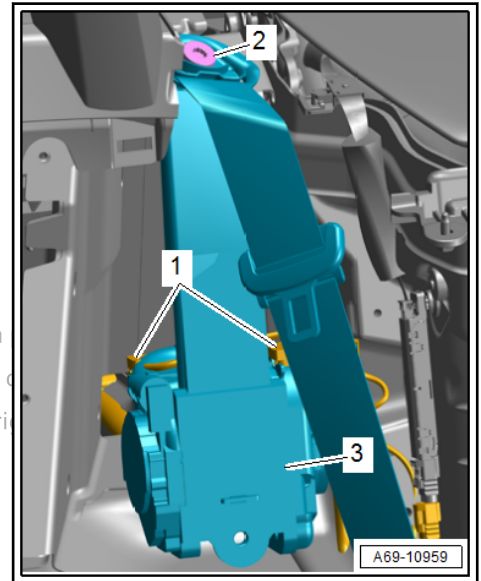
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove front belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#).
- Remove back panel trim ⇒ [page 262](#).
- Remove bolt -2- for automatic belt retractor.



- Remove back panel (top) -1- ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51; Inner side panel; Removing and installing back panel.
- Detach automatic belt retractor from mounting.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying and distribution of this document is prohibited.



**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connectors -1- for automatic belt retractor. To do so, release connector locking element with a small screwdriver.
- Remove bolt -2- for belt guide fitting and detach automatic belt retractor -3-.

**Installing**



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.



**Note**

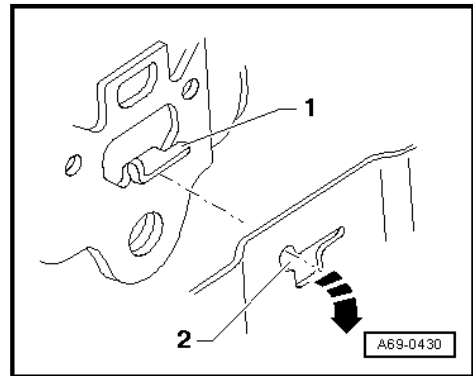
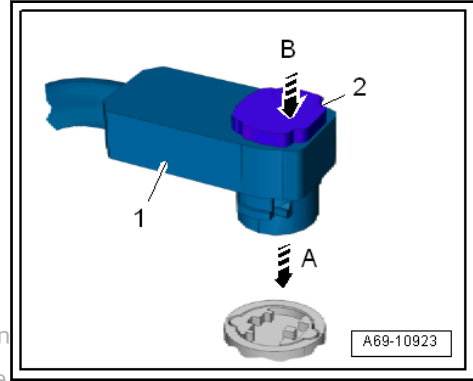
*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

- Plug in connector -1- -arrow A-.

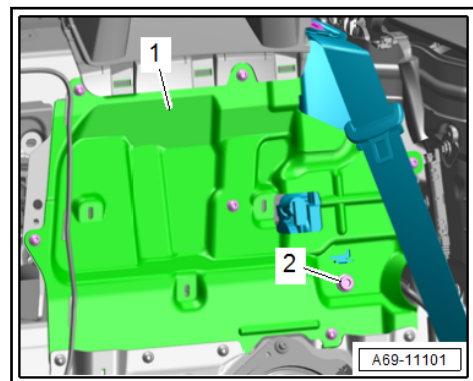


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is prohibited without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the use of this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

- Press in connector locking element -2- arrow B. This inserts connector as far as possible in igniter while at the same time locking it.
- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -arrow- and hand-tighten bolt.



- Install back panel (top) ⇒ Body Repairs; Rep. gr. 51; Inner side panel; Removing and installing back panel.



- Tighten bolt -2- for automatic belt retractor.



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.2.2 overview - front three-point seat belt, TT Roadster](#), page 87

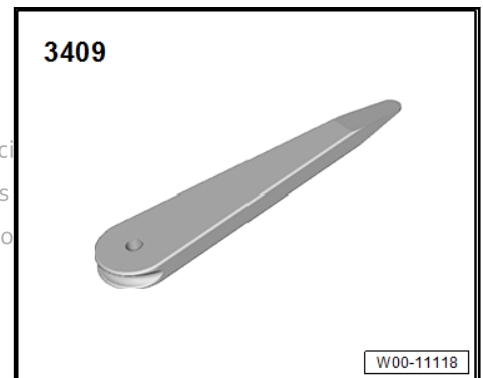
## 1.7 Removing and installing rear three-point seat belt

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

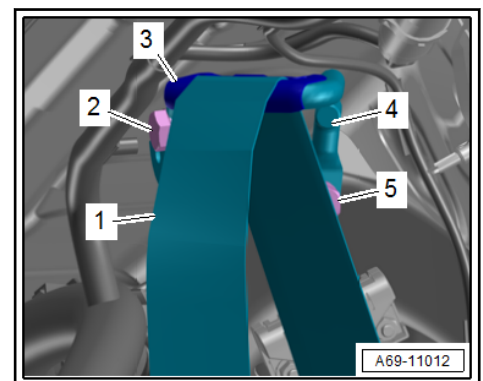
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



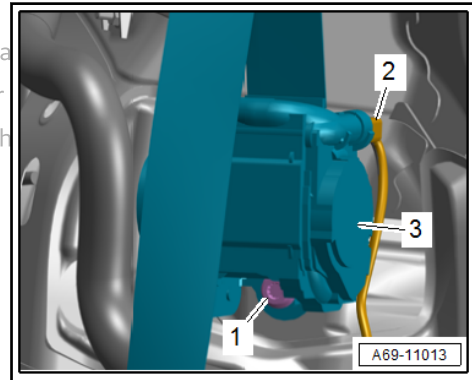
### Removing

- Remove C-pillar trim ⇒ [page 257](#) .
- Remove rear belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Guide belt out of C-pillar trim.
- Unclip belt guide -3- using removal wedge -3409-.



- Remove bolts -2, 5-.
- Detach belt guide fitting -4- and guide out belt -1-.
- Remove bolt -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2021 Audi AG



- Take three-point seat belt -3- out of mounting.

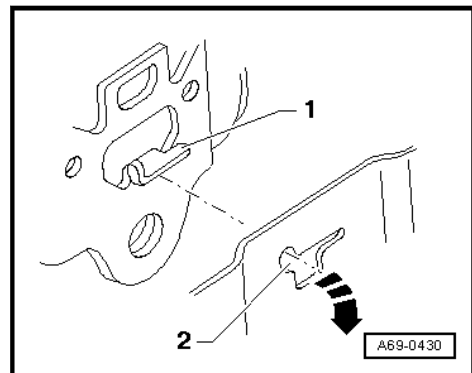


**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connector -2- at belt tensioner igniter. To do so, release connector locking element with a small screwdriver.

**Installing**



- If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the bolts for the belt system.
- Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [01.3 overview - rear outer three-point seat belt](#), page 88**

## 1.8 Removing and installing rear belt guide

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

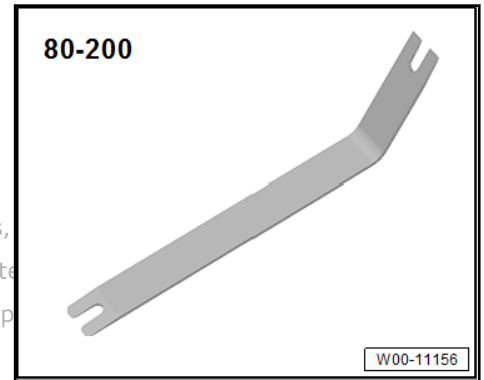
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**



◆ Removal lever -80-200-

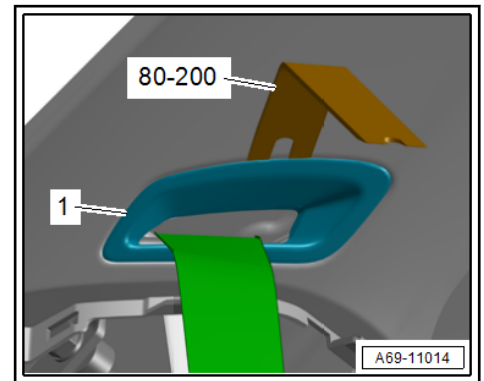


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop



**Removing**

- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 258](#) .
- Remove rear belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Unclip belt guide -1- from C-pillar trim; to do so, disengage retaining tabs on belt guide using removal lever -80-200-.



- Guide out belt and detach belt guide.

**Installing**

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

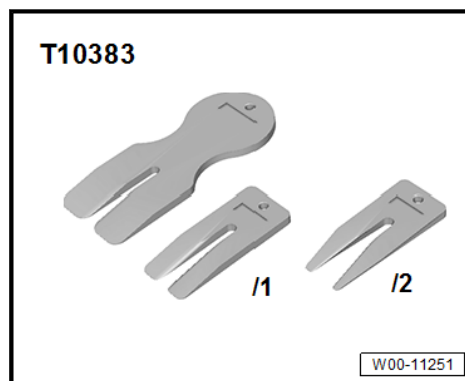
**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.3 overview - rear outer three-point seat belt](#), [page 88](#)**

**1.9 Removing and installing front belt guide**

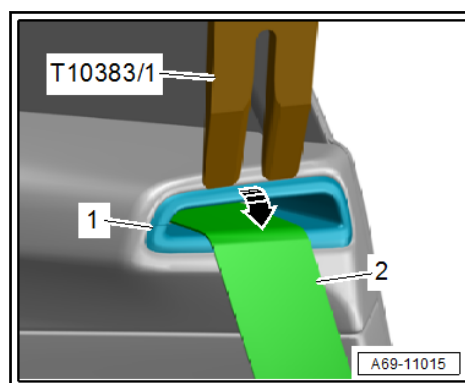
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

◆ Wedges -T10383-

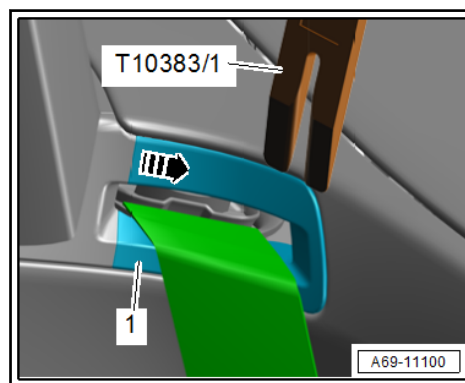


Removing - TT Coupé



- Unclip rear belt guide -1- from side trim -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1-.
- Guide belt -2- out of belt guide.

Removing - TT Roadster



- Open convertible roof.
- Unclip front belt guide -1- from back panel cover using wedge -T10383/1-.
- Pull belt guide outwards out of rollover bar trim in direction of -arrow- and detach.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

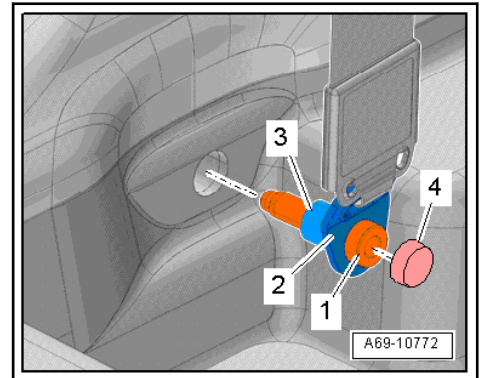
**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.2 overview - front three-point seat belt](#), page 85

## 1.10 Removing and installing front belt end fitting

### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Use a screwdriver to prise off cap -4- (if fitted).
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Remove bolt with belt end fitting -2- and stop sleeve -3-.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for microphone for hands-free system.

### Installing

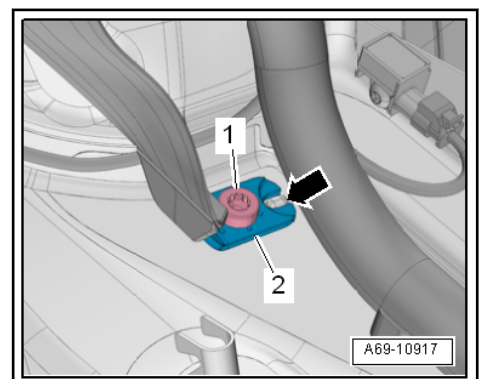
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.2 overview - front three-point seat belt](#), page 85

## 1.11 Removing and installing rear outer belt end fitting

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 258](#).
- Remove bolt -1- from belt end fitting -2-.

### Installing

- Locating lug -arrow- on floor panel must be located in recess in belt end fitting -2-.

- Tighten bolt -1- at belt end fitting.

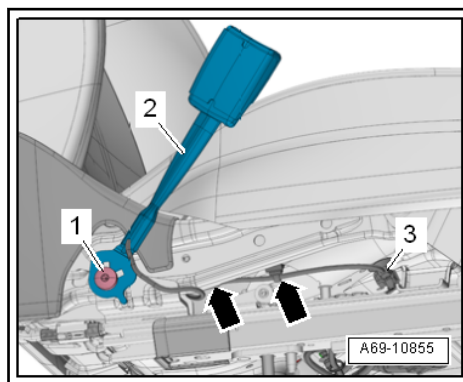
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.3 overview - rear outer three-point seat belt](#), page 88

## 1.12 Removing and installing front belt buckle

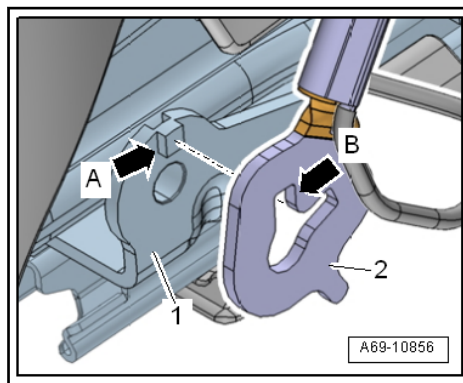
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector -3- and move wiring clear -arrows-.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach belt buckle -2-.

### Installing



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Position belt buckle -2- so that recess -arrow B- coincides with lug -arrow A- on seat pan -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.4 overview - front belt buckle](#), [page 88](#)

### 1.13 Removing and installing rear belt buckle

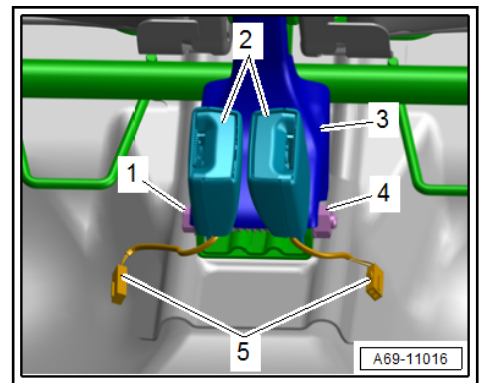
#### Removing

- Remove rear bench seat ⇒ [page 395](#).
- Disengage and detach cover -3-.
- If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -5- for belt switches and move clear.
- Remove nut -4- and pull out bolt -1-.
- Remove belt buckles -2-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.5 overview - rear belt buckle](#), [page 89](#)



## 2 Child seat anchors

⇒ [o2.1 verview - front child seat anchors](#)", page 104

⇒ [o2.2 verview - rear child seat anchors](#)", page 104

⇒ [a2.3 nd installing front child seat anchor](#)", page 106

⇒ [a2.4 nd installing rear child seat anchor](#)", page 106

### 2.1 Assembly overview - front child seat anchors

#### 1 - Child seat anchor

- Front passenger's seat only
- Bolted to seat pan
- Checking after an accident ⇒ [page 13](#)
- Renew child seat anchor if damaged or deformed
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)

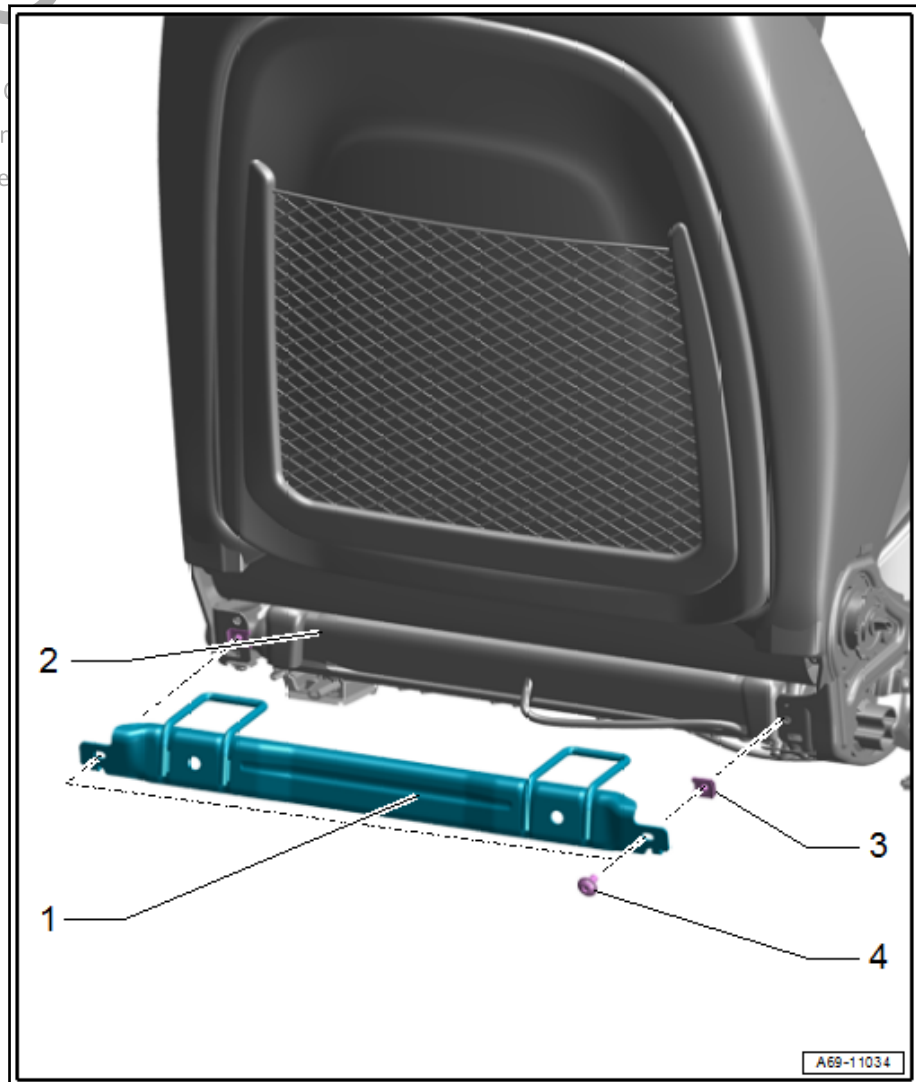
#### 2 - Front passenger seat

#### 3 - Speed nut

- 2x
- Inserted in seat pan
- Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

#### 4 - Bolt

- 2x
- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm



### 2.2 Assembly overview - rear child seat anchors

**1 - Guide**

- For child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)
- Must be seated firmly on anchor

**2 - Cover**

- For child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.1 nd installing guide for child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat](#), [page 106](#)
- Must be seated firmly on anchor

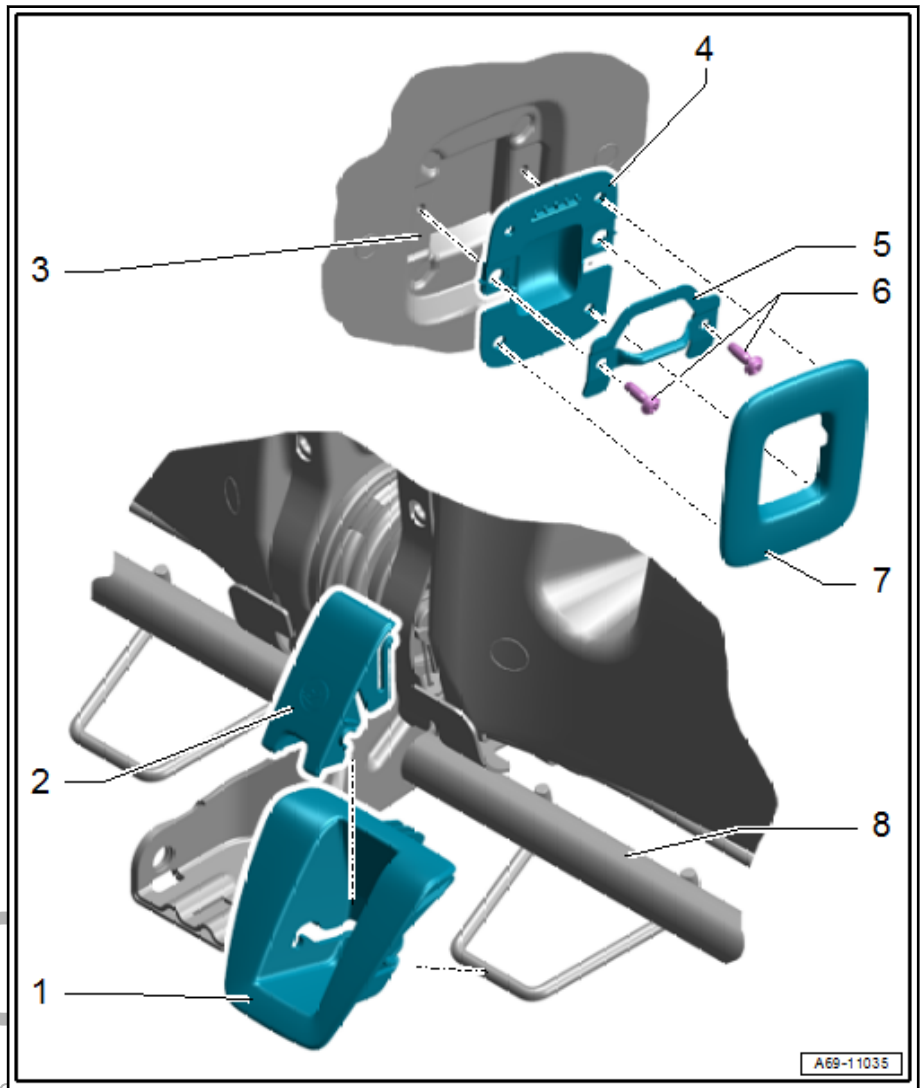
**3 - Rear seat backrest**

**4 - Cover**

- For child seat anchor
- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.2 nd installing ISOFIX child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat backrest](#), [page 107](#)
- Can only be installed in one position

**5 - Child seat anchor**

- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 107](#)



**6 - Bolts**

- 6.5 Nm

**7 - Cover**

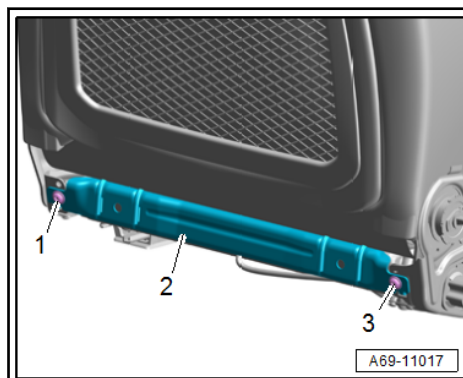
- For child seat anchor
- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.2 nd installing ISOFIX child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat backrest](#), [page 107](#)
- Renew cover if damaged
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Can only be installed in one position

**8 - Backrest frame**

- Child seat anchor welded to backrest frame

## 2.3 Removing and installing front child seat anchor

### Removing



- Remove front passenger seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Fold backrest down.
- Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Detach child seat anchor -2- from front seat towards rear.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - front child seat anchors", page 104](#)

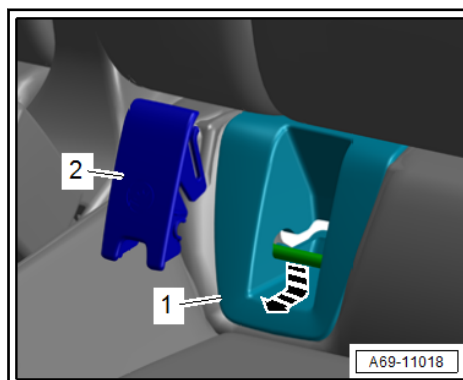
## 2.4 Removing and installing rear child seat anchor

⇒ [a2.4.1 nd installing guide for child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat", page 106](#)

⇒ [a2.4.2 nd installing ISOFIX child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat backrest", page 107](#)

### 2.4.1 Removing and installing guide for child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat

#### Removing



- Unclip cover -2- for child seat anchor from anchor and detach.



- Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -arrow-.

### Installing

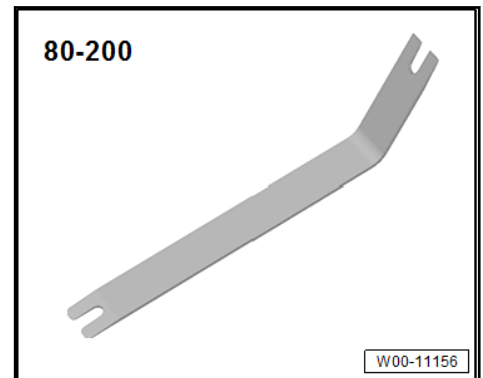
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 overview - rear child seat anchors](#), page 104

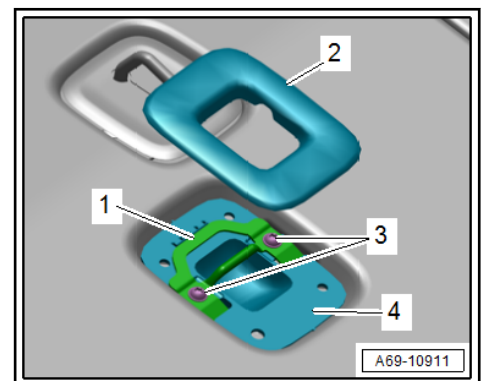
## 2.4.2 Removing and installing ISOFIX child seat anchor (rear) - rear seat backrest

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



### Removing



- Fold down rear seat backrest.
- Unclip cover -2- for child seat anchor at corners using removal wedge -80-200-.
- Remove bolts -3-.
- Detach anchor -1- with cover -4-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 overview - rear child seat anchors](#), page 104



## 3 Airbag system

⇒ [o3.1 fitting locations - airbag system", page 108](#)

### 3.1 Overview of fitting locations - airbag system

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



#### Note

*The illustration shows the airbag system for the TT Coupé as an example.*

**1 - Airbag control unit -J234-**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 111](#)

**2 - Knee airbag (front passenger side)**

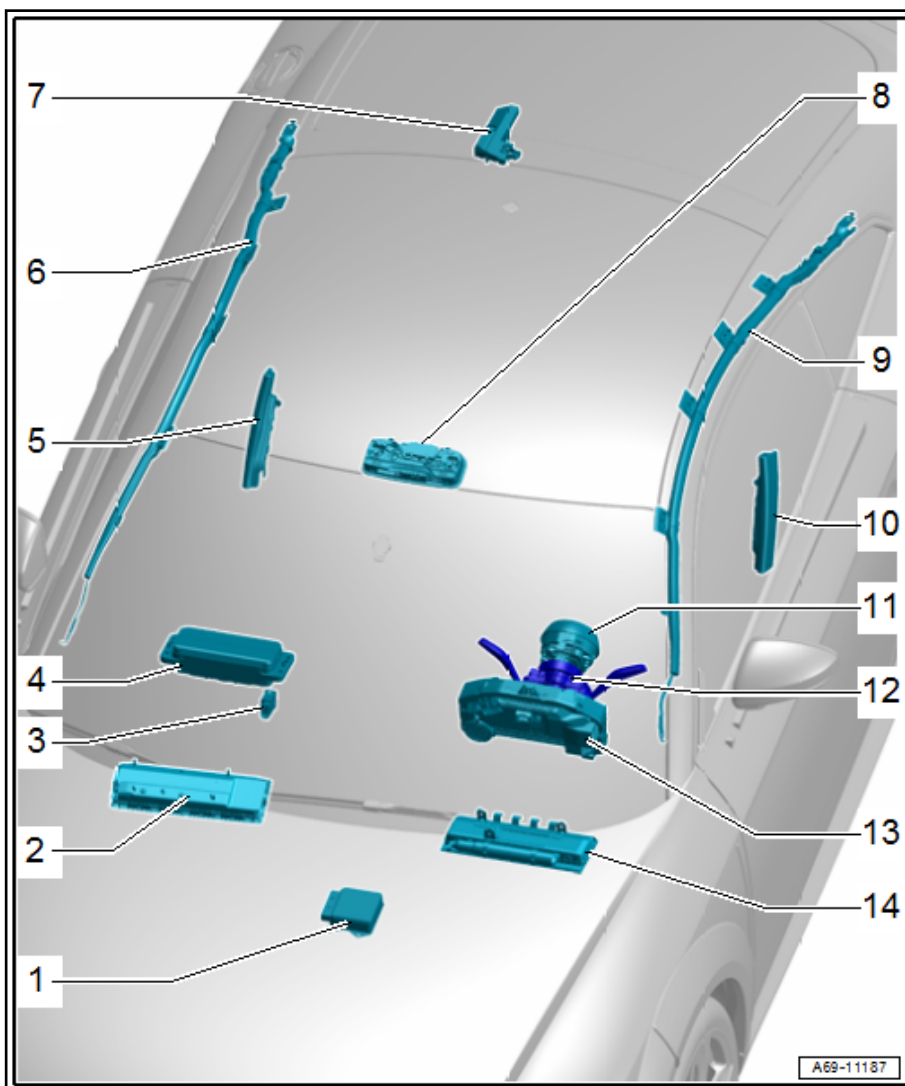
- With front passenger side knee airbag igniter -N296-
- NAR vehicles
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 150](#)

**3 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 131](#)

**4 - Airbag (passenger side)**

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-
- NAR version: Front passenger airbag unit -NX3- with airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-, airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side -N132- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491-
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 125](#)



**5 - Side airbag (front passenger side)**

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 133](#)

**6 - Curtain airbag (front passenger side)**

- With front passenger side curtain airbag igniter -N252-
- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 143](#)

**7 - Battery isolation igniter -N253-**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 114](#)

**8 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-**

- Integrated in front roof module -WX3-. Cannot be renewed separately if defective
- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)

**9 - Curtain airbag (driver side)**

- With driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251-
- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 143](#)

**10 - Side airbag (driver side)**



- With side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 133](#)

#### 11 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side -N95-
- NAR version: with igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag -N490-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 118](#)

#### 12 - Steering column electronics control unit -J527-

- With coil connector -F350-
- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

#### 13 - Airbag warning lamp -K75-

- Integrated in dash panel insert
- Cannot be renewed separately
- Removing and installing dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90; Dash panel insert; Assembly overview - dash panel insert

#### 14 - Knee airbag (driver side)

- With driver side knee airbag igniter -N295-
- NAR vehicles
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 149](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 4 Airbag control unit

⇒ [o4.1 verview - airbag control unit", page 111](#)

⇒ [a4.2 nd installing airbag control unitJ234", page 111](#)

### 4.1 Assembly overview - airbag control unit

#### 1 - Airbag control unit -J234-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 111](#)
- Earth connection for airbag control unit is provided by securing housing to body

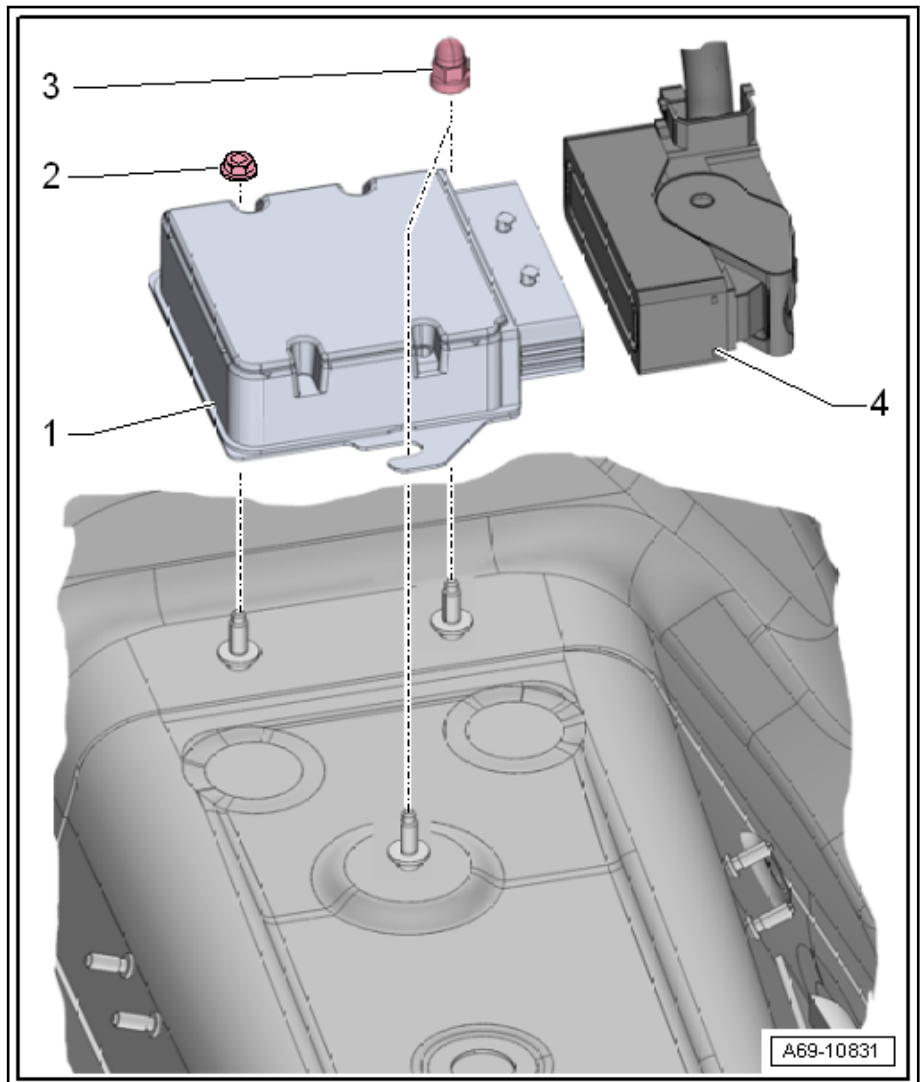
#### 2 - Nut

- 9 Nm
- Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

#### 3 - Nut

- 2x
- 9 Nm
- Threads must be free of paint and dirt; nut and earth stud provide earth connection for control unit

#### 4 - Electrical connector



### 4.2 Removing and installing airbag control unit -J234-

Removing



**WARNING**

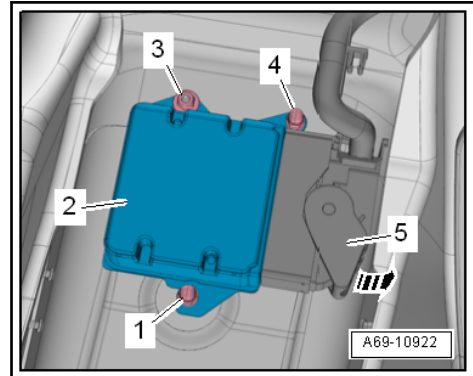
**Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#)**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire  
 ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



- Remove centre console => [page 57](#) .
- Remove brackets (front) for centre console (driver and passenger side) => [page 64](#) .
- Unscrew nut -3- at front of driver footwell.



### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connector at front of front passenger footwell; to do so, release catch and open retaining clip -5- at connector -arrow-.
- Remove nuts -1, 4-.
- Lift airbag control unit -2- off studs and take out towards passenger side.



### Note

*For greater clarity the dash panel and heater and air conditioning unit are not shown in the illustration.*

### Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



### Note

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

- ◆ *If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- ◆ *The airbag control unit -J234- must be encoded after it has been renewed ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.1 overview - airbag control unit](#), page 111**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5 Battery isolation igniter

⇒ [o5.1 verview - battery isolation igniter", page 114](#)

⇒ [a5.2 nd installing battery isolation igniter", page 114](#)

### 5.1 Assembly overview - battery isolation igniter

#### 1 - Electrical connector

- For battery isolation igniter -N253-
- Releasing and unplugging ⇒ [page 116](#)

#### 2 - Nuts

- 15 Nm

#### 3 - Battery isolation igniter - N253-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 114](#)

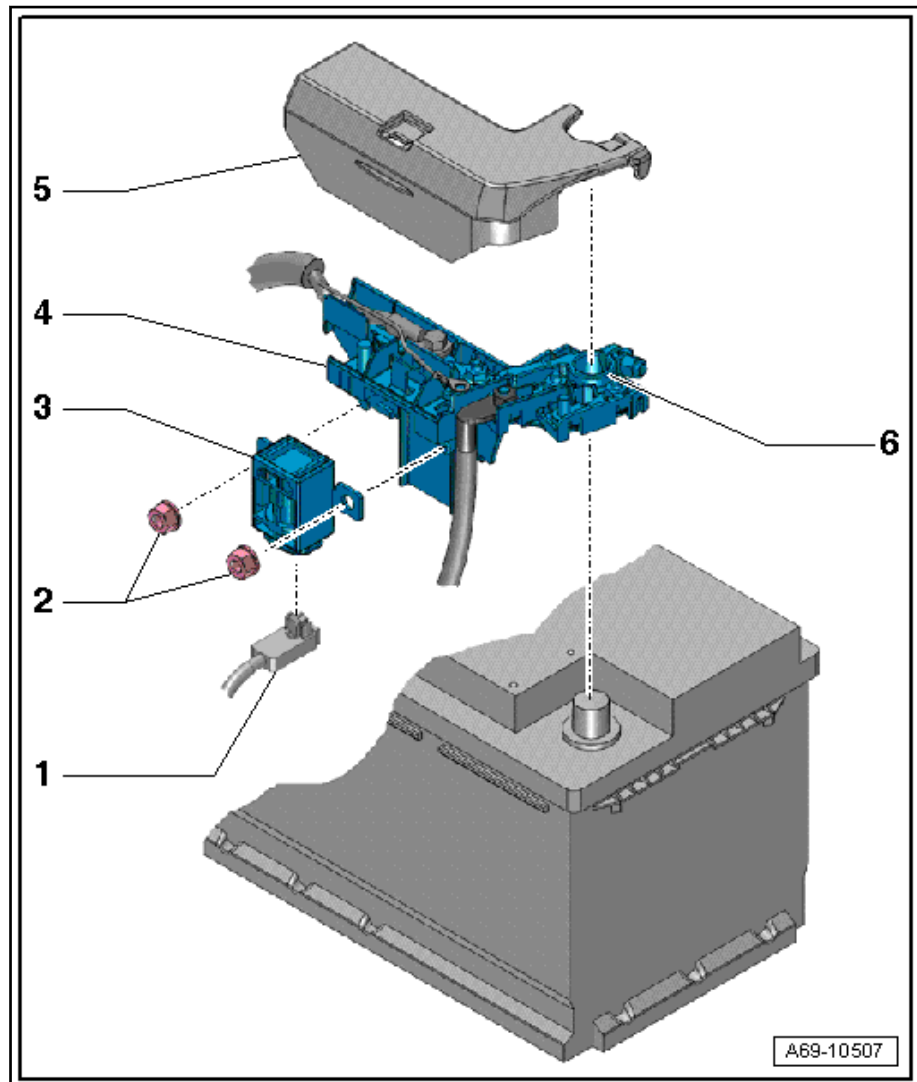
#### 4 - Fuse holder A -SA-

#### 5 - Cover

- For fuse holder A -SA-

#### 6 - Positive terminal

- Tightening torque  
⇒ Electrical system;  
Rep. gr. 27; Battery;  
Assembly overview -  
battery



### 5.2 Removing and installing battery isolation igniter

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Removing

**! WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*

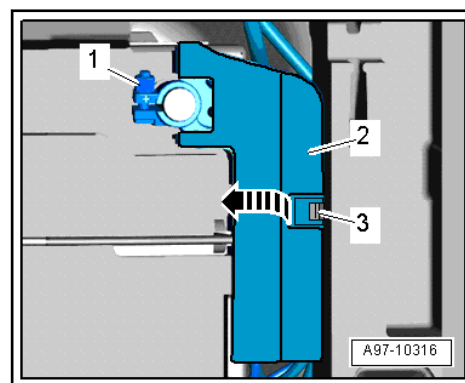


### Note

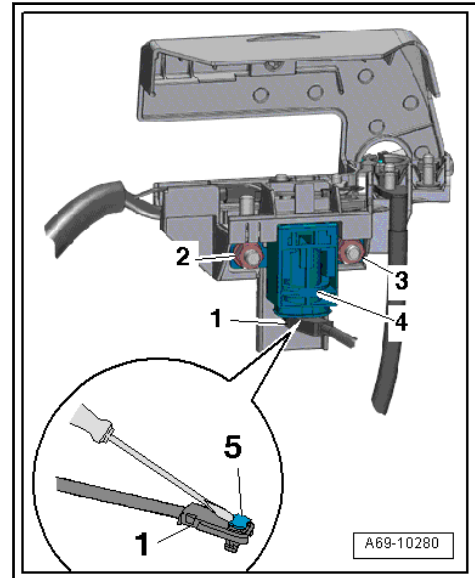
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- ◆ *If the airbag warning lamp -K75- is on after an accident, use the ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester to check whether crash data have been stored. If this is the case, check whether the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the event memory for the battery isolation igniter -N253-. If this fault is stored in the memory, the battery isolation igniter -N253- must be renewed.*
- ◆ *Each time the airbag is triggered, the battery isolation igniter -N253- electrically isolates the circuit. Battery isolation igniter -N253- must be renewed after triggering.*

- Switch on ignition.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Loosen nut -1- and detach battery clamp of positive cable with fuse holder A -SA- from battery terminal.



- Pull fuse holder A -SA- out upwards.
- Release retaining spring -3- and open up flap -2- over fuse holder A -SA- -arrow-.



**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove nuts -2, 3-.
- Detach battery isolation igniter -4-.
- Release connector locking element -5- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector -1-.

**Installing**



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

- As a final step, interrogate event memory of airbag control unit -J234- and deal with any entries ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.1 overview - battery isolation igniter](#), page 114**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## 6 Airbag (driver side)

⇒ [c6.1 overview - driver airbag", page 118](#)

⇒ [a6.2 nd installing airbag unit with igniters", page 119](#)

⇒ [c6.3 onnector at airbag", page 122](#)

### 6.1 Assembly overview - driver airbag



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Bolt**

- Tightening torque  
 ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering wheel; Assembly overview - steering wheel

**2 - Steering wheel**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Assembly overview  
 ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering wheel; Assembly overview - steering wheel

**3 - Steering column electronics control unit -J527-**

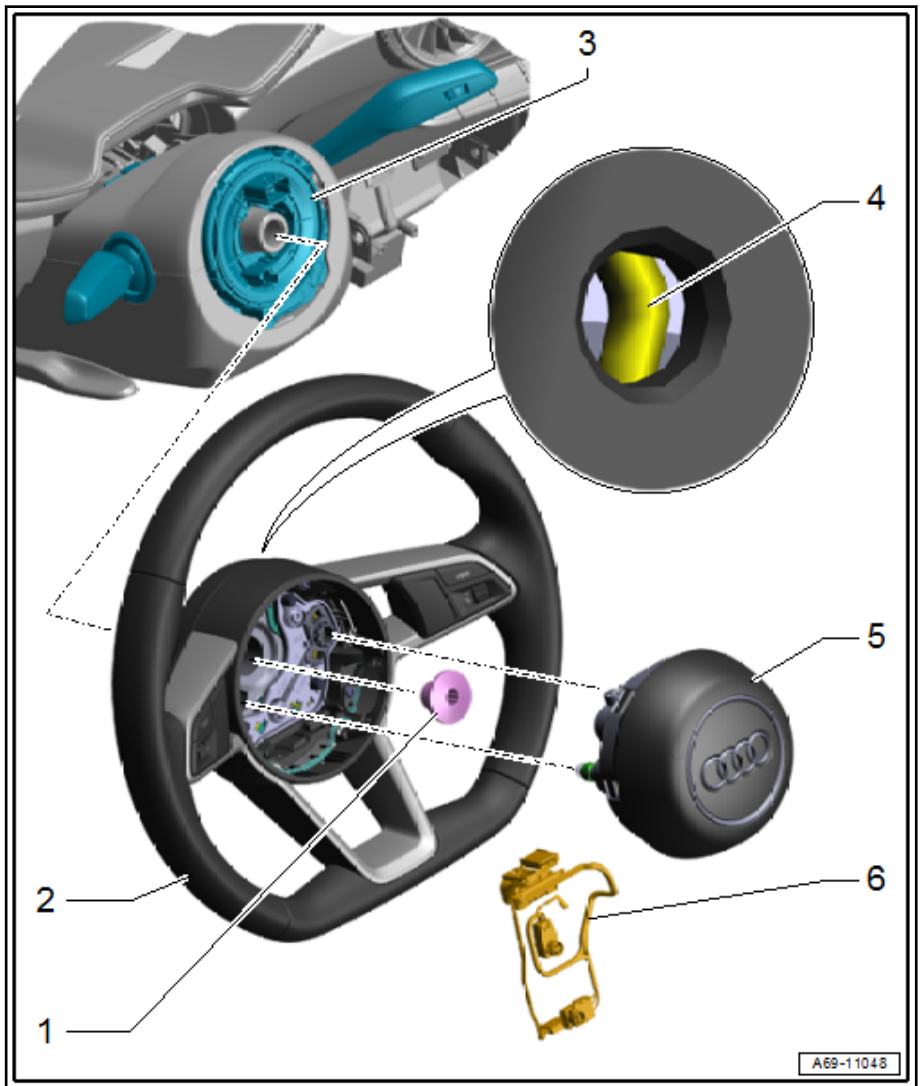
- With coil connector - F350-
- Assembly overview  
 ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Assembly overview - steering column switch module

**4 - Retaining clip**

- To release, use Torx screwdriver T10 (length approx. 80 mm)

**5 - Airbag (driver side)**

- With airbag igniter on driver side -N95-
- NAR version: with igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag -N490-



**WARNING**  
 Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components  
 ⇒ page 3.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright © 2021 Audi AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 119](#)

**6 - Wiring harness**

- For driver side airbag igniter -N95- and igniter for exhaust valve for driver airbag -N490-
- Renewing ⇒ [page 122](#)

**6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with igniters**

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Torx screwdriver T10, approx. 80 mm (commercially available)

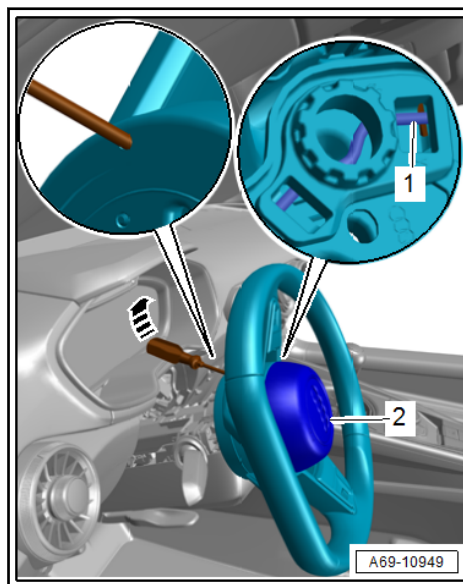
## Removing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components* ⇒ [page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ [page 5](#) .

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Unclip steering column trim (top) from steering column trim (bottom) ⇒ [page 22](#) .
- Turn steering wheel so that opening in back of steering wheel is pointing straight upwards (approx. 12 o'clock position).
- Insert a T10 Torx screwdriver (approx. 80 mm long/max. diameter 3.8 mm) approximately 20 mm into opening on back of steering wheel.
- Release retaining clip -1- for airbag (driver side) -2- -arrow-.

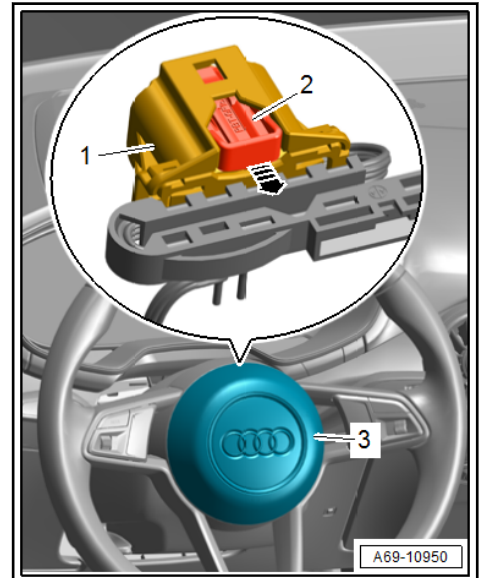


### Note

*Using a flat-bladed screwdriver could damage the electrical wiring.*

- Turn steering wheel 180° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.
- Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Pull airbag (driver side) -3- slightly away from steering wheel.
- Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow-, press locking element down and unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for steering wheel buttons.



#### WARNING

*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

#### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.
- To secure electrical connector in position, press it into recesses in steering wheel.
- Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel and press on until it engages audibly.

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

- As a final step, interrogate and erase the event memory of the airbag control unit as unplugging the electrical connectors may have caused faults to be stored ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o6.1 overview - driver airbag](#), page 118

## 6.3 Renewing connector at airbag

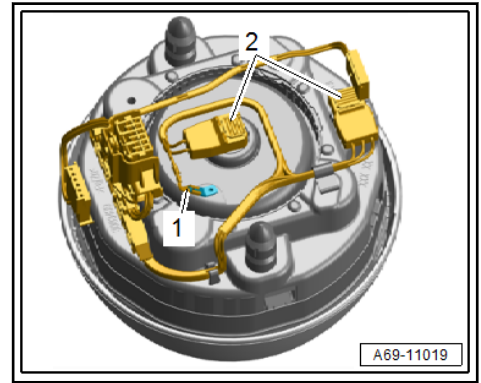
### Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 119](#).





### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

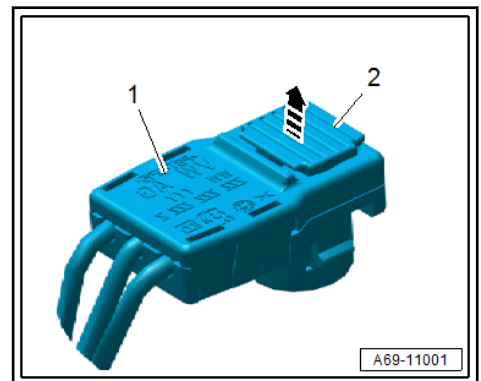
- Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2- for airbag igniter.



### Note

*-Item 2- with one or two connectors (depending on equipment version)*

- To do so, release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.

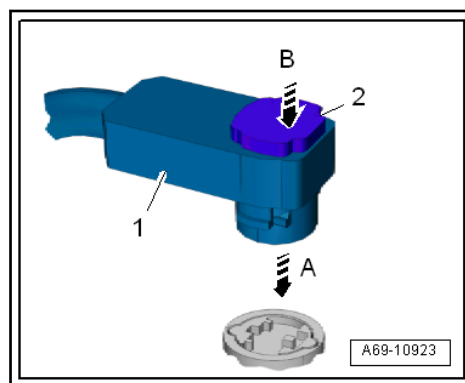


- Disengage wiring harness at retainers and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



### Note

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o6.1 verview - driver airbag](#), [page 118](#)**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 7 Airbag (front passenger side)

⇒ [o7.1 verview - front passenger airbag", page 125](#)

⇒ [a7.2 nd installing front passenger airbag unit with igniters", page 127](#)

⇒ [a7.3 nd installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side", page 131](#)

### 7.1 Assembly overview - front passenger airbag

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Electrical connector**

- For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

**2 - Bolts**

- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm

**3 - Airbag (passenger side)**

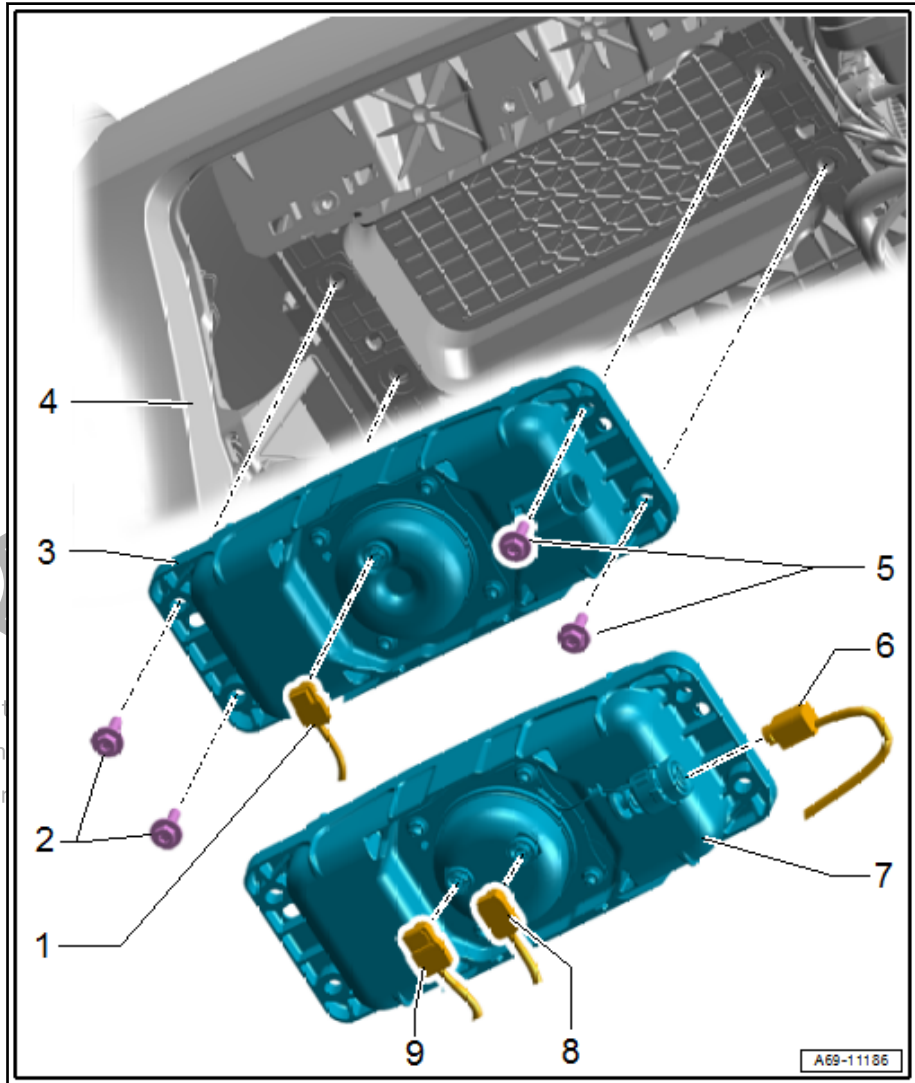
- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-, airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side -N132- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491-

**! WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3.*

*For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to => Electronic parts catalogue.*

- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- For correct version, refer to => Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing => [page 127](#)



**4 - Dash panel**

- Renew dash panel after an airbag has been triggered => [page 214](#)

**5 - Bolts**

- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm

**6 - Electrical connector**

- For igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491-
- NAR vehicles
- Renew after airbag has been triggered => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors

**7 - Front passenger airbag unit -NX3-**

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-, airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side -N132- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491-
- NAR vehicles

**! WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3.*

**For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.**

- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 127](#)

#### 8 - Electrical connector

- For airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side -N132-
- NAR vehicles

#### 9 - Electrical connector

- For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-
- NAR vehicles

## 7.2 Removing and installing front passenger airbag unit with igniters

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

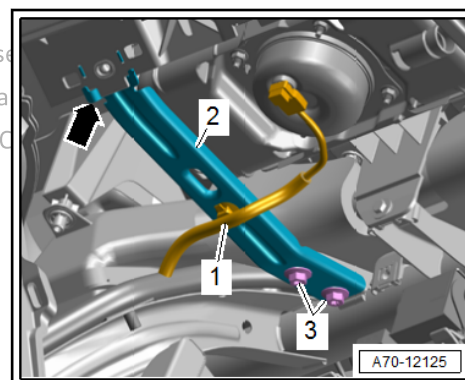
### Removing

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*
- ◆ *Renew electrical connector for igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N941- after airbag has been triggered ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors.*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.*

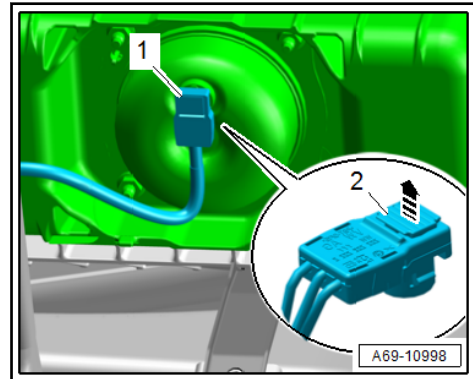
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#).
- Unclip electrical wiring -1- at support for dash panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.





- Remove bolts -3-.
- Disengage support -2- at dash panel -arrow- and detach.



**WARNING**

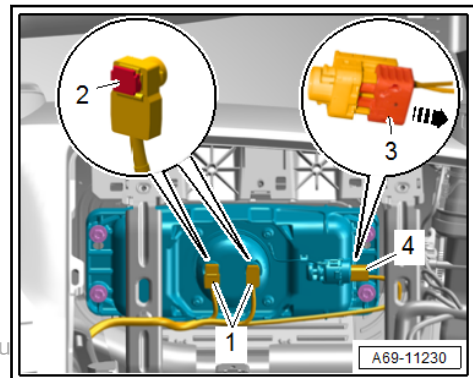
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-.

**NAR vehicles:**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**

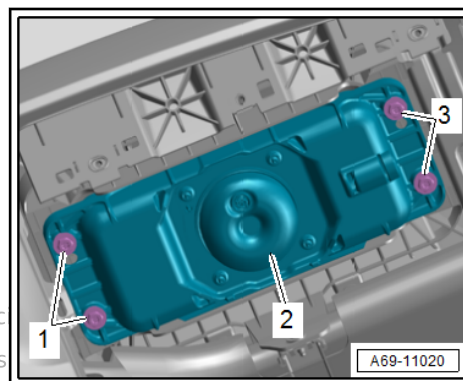
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking elements -2, 3- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connectors -1, 4- at airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-, airbag igniter 2 on front passenger side -N132- and igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491-.

All vehicles (continued):



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**  
*Secure airbag unit to prevent it from falling down.*

- Remove bolts -1, 3-
- Take out airbag (front passenger side) -2- downwards.

**WARNING**  
*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

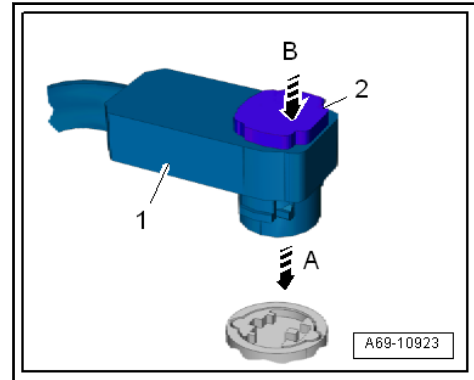
Installing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Renew electrical connector for igniter for exhaust valve for front passenger airbag -N491- after airbag has been triggered ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Connectors; Repairing electrical wiring harnesses and electrical connectors.
- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter -arrow A-



- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow B-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**Note**


*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o7.1 verview - front passenger airbag](#), [page 125](#) , ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel](#), [page 205](#)

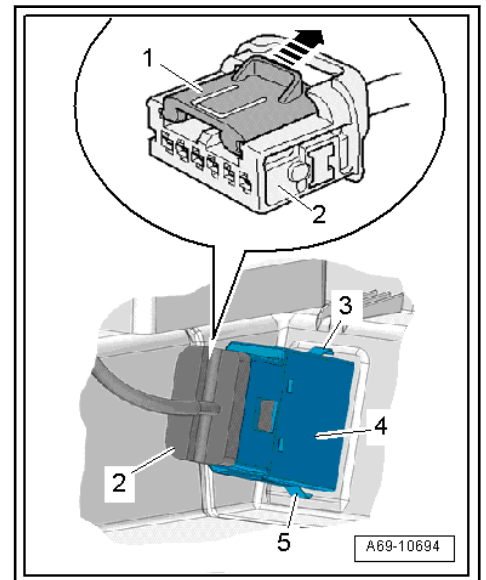
### 7.3 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side


**Removing** by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**  
*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .





**WARNING**  
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Release retaining springs -3- and -5- and press key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- -item 4- out of housing for key-operated switch.



## Installing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- *Make sure that key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- engages audibly in housing.*

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- *With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.*

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

**Note**

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.4 overview - glove compartment", page 19](#)**

## 8 Side airbags

⇒ [o8.1 overview - front side airbag", page 133](#)

⇒ [a8.2 nd installing front side airbag with igniter", page 134](#)

⇒ [a8.3 nd installing wire for side airbag", page 138](#)

### 8.1 Assembly overview - front side airbag

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

Copyright © Audi AG. All rights reserved. This document is for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Rivet**

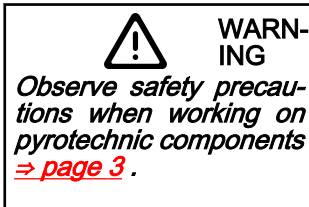
- 2x

**2 - Bolt**

- Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Renew after removing
- 5 Nm

**3 - Front side airbag**

- Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-
- Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200-



- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 134](#)

**4 - Guide plate for side airbag**

- Super sports seat only
- Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 134](#)

**5 - Bolt**

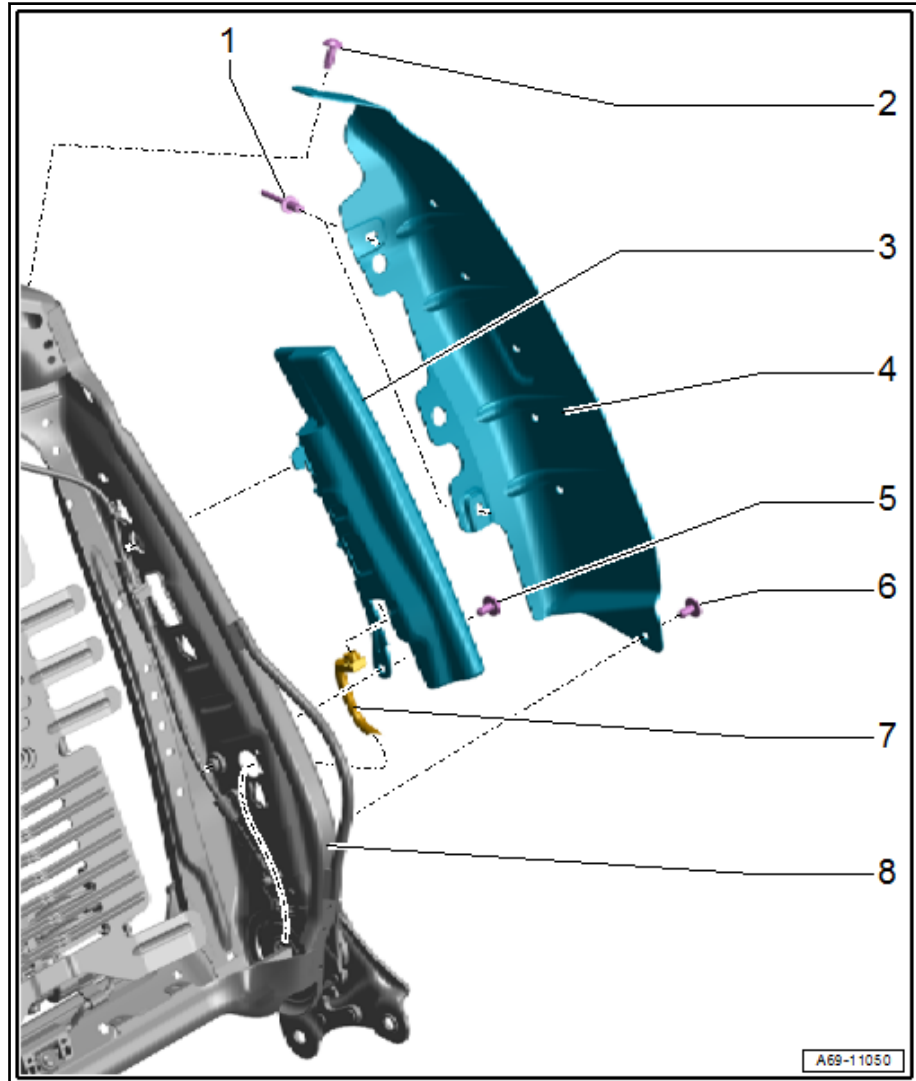
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- Apply locking fluid when installing; for locking fluid, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- 8 Nm

**6 - Bolt**

- Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Inner threaded plate in outer backrest frame can come loose and fall off
- Renew after removing
- 6.5 Nm

**7 - Electrical wire**

- Routed all the way through from side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-/side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200- to coupling station
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 138](#)

**8 - Outer backrest frame**

## 8.2 Removing and installing front side airbag with igniter

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753B-



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit, Ø 6 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles
- ◆ Locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

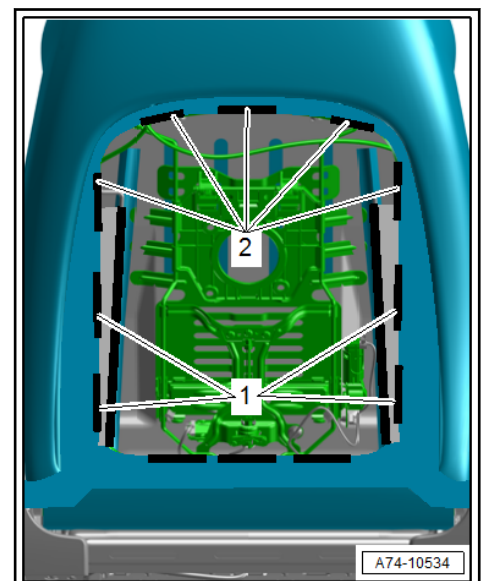
**Removing**

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ [page 5](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*

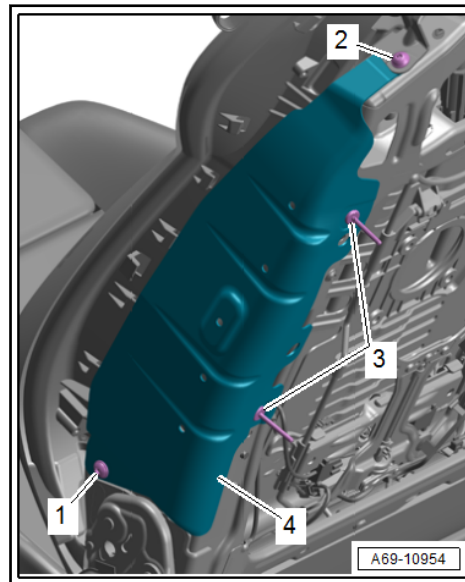
- Move front seat as far forwards as possible and fold back-rest forwards.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**Sports seat:**



- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 349](#) .
- Disengage piping -1- on sides of outer backrest frame.
- Disengage piping -2- on top of outer backrest frame.
- Remove padding from backrest in area of side airbag.

**Super sports seat:**



- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 351](#) .



**WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries.*

- ◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

- Drill out rivets -3-.
- Remove bolts -1, 2-.



**Note**

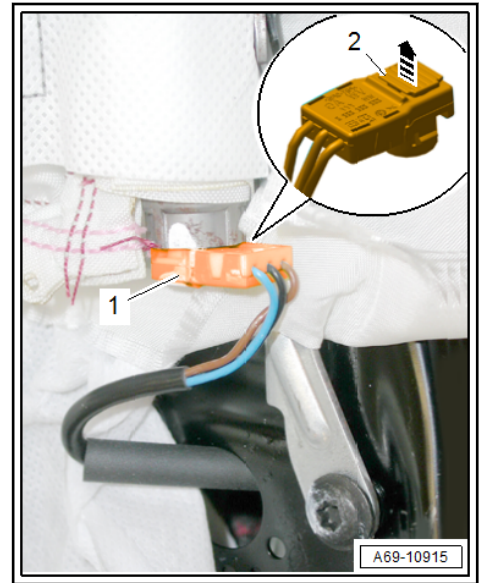
*When unscrewing bolt -1-, the threaded plate on the inside of the outer backrest frame may become loose and fall out.*

- Remove guide plate -4- for airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

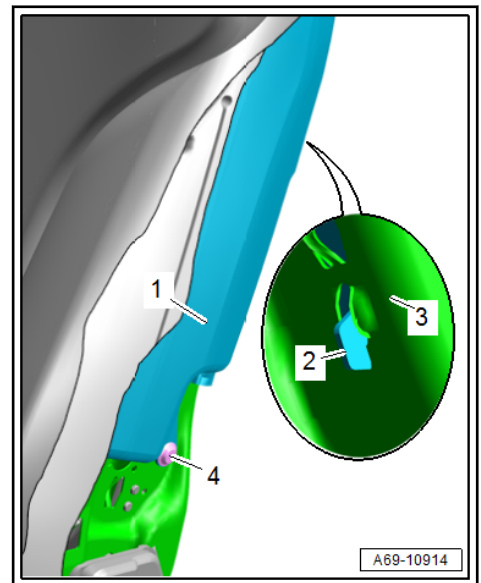
All seat versions (continued):



**! WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.
- In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible.



- Remove bolt -4-.
- Disengage side airbag -1- with hook -2- from outer backrest frame -3- and detach.





## Installing



## WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



## WARNING

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



## WARNING

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



## Note

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o8.1 overview - front side airbag](#), [page 133](#)

### 8.3 Removing and installing wire for side airbag

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Removing

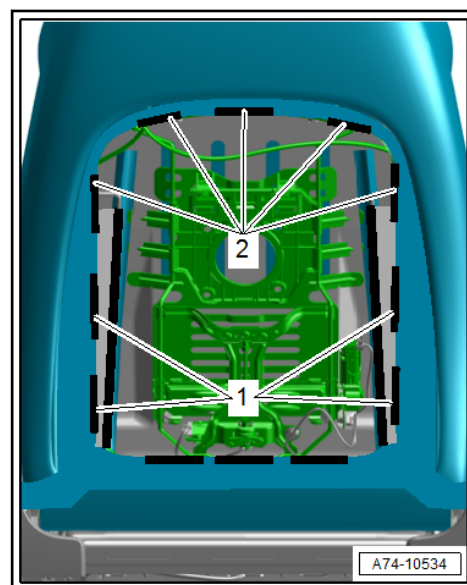


### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ [page 5](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#) .*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .

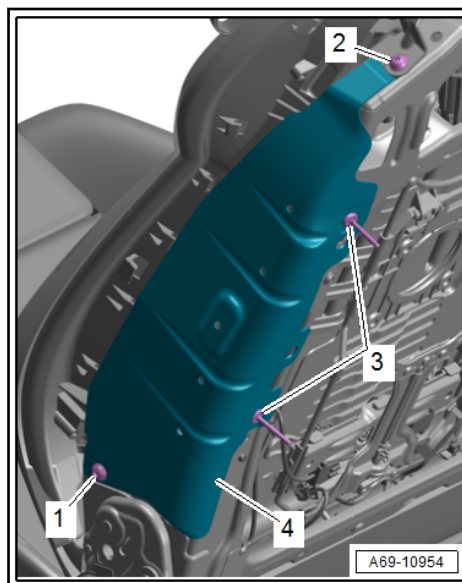
### Sports seat:



- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 349](#) .
- Disengage piping -1- on sides of outer backrest frame.
- Disengage piping -2- on top of outer backrest frame.
- Remove padding from backrest in area of side airbag.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Super sports seat:



- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 351](#).



**WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries.*

- ◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

- Drill out rivets -3-.
- Remove bolts -1, 2-.



**Note**

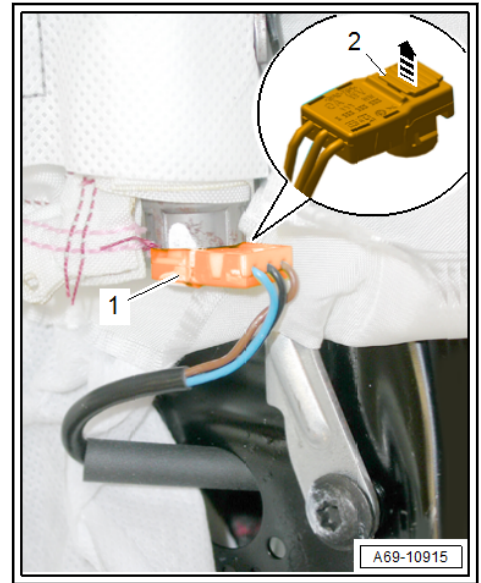
*When unscrewing bolt -1-, the threaded plate on the inside of the outer backrest frame may become loose and fall out.*

- Remove guide plate -4- for airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

All seat versions (continued):

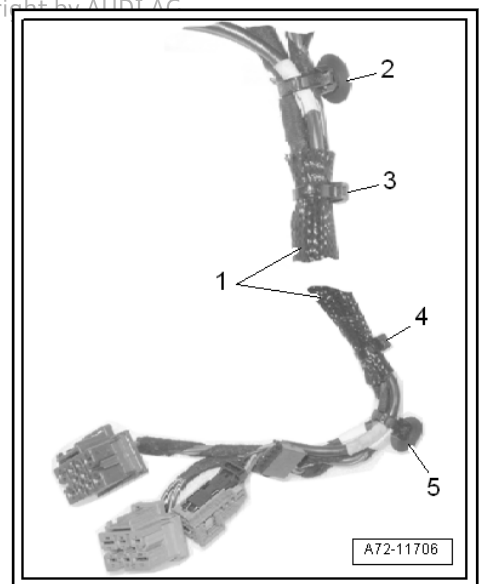


**⚠ WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.
- Unclip wire for side airbag at outer backrest frame and move clear.
- Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Cut through cable retainers -2 and 5- and cable ties -3 and 4-.



- Pull wire for side airbag out of protective sleeve -1- and move clear at seat pan.
- Carefully pull wire for side airbag out of outer backrest frame.

#### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o8.1 overview - front side airbag](#), [page 133](#)**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 9 Curtain airbags

⇒ [o9.1 verview - curtain airbag", page 143](#)

⇒ [a9.2 nd installing curtain airbag with igniter", page 143](#)

### 9.1 Assembly overview - curtain airbag

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

#### 1 - Bolt

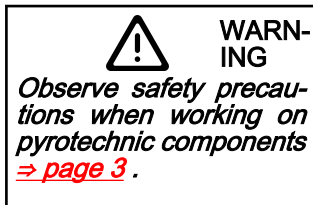
- Renew after removing
- 6.5 Nm

#### 2 - Electrical connector

- Driver side: for driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251-
- Passenger side: for front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-
- Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ [page 144](#)

#### 3 - Curtain airbag

- Driver side: with driver side curtain airbag igniter -N251-
- Passenger side: with front passenger side curtain airbag igniter - N252-



- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 143](#)

#### 4 - Retaining clip

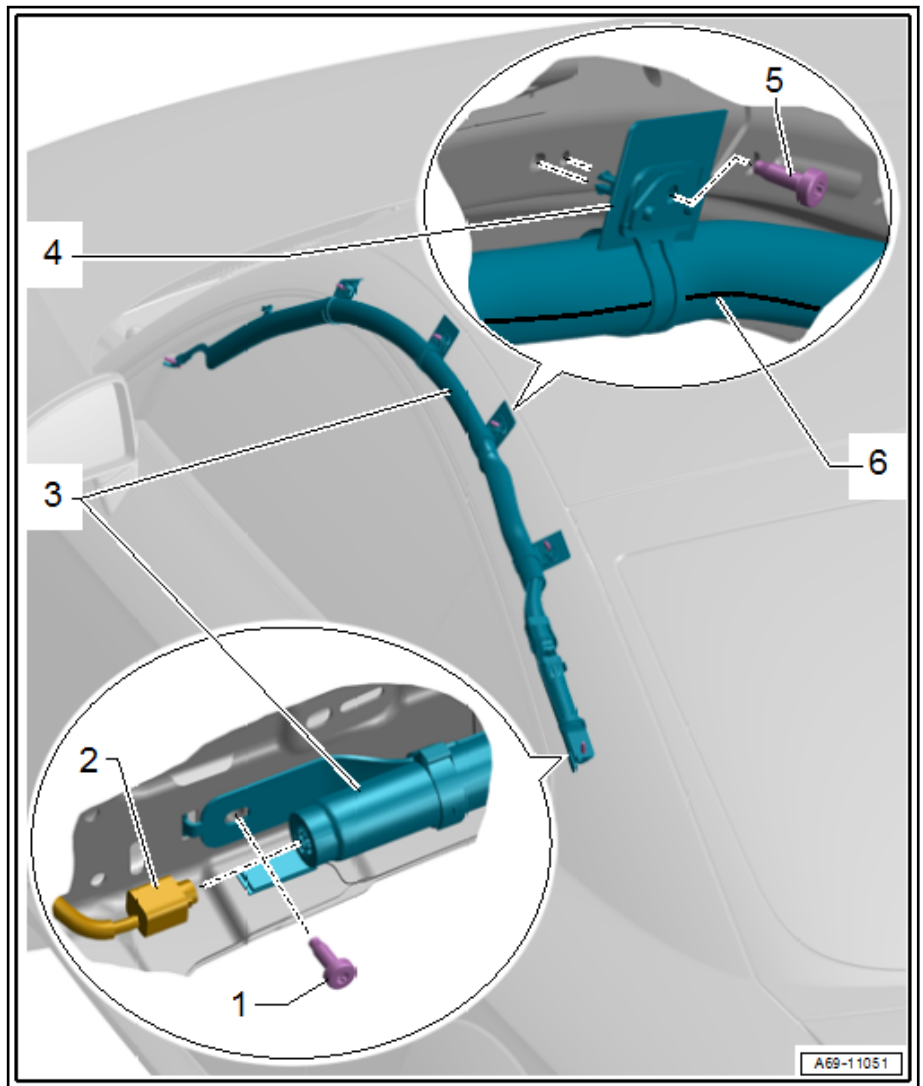
- 4x

#### 5 - Bolt

- Renew after removing
- 6.5 Nm

#### 6 - Black line

- Designed to prevent twisting
- Must be visible all along airbag after installation



### 9.2 Removing and installing curtain airbag with igniter

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.



## Removing

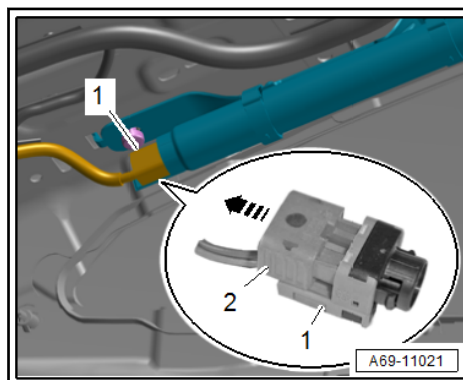


### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire  
⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27: Battery: Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ [page 301](#).

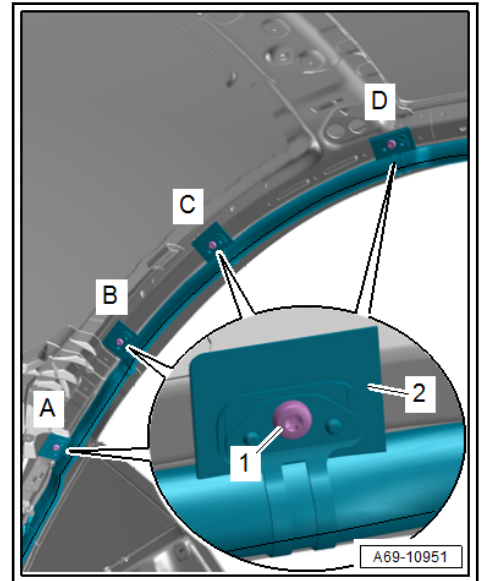
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



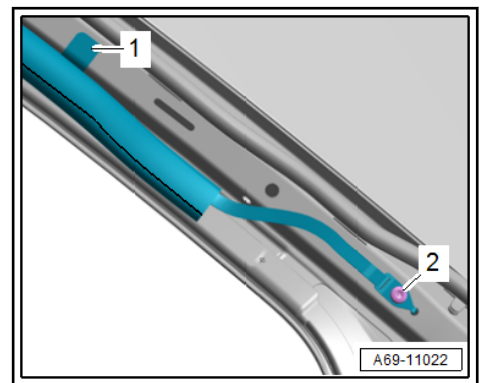
### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Pull out connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Unscrew bolts -1- for retaining clips for curtain airbag in the sequence -D ... A-.



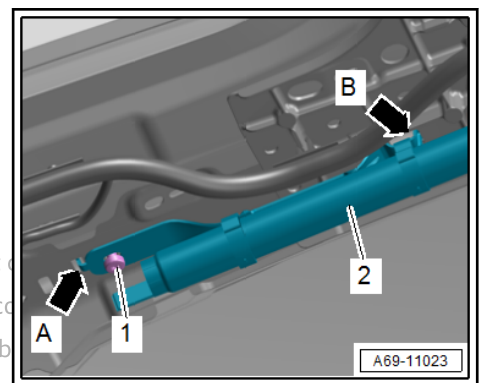
- Unclip retaining clips -2- for curtain airbag from body.
- Unscrew bolt -2- for tether for curtain airbag from A-pillar.



- Remove clip -1- from A-pillar.
- Remove bolt -1- at curtain airbag.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



- First disengage curtain airbag -2- at rear from mounting on body -arrow A-.
- Disengage curtain airbag from mounting on body -arrow B- and detach.

## Installing



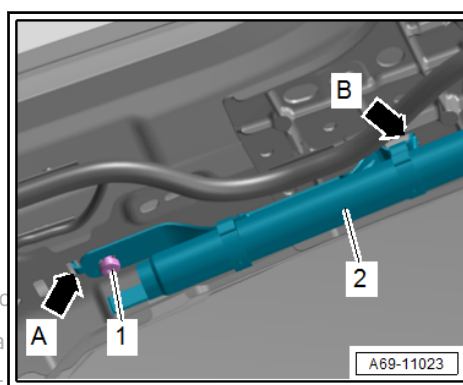
### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Always observe correct sequence for installing curtain airbag.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

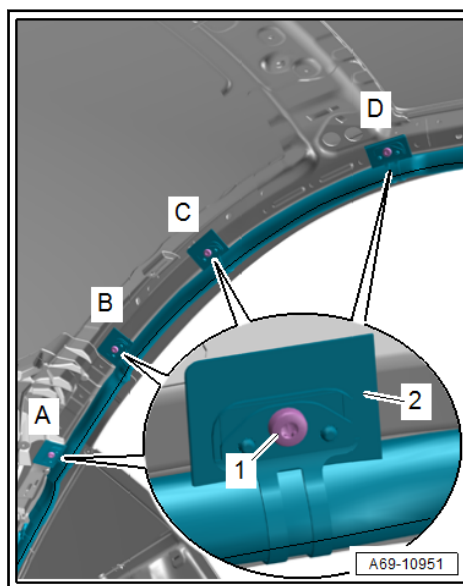
- First engage curtain airbag -2- at front in mounting on body -arrow B- and slide forwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

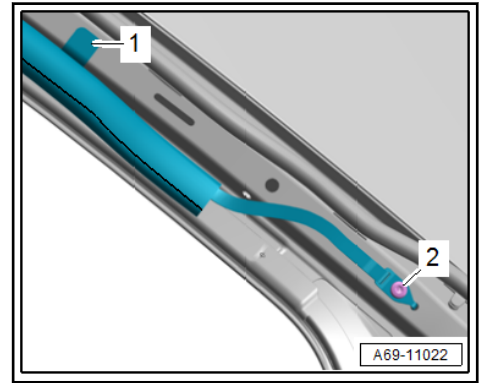


- Engage curtain airbag at rear in mounting on body -arrow A-.
- Fit bolt -1-, but do not tighten.
- Clip retaining clips -2- for curtain airbag into body in the sequence -A ... D- until they engage audibly.

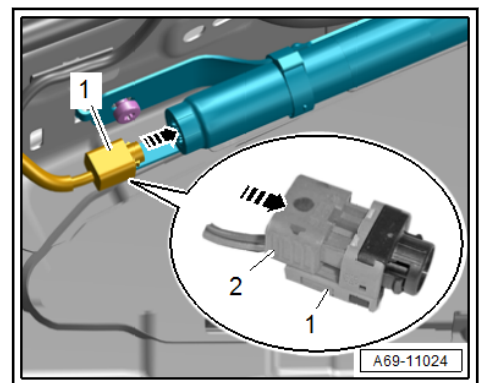


- Fit bolts -1-, but do not tighten.
- Fasten clips -1- in body.





- Engage tether for curtain airbag in mounting on body at A-pillar.
- Fit bolt -2-, but do not tighten.
- Check that black line is visible over entire length to make sure that curtain airbag is not twisted.
- Tighten bolt for curtain airbag igniter.
- Tighten bolt for tether for curtain airbag at A-pillar.
- Tighten bolts for retaining clips for curtain airbag.
- Attach connector -1- to curtain airbag igniter.



- Press in connector locking element -2- arrow. This inserts connector as far as possible in curtain airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.
- with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

 **Note**

*Renew clips if they were removed following an accident.*

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

 **Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o9.1 verview - curtain airbag](#)", page 143**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 10 Knee airbags

⇒ [o10.1 verview - knee airbag](#)", page 149

⇒ [a10.2 nd installing knee airbag with igniter](#)", page 151

### 10.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag

⇒ [o10.1.1 verview - knee airbag \(driver side\)](#)", page 149


⇒ [o10.1.2 verview - knee airbag \(front passenger side\)](#)", page 150

#### 10.1.1 Assembly overview - knee airbag (driver side)

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

##### 1 - Driver side knee airbag igniter -N295-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 151](#)

 **Caution**

*Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*

*After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage, especially at the perforation.*

##### 2 - Attachment point

- For knee airbag

 **Caution**

*Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*

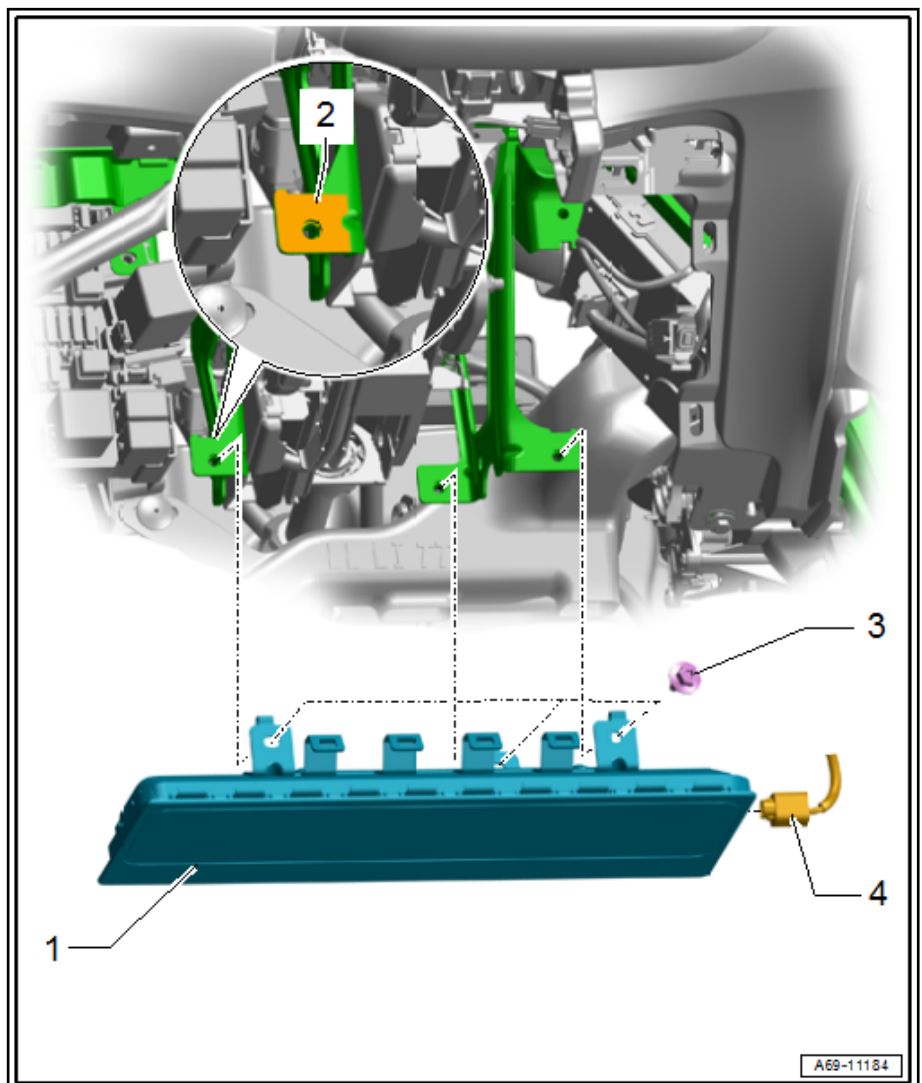
*Thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag.*

##### 3 - Bolt

- 3x
- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm

##### 4 - Electrical connector

- For driver side knee airbag igniter -N295-



## 10.1.2 Assembly overview - knee airbag (front passenger side)

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### 1 - Front passenger side knee airbag igniter -N296-

- Removing and installing => [page 153](#)

**Caution**

*Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*

*After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.*

### 2 - Glove compartment

- For correct version, refer to => Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing => [page 27](#)

### 3 - Lining mat

- For glove compartment

### 4 - Nut

- 2x
- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm

### 5 - Bracket

- For knee airbag

**Caution**

*Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.*

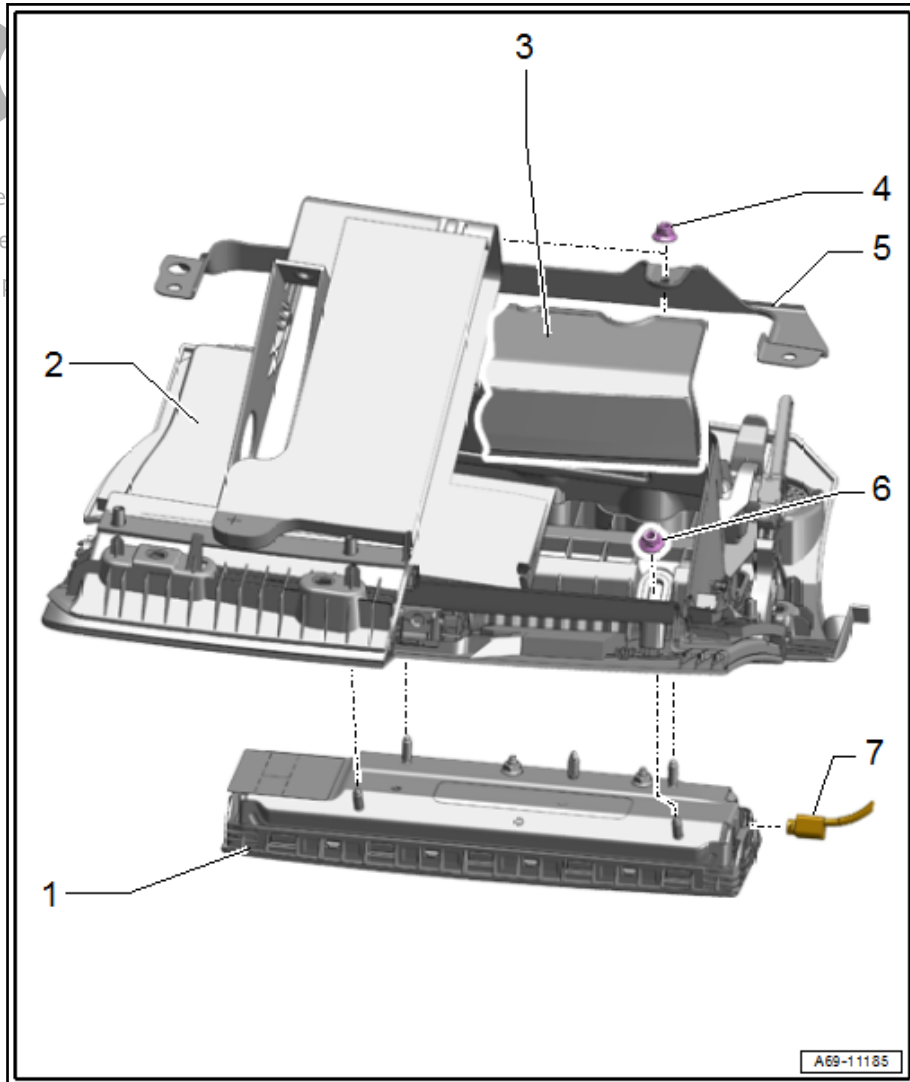
*Thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection for knee airbag.*

### 6 - Nut

- 2x
- Renew after removing
- 8 Nm

### 7 - Electrical connector

- For front passenger side knee airbag igniter -N296-



## 10.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with igniter

⇒ [a10.2.1 nd installing knee airbag with airbag igniter \(driver side\)](#), page 151

⇒ [a10.2.2 nd installing knee airbag with airbag igniter \(front passenger side\)](#), page 153

### 10.2.1 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (driver side)

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

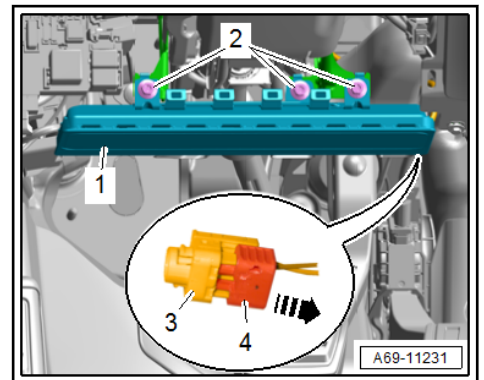
#### Removing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#) .*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Remove bolts -2-.



- Take out knee airbag (driver side) -1- towards rear.



#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connector -3- at driver side knee airbag igniter -N295-.
- To do so, release connector locking element -4- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and unplug electrical connector.



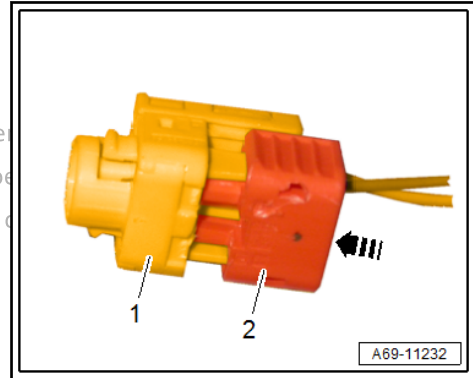
**WARNING**

*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

**Installing**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

- Attach connector -1- to airbag igniter.
- Press in connector locking element -2- -arrow-. This inserts connector as far as possible in airbag igniter while at the same time locking it.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*



**Caution**

*Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*

- ◆ *After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.*



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o10.1.1 overview - knee airbag \(driver side\)](#), page 149

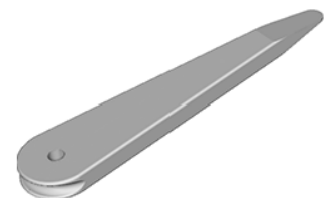
## 10.2.2 Removing and installing knee airbag with airbag igniter (front passenger side)

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

3409



W00-11118





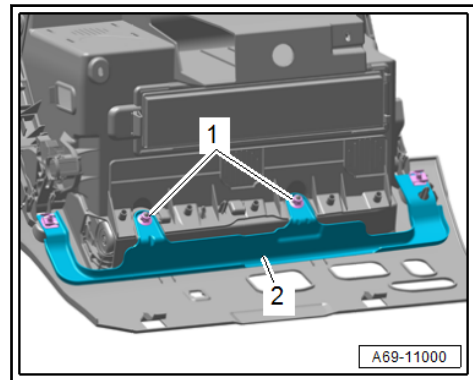
### Removing



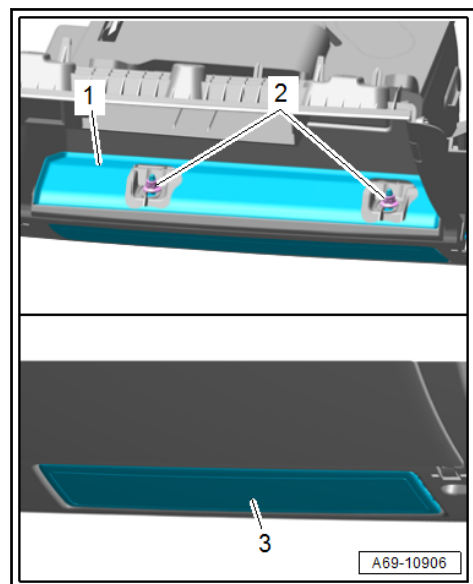
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 5](#).*
- ◆ *For correct combination of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#).
- Remove nuts -1-.



- Detach bracket -2- for knee airbag.
- Lift lining mat -1- with removal wedge -3409- and remove it from glove compartment.



- Remove nuts -2-.
- Detach knee airbag -3- downwards from glove compartment.

Protected by copyright: Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





**WARNING**

*Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.*

Installing



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*
- Install glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .



**Caution**

*Risk of damage to the surface of the knee airbag due to mechanical stress.*

- ◆ *After completing the repair, inspect the surface of the knee airbag for visible damage.*



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory => Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o10.1.2 overview - knee airbag \(front passenger side\)](#), [page 150](#)**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 11 Crash sensors for airbags

⇒ [o11.1 f fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags", page 157](#)

⇒ [a11.2 nd installing front airbag crash sensor for driver sideG283", page 158](#)

⇒ [a11.3 nd installing front side airbag crash sensor G179/G180", page 161](#)

⇒ [a11.4 nd installing rear side airbag crash sensor G256", page 165](#)

### 11.1 Overview of fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Note

*The illustration shows the crash sensors for the TT Coupé as an example.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284-**

- Fitting location: on right side of lock carrier
- Removing and installing => [page 158](#)

**2 - Bolt**

- 9 Nm

**3 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180-**

- Fitting location: in door
- Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag => [page 6](#)
- Removing and installing => [page 161](#)

**4 - Bolt**

- 9 Nm

**5 - Rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G256-**

- Fitting location: on centre tunnel at rear centre of vehicle
- Removing and installing => [page 165](#)

**6 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179-**

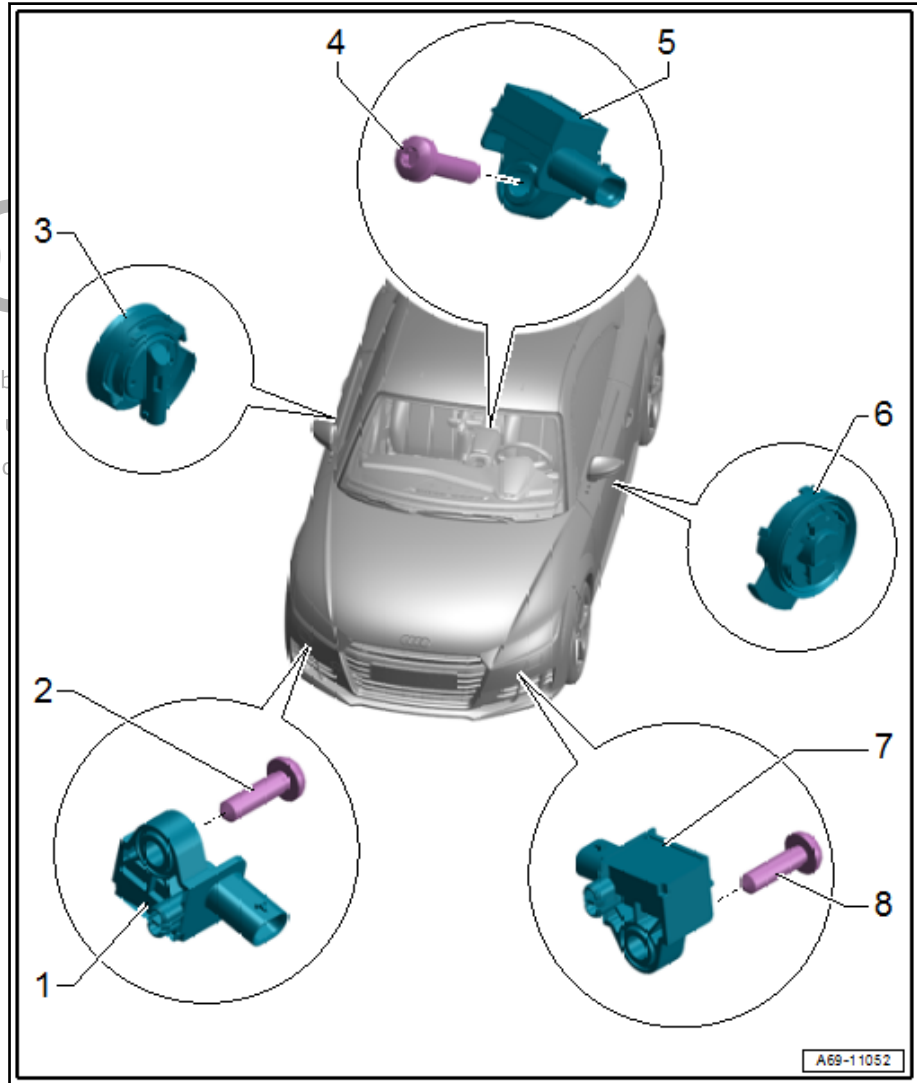
- Fitting location: in door
- Precautionary measures when handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag => [page 6](#)
- Removing and installing => [page 161](#)

**7 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283-**

- Fitting location: on left side of lock carrier
- Removing and installing => [page 158](#)

**8 - Bolt**

- 9 Nm



**11.2 Removing and installing front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283-**



**Note**

The front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284- is removed and installed in the same way.

## Removing

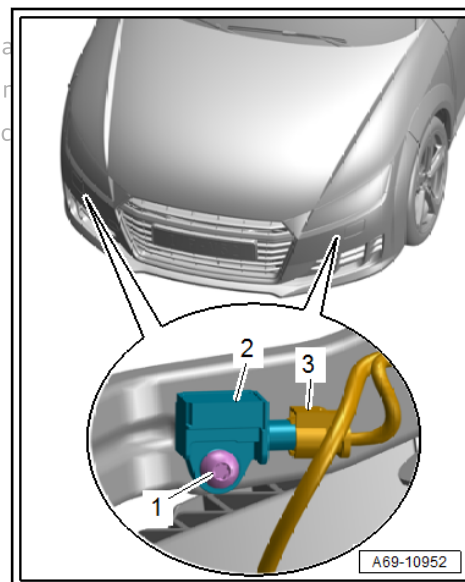


### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3.*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire  
 ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Vehicles without auxiliary radiator: Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front).
- Vehicles with auxiliary radiator: Remove bumper cover  
 ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for front airbag at lock carrier.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



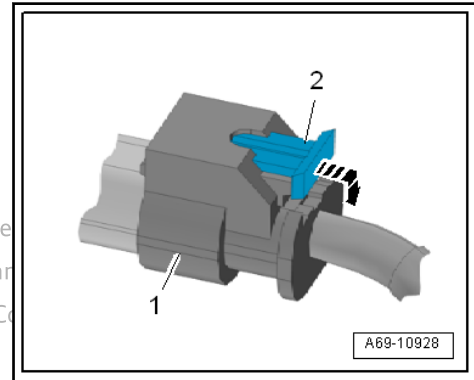
### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

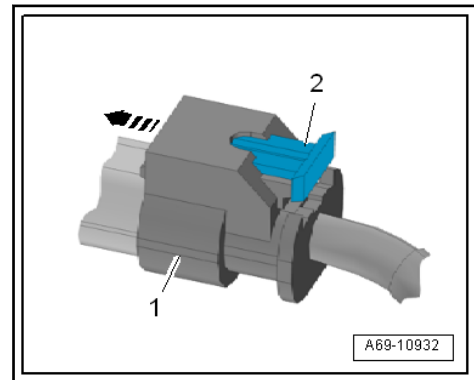
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2021



## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



### Note

- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure that wiring is not trapped.**



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o11.1 fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags](#), page 157

### 11.3 Removing and installing front side airbag crash sensor -G179-/-G180-

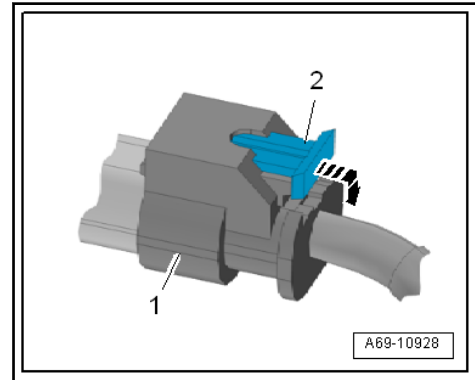
#### Removing



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag ⇒ [page 6](#).*

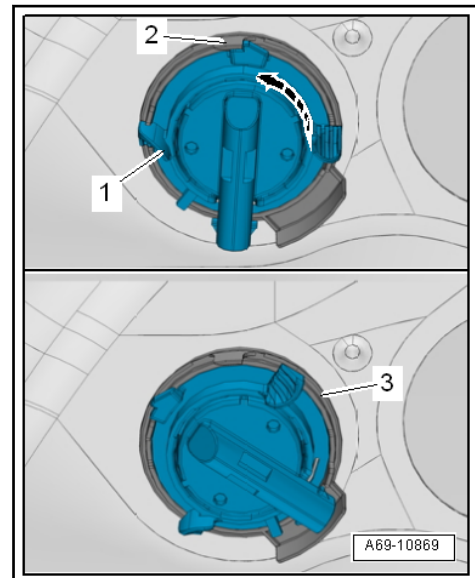
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove door trim (front) ⇒ [page 197](#).



**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG shall not be held liable for any damage or accept any liability.
- Pull out and press down connector locking element -2- and unplug electrical connector -4- at crash sensor.
  - Release catch -2- and turn locking mechanism -1- for crash sensor approx. 45° in anti-clockwise direction -arrow-.



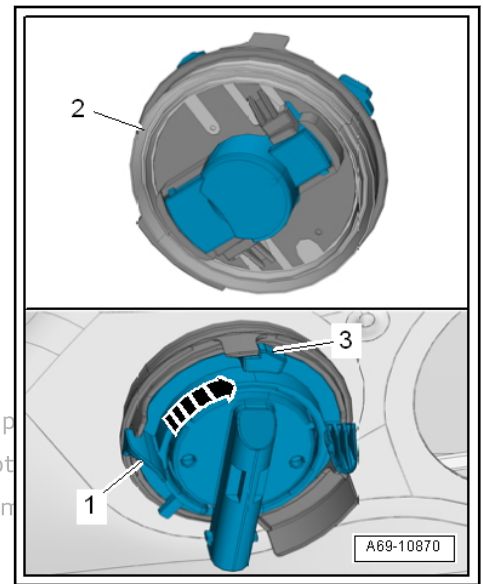
- Disengage crash sensor for side airbag -3- from door and detach.



## Installing



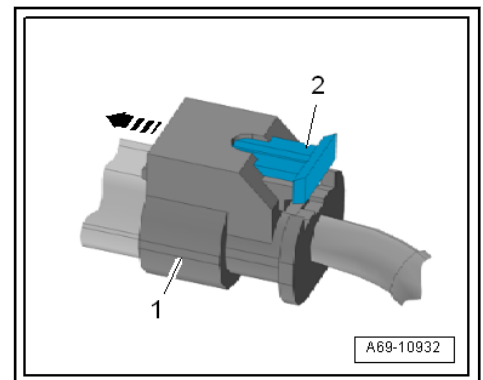
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



### WARNING

***Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.***

- Make sure seal -2- is properly positioned. Renew crash sensor if seal is damaged or deformed.
- Engage crash sensor for side airbag in door.
- Turn locking mechanism -1- for crash sensor in clockwise direction -arrow-.
- You should hear the retaining tab -3- engage.



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for front side airbag ⇒ [page 6](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted, unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**Note**

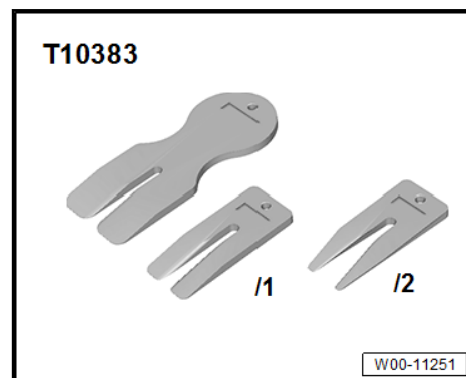
*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o11.1 fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags](#), page 157

## 11.4 Removing and installing rear side air-bag crash sensor -G256-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



### Note

Contrary to its designation, the rear side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G256- is fitted in the centre of the vehicle.

### Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



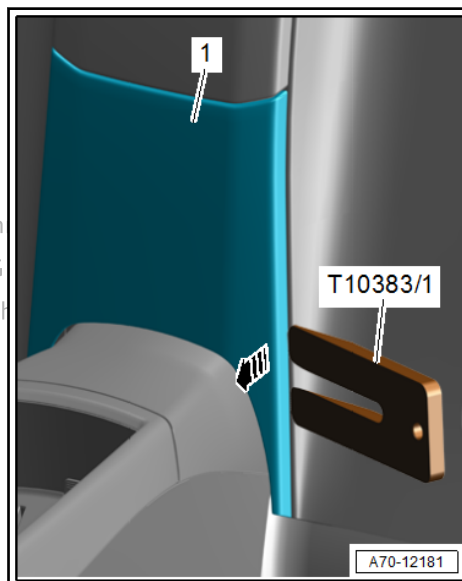
#### WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

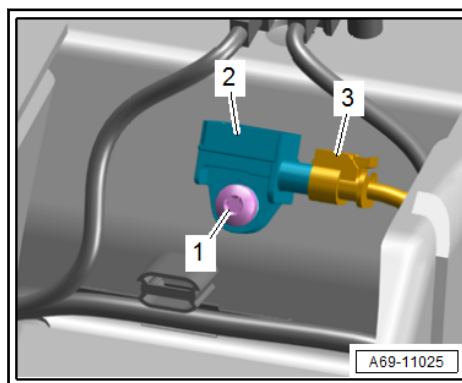
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire => Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- TT Roadster: Unclip back panel trim (centre) -1- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and detach.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- TT Coupé: Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .



- Remove bolt -1- and detach crash sensor -2- for side airbag from body.



**WARNING**

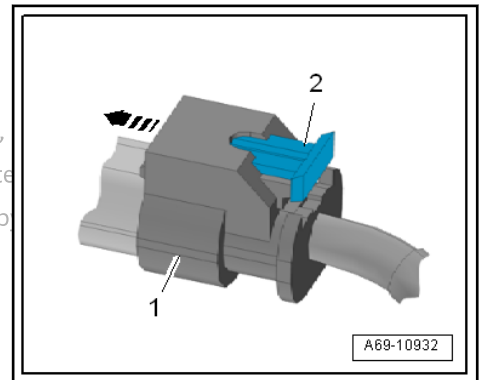
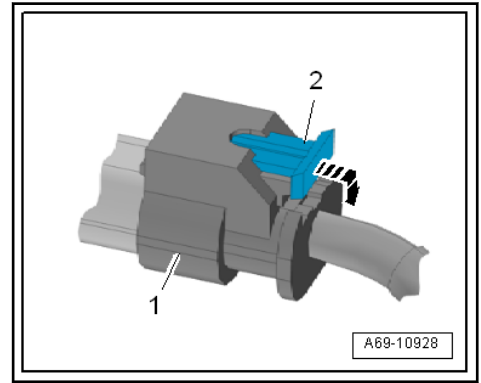
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

## Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop



### WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3 .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.
- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



### Note

- ◆ **Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure that wiring is not trapped.**



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [011.1 fitting locations - crash sensors for airbags](#), page [157](#)**

## 12 Seat position sensor

⇒ [o12.1 verview - seat position sensor", page 169](#)

⇒ [a12.2 nd installing seat position sensor", page 171](#)

### 12.1 Assembly overview - seat position sensor

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



*The illustration shows the seat position sensor with wiring harness for front passenger seat for the TT Coupé as an example.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Plug-in connector**

- Coupling station in vehicle floor at side member under seat

**2 - Bolt**

- 1.2 Nm

**3 - Seat occupied sensor on front passenger side -G128-**

- Passenger side only
- Removing and installing => [page 175](#)

**4 - Retainer for seat occupied sensor**

- Clip into seat pan
- Removing and installing => [page 175](#)

**5 - Wiring harness**

- Clip into seat pan

**6 - Plug-in connector**

- For belt buckle

**7 - Seat rail**

- Tunnel side

**8 - Front passenger side seat position sensor -G554-**

- Driver seat: driver side seat position sensor -G553-
- Removing and installing => [page 171](#)
- Checking => Vehicle diagnostic tester

**9 - Bolt**

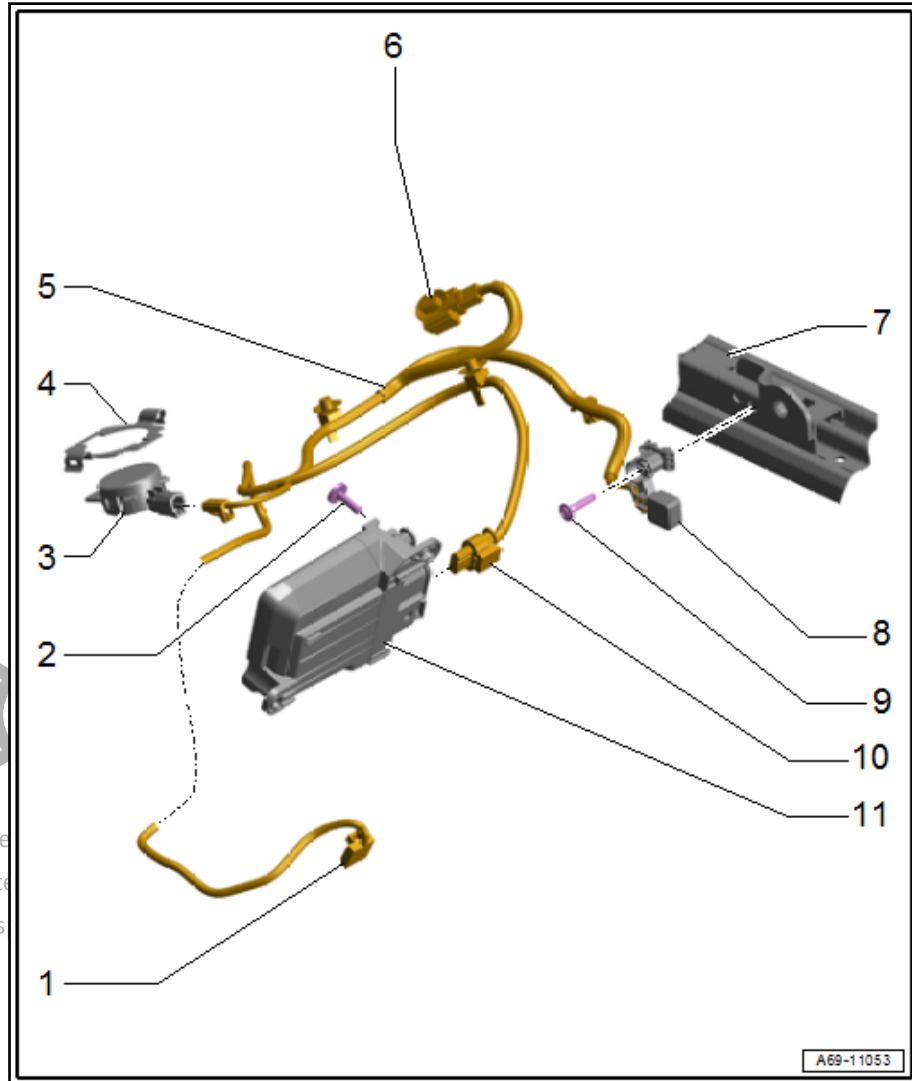
- 1.2 Nm

**10 - Plug-in connector**

- Passenger seat only: for seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

**11 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-**

- NAR vehicles



not  
ity



**Caution**

*Do NOT unplug the connector between the seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- and the seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-.*

- Clipped into storage compartment



## 12.2 Removing and installing seat position sensor

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

Replacement seat position sensors are available with wiring harness and electrical connector. The following wires with connectors are incorporated into the wiring harness:

- ◆ Driver seat: Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling
- ◆ Front passenger seat: Wire with connector for belt buckle coupling, seat occupied sensor (front passenger side) -G128- and seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Setting gauge -3371- or



- ◆ Setting gauge -VAS 6448-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



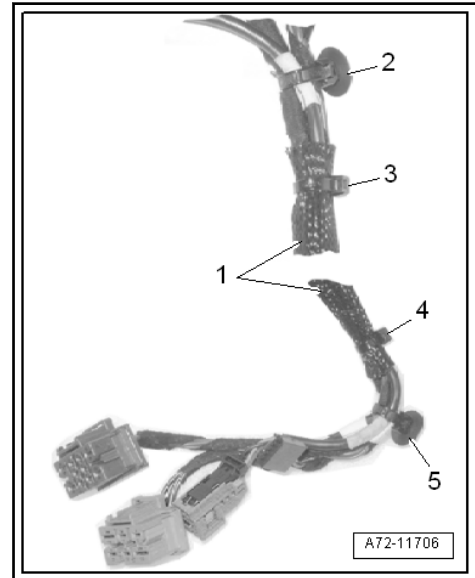
### Removing



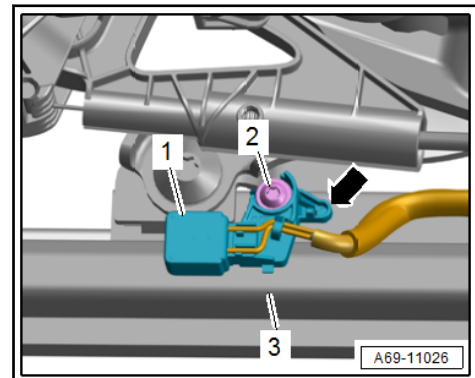
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.

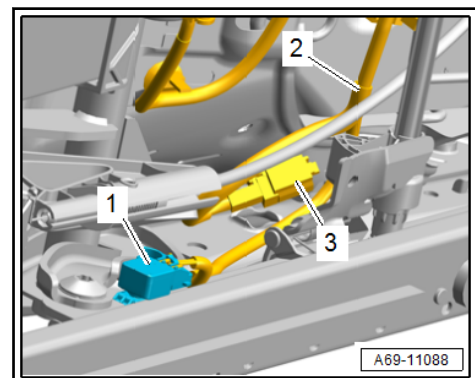


- Cut through cable retainers -2 and 5- and cable ties -3 and 4-.
- Pull wire for seat position sensor -G553-/-G554- out of protective sleeve -1- and move clear.
- Remove bolt -2-.



- Unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.
- Unfasten cable ties/cable clips for wiring from lower seat pan frame.

**Driver seat:**

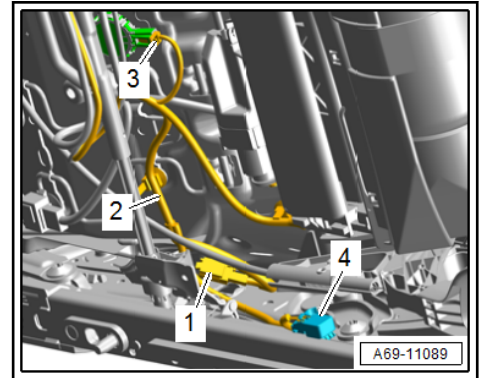


- Move clear and unplug electrical connector -3- for belt buckle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach seat position sensor -1- with wires -2-.

Front passenger seat:



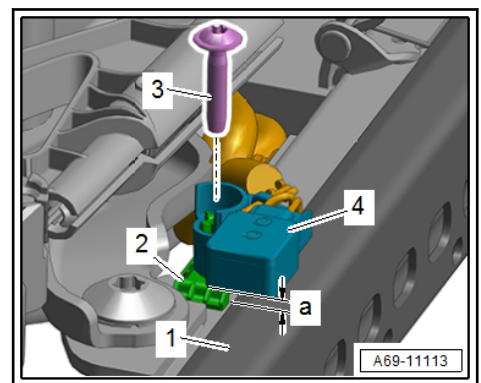
- Move clear and unplug electrical connector -1- for belt buckle. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- at seat occupied sensor, front passenger side -G128-.
- Detach seat position sensor -4- with wires -2-.

Installing and adjusting

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ page 329 .*

- Hook retainer -2- into seat rail (top) and clip in.



- Slide seat position sensor -4- onto retainer and position at distance -a- = 4.0 mm from seat rail (bottom) -1-.
- To do so, place setting gauge -3371- / 4 mm or -VAS 6448- / 4 mm between seat position sensor and seat rail (bottom), and tighten bolt -3-.



**Note**

*Checking seat position sensor ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o12.1 overview - seat position sensor](#), page 169**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 13 Belt-fastened recognition system

⇒ a13.1 nd installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger sideG128", page 175

### 13.1 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor on front passenger side -G128-

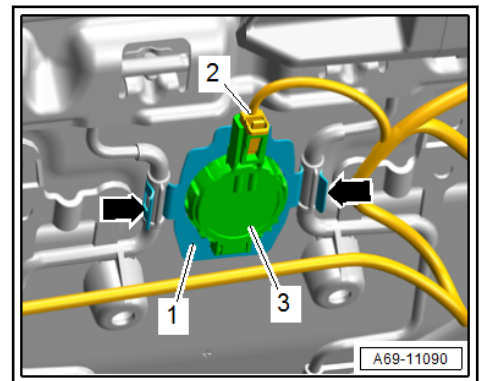


*The seat occupied sensor is only fitted on the front passenger seat.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### Removing

- Move passenger seat to highest, rearmost position.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- for seat occupied sensor.



- Unclip mounting -1- from seat pan -arrows- and detach seat occupied sensor -3-.

#### Installing



#### Caution

*Install new seat occupied sensor in same position as old seat occupied sensor.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Press clips for seat occupied sensor into seat pan until they engage audibly.



- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

## 14 Seat occupied recognition system

[⇒ o14.1 f fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system", page 176](#)

[⇒ a14.2 nd installing seat occupied sensor", page 177](#)

### 14.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



#### Note

*The seat occupied sensor is incorporated in the seat heater element.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 1 - Wiring harness

- For seat heater element with seat occupied sensor
- Clip into seat pan
- Coupling station in vehicle floor under seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 177](#)

### 2 - Nut

- 1.5 Nm

### 3 - Seat occupied sensor

- Seat occupied sensor is incorporated in seat heater element
- Depending on seat version, seat occupied sensor is sewn into seat cover or bonded onto seat padding with seat heater element
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 177](#)

### 4 - Front passenger side seat position sensor -G554-

- Driver seat: driver side seat position sensor - G553-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 171](#)

### 5 - Bolt

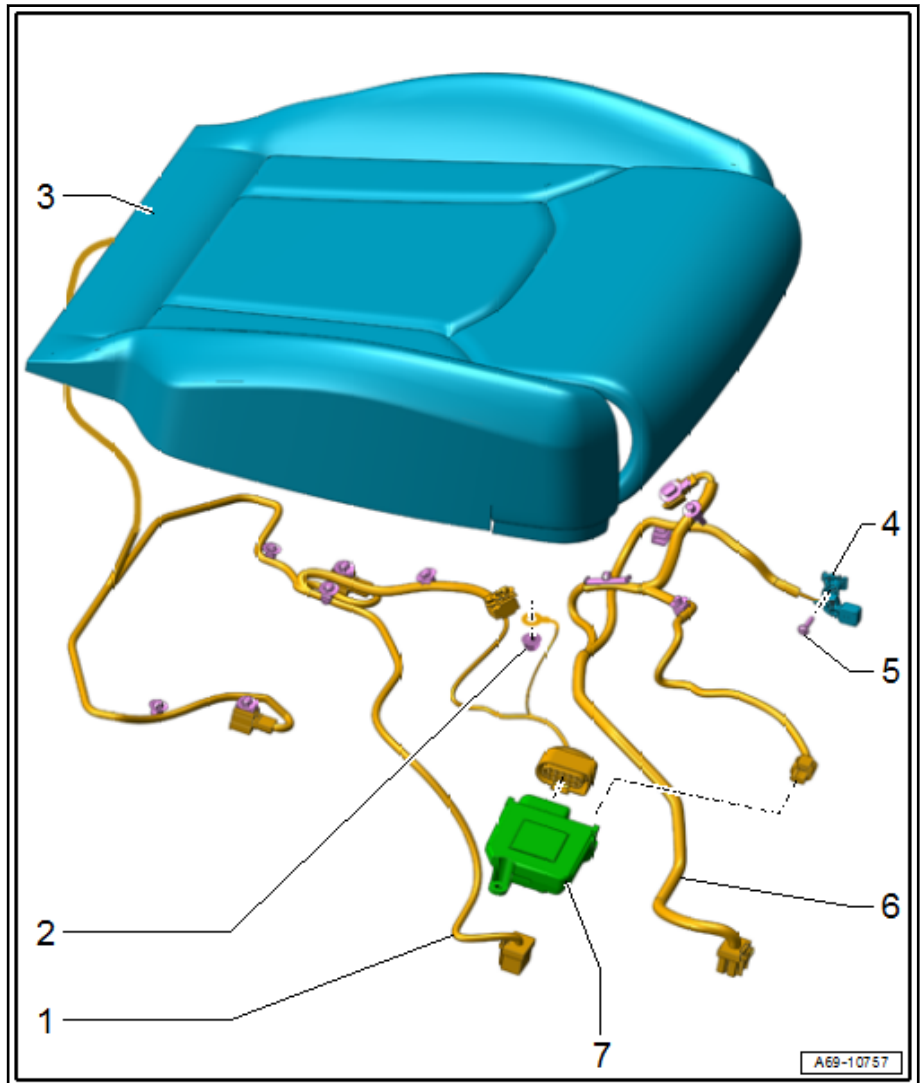
- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 9 \(page 170\)](#)

### 6 - Wiring harness

- For seat position sensor/belt-fastened sensor/belt switch
- Clip into seat pan
- Coupling station in vehicle floor under seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a12.2 nd installing seat position sensor", page 171](#)

### 7 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 177](#)



## 14.2 Removing and installing seat occupied sensor

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

◆ The seat occupied sensor is only fitted in the front passenger seat.

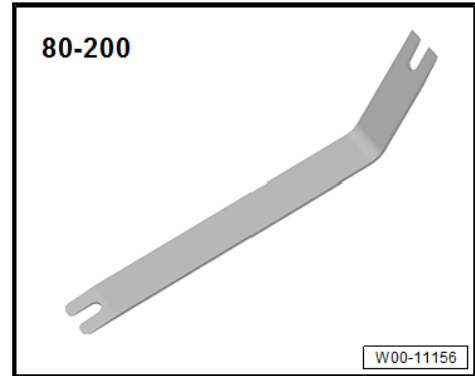
- ◆ All components of the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system must always be installed.
- ◆ In other words, the seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- and seat occupied sensor from the service kit for the seat occupied recognition system complement each other and must therefore always be installed together.



- ◆ It is not permitted to exchange either the seat occupied recognition control unit -J706- or the seat occupied sensor for a similar component for a different vehicle.
- ◆ The components included in the service kit vary depending on the seat version; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



### Removing



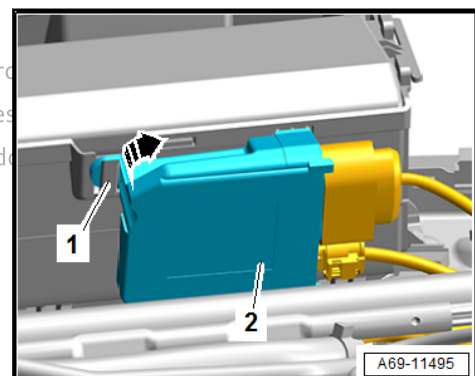
#### WARNING

*Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.*

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

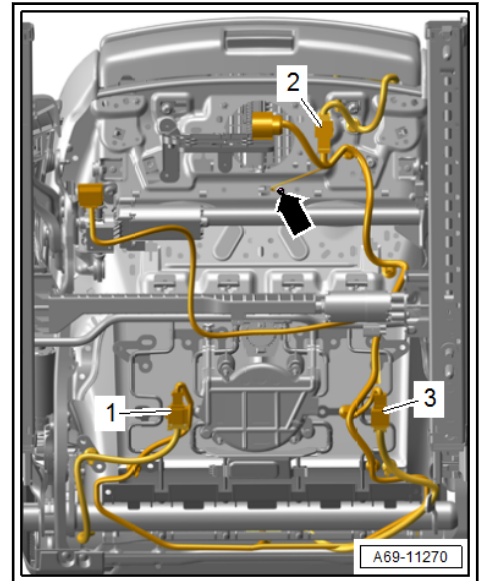
- Remove front passenger seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).
- Release catch -1- and disengage control unit -2- from storage compartment -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#).
- Disconnect modular wiring ⇒ [page 361](#).
- Open up corrugated tube and move wiring clear.





- Unscrew nut -arrow- and move wiring clear.
- Unplug electrical connectors -1, 2, 3-.
- Unclip wiring harness from seat pan and move it clear.
- Remove seat cover with padding for seat pan ⇒ [page 427](#) .
- Separate seat cover and padding (if necessary) ⇒ [page 442](#) .

#### Installing

**⚠ WARNING**

*Risk of injury if airbag is triggered inadvertently.*

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

**i Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

The basic setting of the seat occupied recognition control unit has to be performed when a new service kit is installed ⇒ [page 7](#) .

- Finally, select “Airbag” function in “Guided Fault Finding” mode using ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.
- ◆ Basic setting for seat occupied recognition control unit - J706-



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o14.1 f fitting locations - seat occupied recognition system", page 176](#)**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 15 Pedestrian protection

⇒ [o15.1 verview - pedestrian protection", page 181](#)

⇒ [a15.2 nd installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protectionG579", page 183](#)

⇒ [a15.3 nd installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protectionG693", page 186](#)

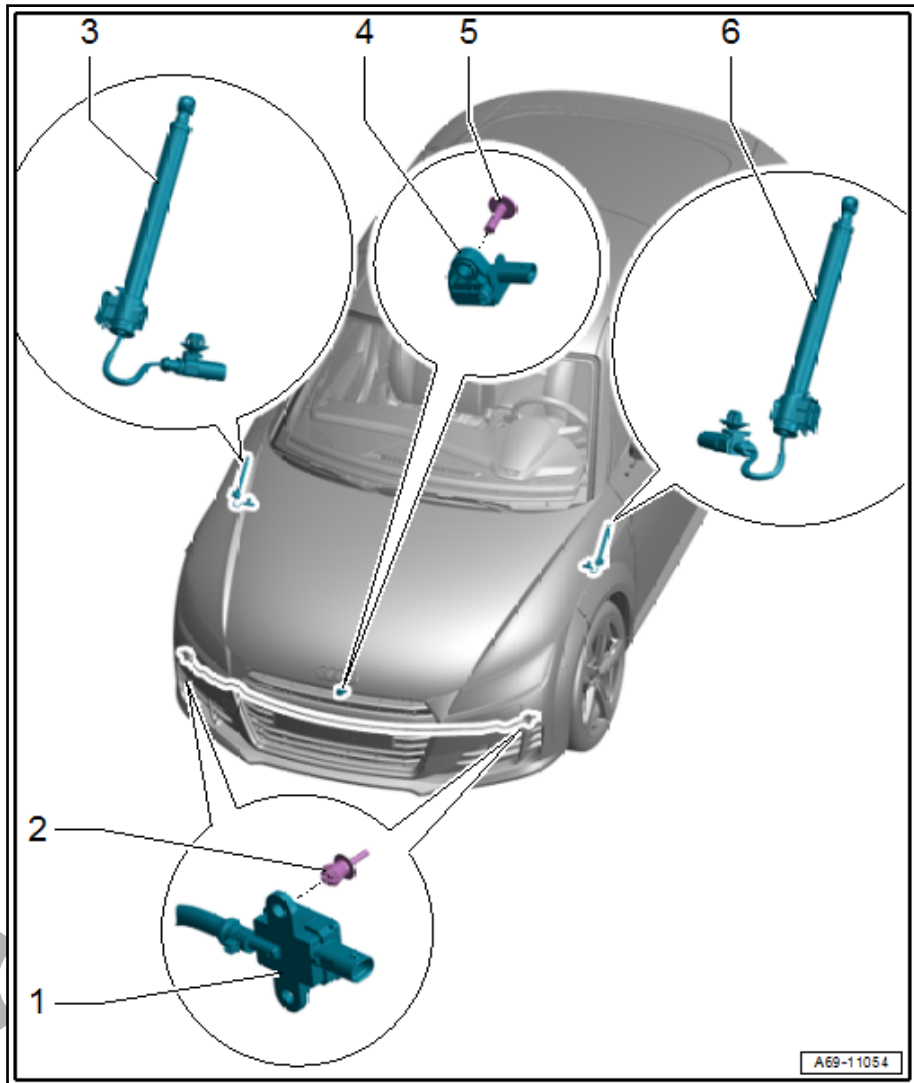
⇒ [a15.4 nd installing trigger for pedestrian protection G598/G599", page 189](#)

### 15.1 Assembly overview - pedestrian protection

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.  
Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection**

- ◆ LHD vehicles, left side (as seen in direction of travel): driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection - G851-
- ◆ LHD vehicles, right side (as seen in direction of travel): front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G852-
- ◆ RHD vehicles, right side (as seen in direction of travel): driver side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G851-
- ◆ RHD vehicles, left side (as seen in direction of travel): front passenger side crash sensor 2 for pedestrian protection -G852-
- Combined with pressure hose
- Fitting location: in moulded foam insert on impact bar
- Must be renewed if:
  - ◆ Moulded foam insert is visibly damaged
  - ◆ Impact bar is visibly deformed
  - ◆ Bumper cover is severely deformed/visibly damaged



- ◆ Pressure hose is damaged
  - Insert pressure hose into groove on moulded foam insert
  - Installation position of pressure hose: Centred in moulded foam insert, protrudes equally on left and right
  - Do not kink or crimp pressure hose
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 183](#)

**2 - Rivet**

- Depending on version

**3 - Trigger for pedestrian protection (right-side as seen in direction of travel)**

- ◆ LHD vehicles: trigger 2 for pedestrian protection -G599-
- ◆ RHD vehicles: trigger 1 for pedestrian protection -G598-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 189](#)

**4 - Centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection -G693-**

- Fitting location: On bumper cover
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 186](#)

**5 - Bolt**

- 9 Nm

**6 - Trigger for pedestrian protection (left-side as seen in direction of travel)**

- ◆ LHD vehicles: trigger 1 for pedestrian protection -G598-

- ◆ RHD vehicles: trigger 2 for pedestrian protection -G599-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 189](#)

## 15.2 Removing and installing front pressure hose sensor for pedestrian protection -G579-

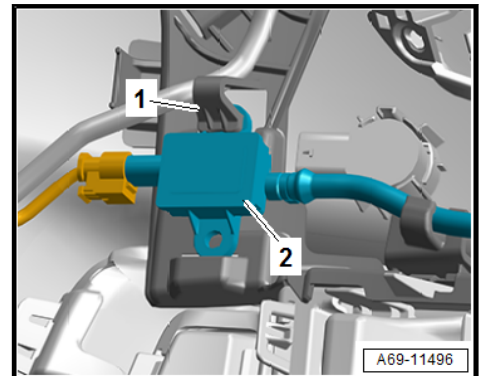
### Removing



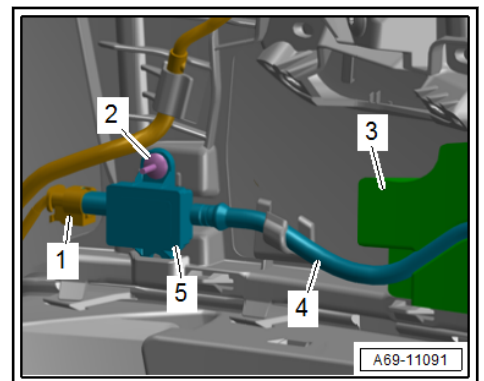
**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery, Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing bumper cover.
- Depending on equipment version: Release retaining catch -1- and disengage crash sensor -2- for pedestrian protection from bumper cover.

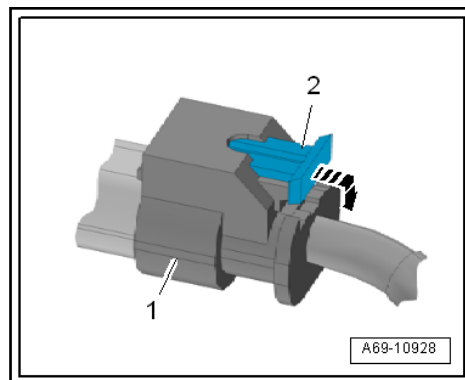


- Depending on equipment version: Remove spreader rivet -2- and disengage crash sensor -5- for pedestrian protection from bumper cover.



- Disengage pressure hose -4- from bumper cover and pull out of recess in moulded foam insert -3-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.

- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.



- Repeat procedure on opposite side.

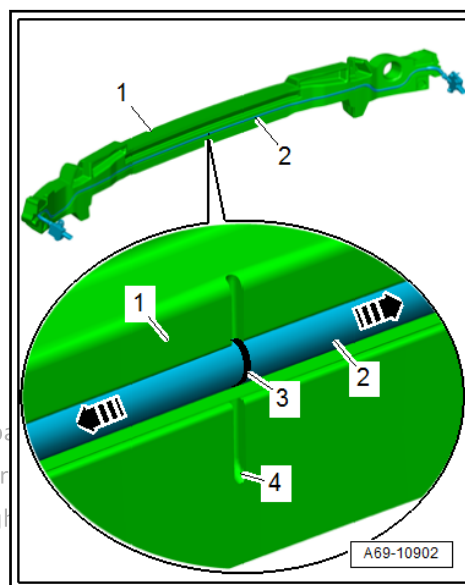
### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Insert pressure hose -2- centrally in groove in moulded foam insert -1-, ensuring that coloured marking -3- is aligned with marking -4- on moulded foam insert.




Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2011 Audi AG



#### Note

- ◆ *Not all pressure hoses -2- have a coloured marking -3-.*
- ◆ *If you are using a pressure hose -2- without a coloured marking -3-, measure and mark the middle of the hose.*

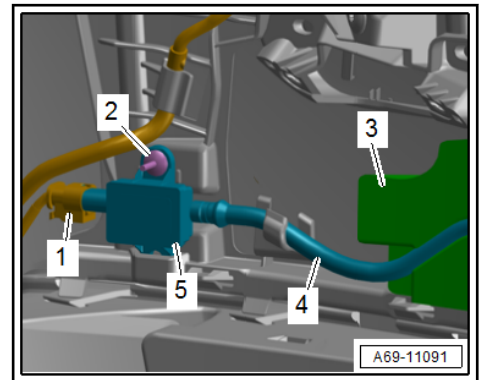
- Insert pressure hose into groove in moulded foam insert evenly in both directions -arrows-.



**WARNING**

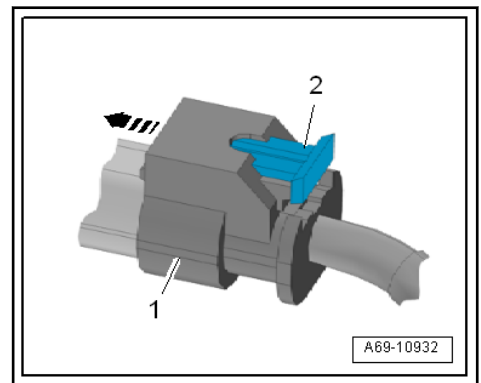
*Do not kink or stretch the pressure hose.*

- Insert pressure hose -4- into groove in moulded foam insert -3- and engage in bumper cover.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Depending on equipment version: Engage crash sensor -5- for pedestrian protection in bumper cover and fit with spreader rivet -2-.
- Plug in electrical connector -1-.
- To do so, attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.



- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.
- Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

 **Note**

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o15.1 overview - pedestrian protection", page 181](#)

### 15.3 Removing and installing centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection - G693-

#### Removing

**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

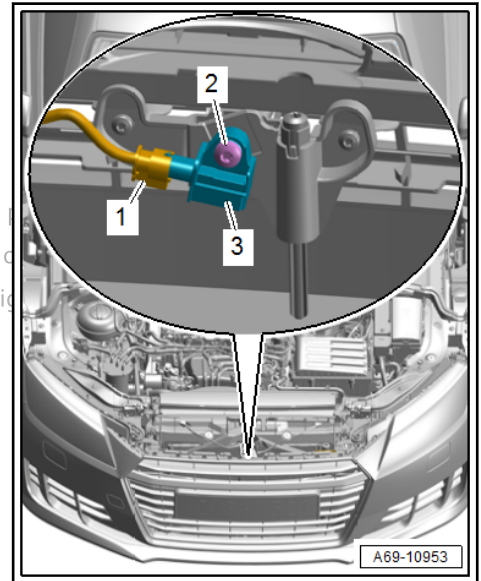
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Assembly overview - bumper cover.
- Remove bolt -2- and detach centre crash sensor for pedestrian protection -G693- -item 3- from bumper.





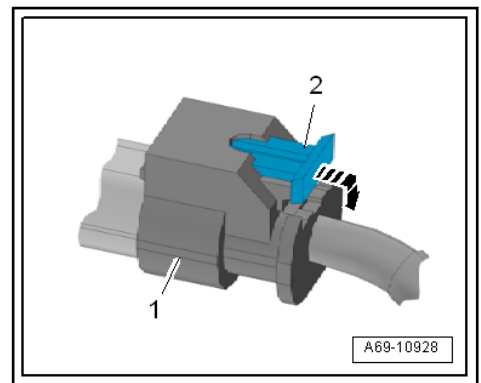
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2021 Audi AG



**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- To do so, pull out and press down connector locking element -2- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- at crash sensor.

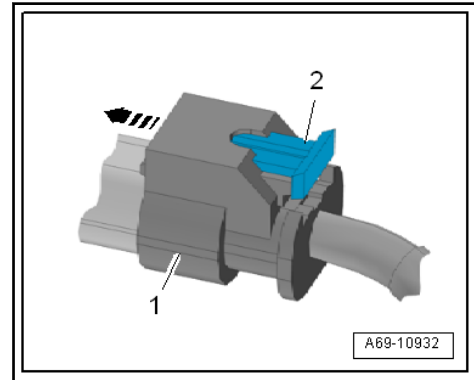


**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Attach connector -1- to crash sensor -arrow- so that it engages audibly.



- Press in connector locking element -2- to secure connector.

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:



#### Note



- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

Permitted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### WARNING

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



#### WARNING

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



#### Note

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o15.1 overview - pedestrian protection](#), page 181

## 15.4 Removing and installing trigger for pedestrian protection -G598-/-G599-

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove wheel housing liner (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front).
- Trigger for pedestrian protection (left-side): Remove washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92; Windscreen washer system; Removing and installing washer fluid reservoir.

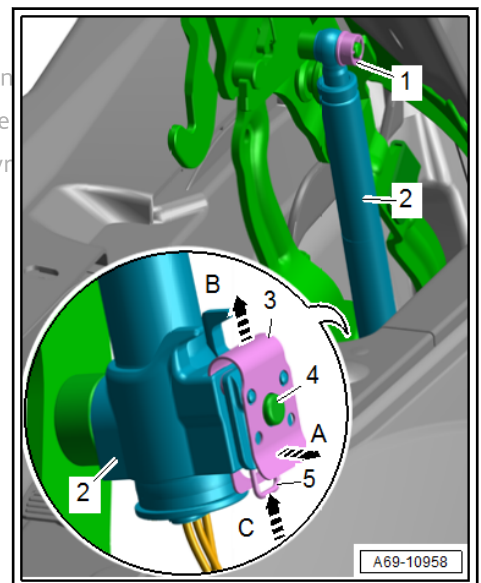


#### WARNING

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Press release catch and unplug electrical connector for trigger for pedestrian protection.
- Remove clip -1- with a screwdriver.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy





- Release securing clip -3- by pulling it in direction of -arrow A- and at the same time press over pin -4- in direction of -arrow B-.
- Press and hold retaining clip -5- -arrow C- and at the same time detach trigger for pedestrian protection -2- from pin.
- Detach trigger for pedestrian protection (if necessary, press rear cover for wing slightly to one side).

### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



#### Note

- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*



#### WARNING

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the area of the bonnet when the battery is being connected.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



#### WARNING

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*



**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o15.1 overview - pedestrian protection](#)", page 181**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 70 – Trim, insulation

### 1 Front door trim

⇒ [a1.1 overview - front door trim", page 192](#)

⇒ [a1.2 nd installing loudspeaker trim", page 195](#)

⇒ [a1.3 nd installing trim panel", page 196](#)

⇒ [a1.4 nd installing front door trim", page 197](#)

⇒ [a1.5 nd installing front armrest", page 200](#)

⇒ [a1.6 nd installing front door puller", page 201](#)

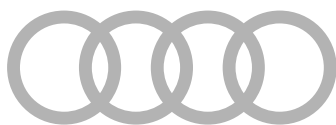
⇒ [a1.7 nd installing switch trim", page 201](#)

⇒ [a1.8 nd installing interior door handle", page 202](#)

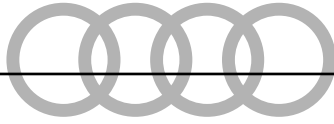
⇒ [a1.9 nd installing triangular trim", page 203](#)

#### 1.1 Assembly overview - front door trim

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



### 1 - Armrest

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 200](#)

### 2 - Trim for buttons

- Switch mounting
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 201](#)

### 3 - Lining mat

- Insert into door pocket

### 4 - Driver side entry light - W92-

- Passenger side: passenger side entry light -W93-
- Depending on version
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

### 5 - Door trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 197](#)
- If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve -item 15- must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

### 6 - Clip

- For door trim
- 8x
- Insert in trim

### 7 - Bolt

- For armrest
- 21x
- 1.2 Nm

### 8 - Door warning lamp

- Driver side (equipment version): driver side door warning lamp -W30-
- Passenger side (equipment version): front passenger side door warning lamp -W36-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

### 9 - Button for deactivating interior monitoring and vehicle inclination sensor -E616-

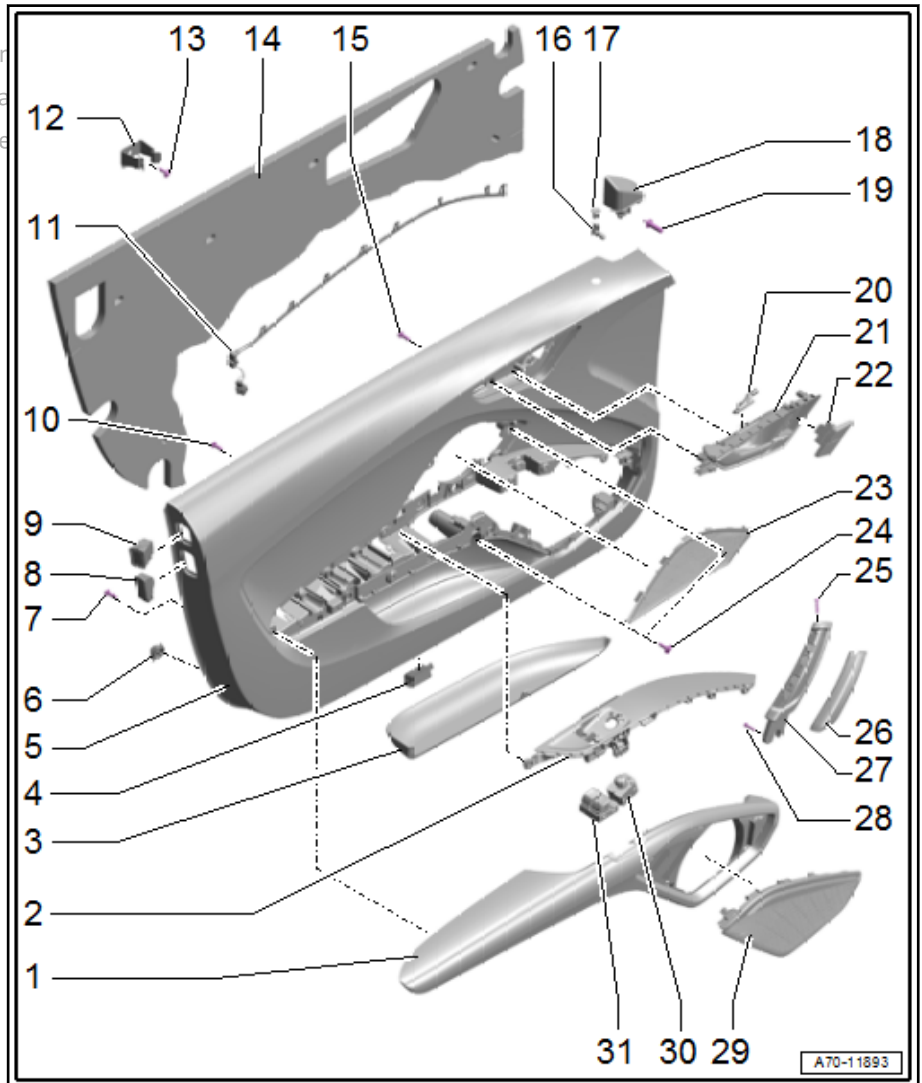
- Depending on version
- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Anti-theft alarm system; Assembly overview - interior monitoring

### 10 - Bolt

- For trim for buttons
- 3x
- 1.2 Nm

### 11 - Driver door background lighting bulb -L164-

- Passenger side: front passenger door background lighting bulb -L165-





- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - background lighting in doors

## 12 - Clip

- For door trim

## 13 - Bolt

- 2.5 Nm

## 14 - Insulating mat

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 15 - Bolt

- For interior door handle
- 6x
- 1.2 Nm

## 16 - Central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp -K133-

### 17 - Sleeve

- For central locking SAFELOCK function warning lamp -K133-
- Driver's door only
- If door trim is renewed, hole for sleeve must be drilled additionally based on old door trim

### 18 - Inner triangular trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 203](#)

### 19 - Stop plate

- For door trim
- 4.5 Nm

## 20 - Driver door opener illumination bulb -L108-

- Passenger side: front passenger door opener illumination bulb -L109-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors

### 21 - Interior door handle

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 202](#)

## 22 - Driver side interior locking button for central locking system -E308-

- Passenger side: front passenger side interior locking button for central locking system -E309-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

### 23 - Loudspeaker trim

- For mid-range loudspeaker
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 195](#)
- Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

### 24 - Bolt

- For door trim
- 2x
- 2.5 Nm

### 25 - Bolt

- For door puller
- 2x
- 1.2 Nm

### 26 - Trim panel

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 196](#)



## 27 - Door puller

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 201](#)

## 28 - Bolt

- For door puller
- 2x
- 1.2 Nm

## 29 - Loudspeaker trim

- For bass loudspeaker
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 195](#)
- Hook into door trim and press on until it engages audibly

## 30 - Mirror adjustment switch -E43-

- Depending on equipment version: adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature -E168-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

## 31 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door -E512-

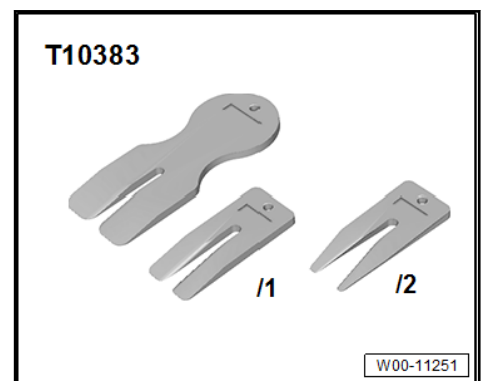
- Passenger side: window regulator switch in front passenger door -E107-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in front doors

## 1.2 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

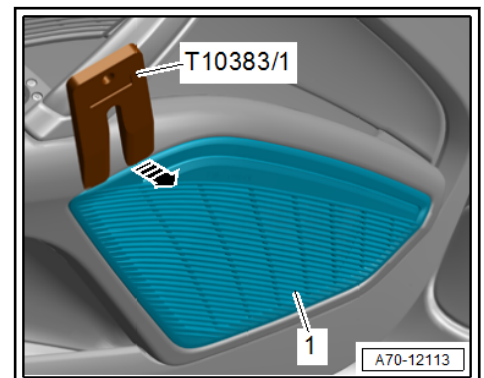
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



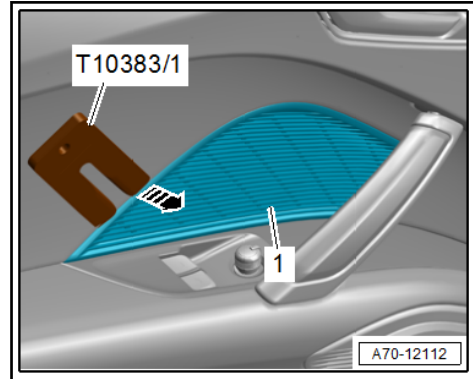
### Removing bass loudspeaker trim:





- Using wedge -T10383/1-, carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.
- Vehicles with lighting: Unplug connector for lighting.

**Removing mid-range loudspeaker trim:**



- Using wedge -T10383/1-, carefully prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

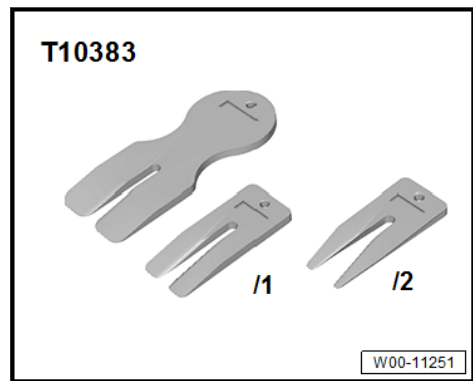
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), page 192

**1.3 Removing and installing trim panel**

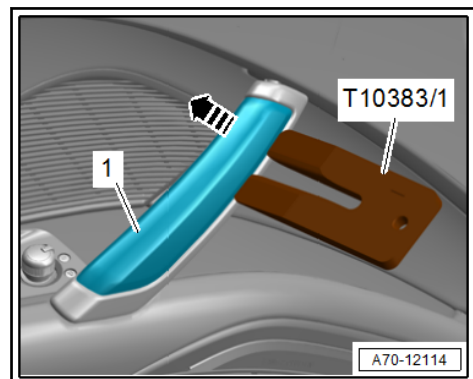
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



**Removing**



- Using wedge -T10383/1-, carefully prise trim panel -1- off door puller along gap -arrow-.
- Pull trim panel off door puller and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

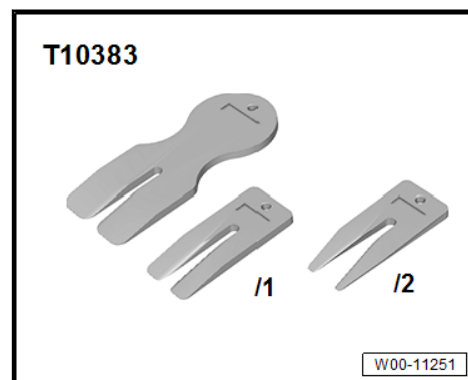
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), [page 192](#)

## 1.4 Removing and installing front door trim

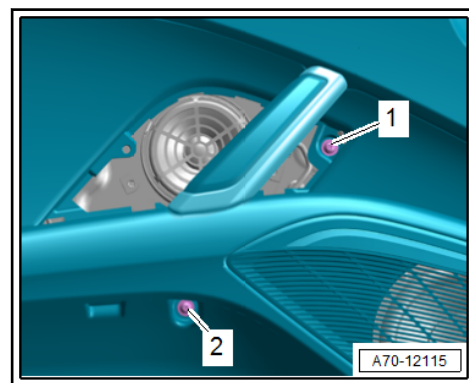
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-

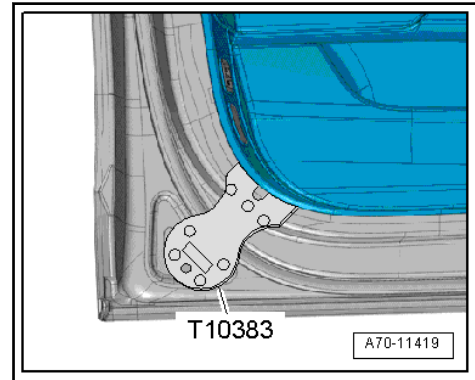


### Removing



- Switch off ignition.
- Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 196](#) .
- Remove bolts -1, 2-.
- Starting in bottom rear corner, use wedge -T10383- to unclip door trim from door. To do so, insert wedge between door trim and door in area of retaining clips.

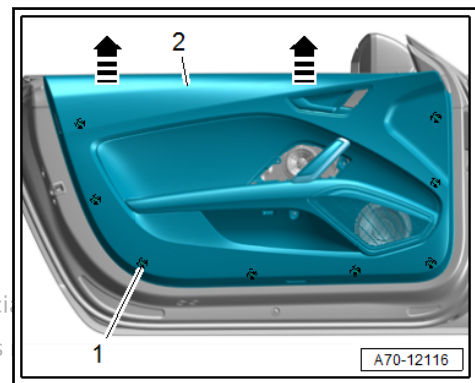
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



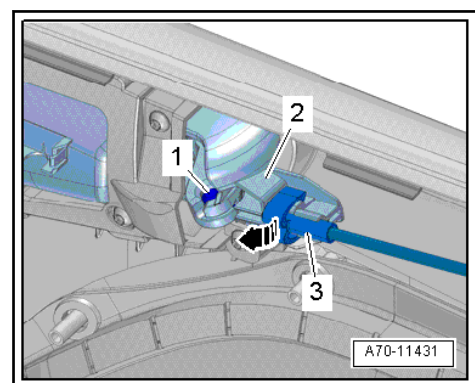
Unclip remaining retaining clips along door trim from door; marking -1- shows position of retaining clips.



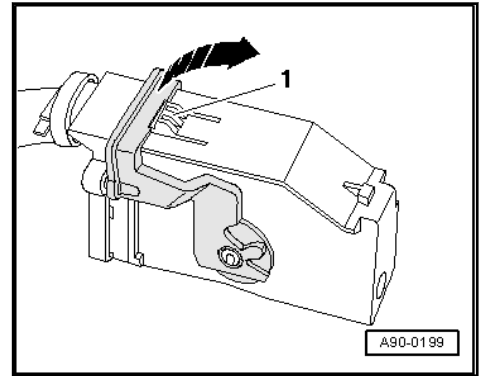
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Pull door trim -2- approx. 15 mm away from the door all around.
- Do not leave retaining clips in door.
- Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot -arrows- and detach.
- Carefully unclip Bowden cable -3- from interior door handle -2-.

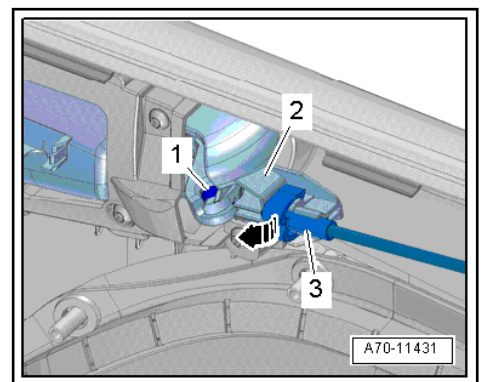


- Swivel Bowden cable for interior door handle inwards -arrow-.
- Disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.
- To unplug electrical connector, press catch -1-, turn retaining bracket in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.



- Detach door trim.

**Installing**



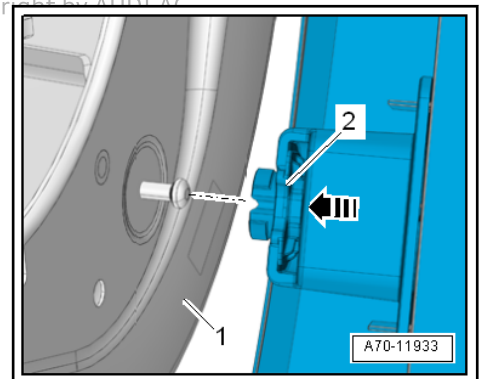
- Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
- Clip in Bowden cable -3- for interior door handle at interior door handle -2-.
- Bowden cable must engage audibly.
- Plug in electrical connector at door control unit.



Note

*Disregard -arrow-*

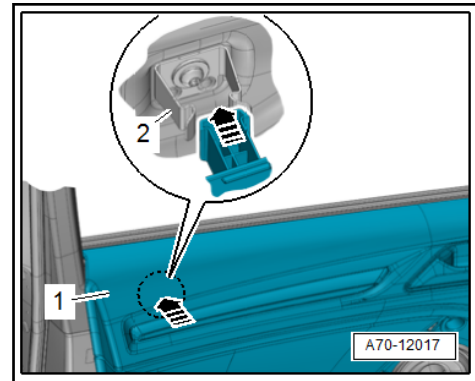
- Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.



- Carefully position clips -2- for door trim all around door -1- and press door trim onto door -arrow- until it engages audibly at anchorage points => [page 198](#).



- In addition, engage door trim -1- in clip -2- by pressing door trim onto door in direction of -arrows- at location indicated so that it engages audibly.



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), page 192**

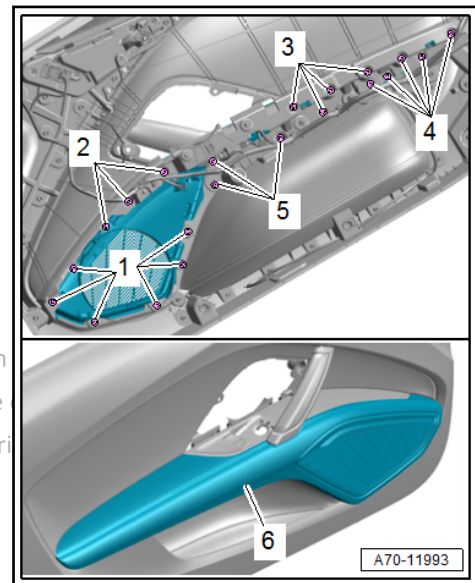
## 1.5 Removing and installing front armrest

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri



- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove insulating mat.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for background lighting bulb.
- Unscrew bolts -1 ... 5- at rear of door trim.
- Release armrest -6- and detach from door trim.

### Installing

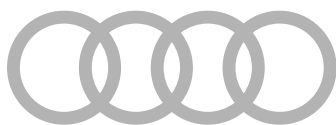
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 verview - front door trim", page 192](#)

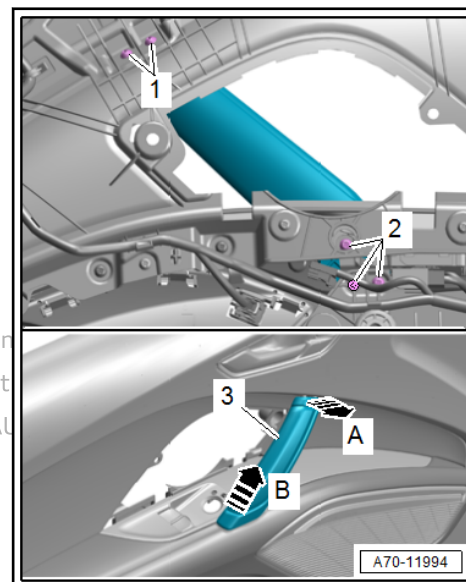
## 1.6 Removing and installing front door puller

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove insulating mat.
- Driver side: Remove mirror adjustment switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing mirror adjustment switch -E43-/-E168-.
- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- at rear of door trim.
- Unfasten door puller -3- from door trim at top -arrow A- and pull door puller out of door trim at bottom -arrow B-.

### Installing

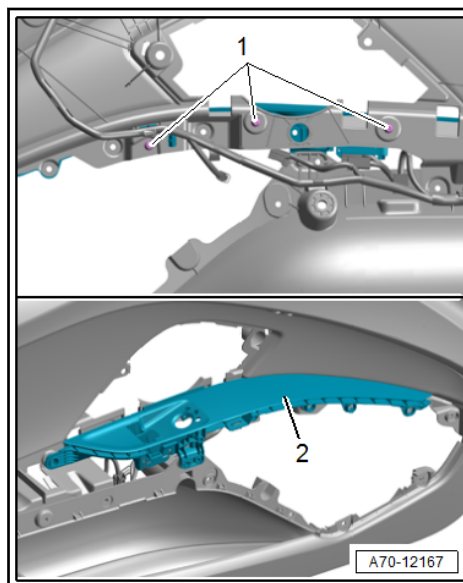
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 verview - front door trim", page 192](#)

## 1.7 Removing and installing switch trim

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

## Removing



- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove insulating mat.
- Remove armrest ⇒ [page 200](#) .
- Remove door puller ⇒ [page 201](#) .
- Remove window regulator switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing operating unit for window regulator in driver door -E512-.
- Unscrew bolts -1- at rear of door trim.
- Unfasten trim -2- and detach from door trim.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), [page 192](#)**

## 1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle

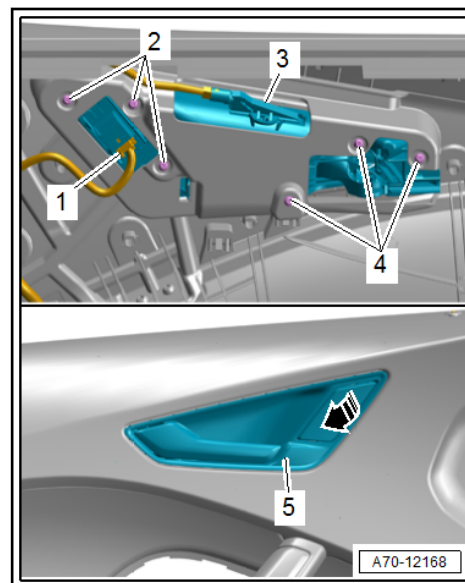
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Removing



- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .
- Remove insulating mat.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at rear of door trim.
- Remove bulb -3- at interior door handle ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in front doors.
- Remove bolts -2, 4-.
- Press interior door handle -5- from rear out of door trim -arrow-.
- Pull interior door handle off door trim and detach.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), [page 192](#)**

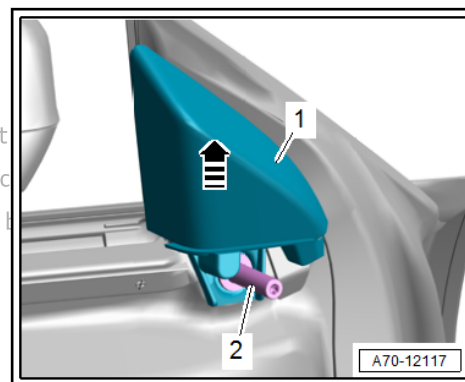
## 1.9 Removing and installing triangular trim

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright ©



- Remove door trim ⇒ [page 197](#) .



- Unscrew stop -2- for door trim.
- Disengage cover panel -1- upwards from door -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - front door trim](#), page 192**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2 Dash panel

- ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel", page 205](#)
- ⇒ [a2.2 nd installing dash panel cover \(side\)", page 208](#)
- ⇒ [a2.3 nd installing trim panel for dash panel", page 209](#)
- ⇒ [a2.4 nd installing trim for dash panel insert", page 210](#)
- ⇒ [a2.5 nd installing loudspeaker trim", page 213](#)
- ⇒ [a2.6 nd installing dash panel", page 214](#)
- ⇒ [a2.7 nd installing dash panel vents", page 221](#)
- ⇒ [a2.8 nd installing defroster vent \(front centre\)", page 222](#)
- ⇒ [a2.9 nd installing side defroster vent", page 223](#)

### 2.1 Assembly overview - dash panel

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Bolts**

- 3 Nm

**2 - Dash panel cover (side)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 208](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**3 - Dash panel**

**! WARNING**

**Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).**

**For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue.***

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 214](#)

**4 - Bolt**

- 3 Nm

**5 - Rubber buffer**

- 2x
- Slide onto mountings for dash panel on windscreen frame (bottom)

**6 - Reinforcement for dash panel**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4 nd installing trim for dash panel insert](#), [page 210](#)

**7 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 3 Nm

**8 - Centre loudspeaker**

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

**9 - Cap**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4 nd installing trim for dash panel insert](#), [page 210](#)
- Press on until it engages

**10 - Bolt**

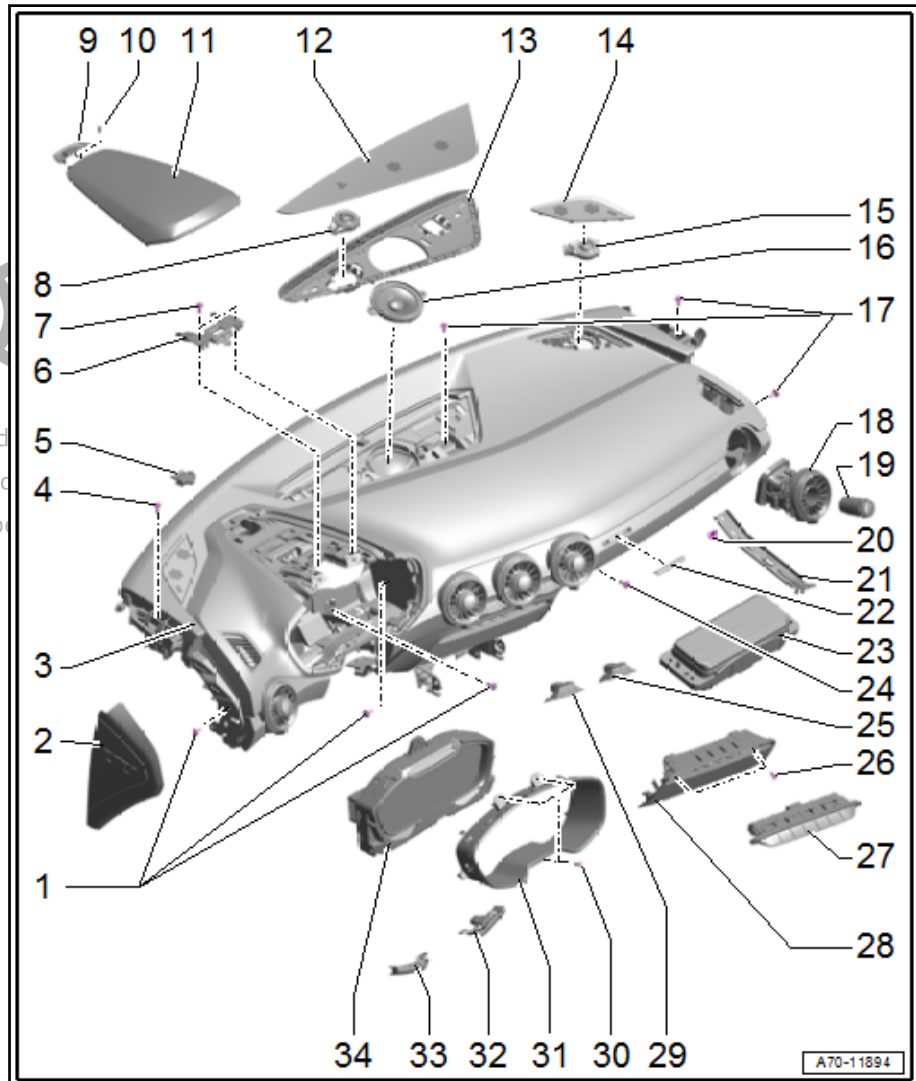
- 1.5 Nm

**11 - Cowl on dash panel insert**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4 nd installing trim for dash panel insert](#), [page 210](#)
- Press on until it engages

**12 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 213](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**13 - Defroster vent (front centre)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 222](#)
- Press on until it engages

#### 14 - Loudspeaker trim (outer)

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 213](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

#### 15 - Treble loudspeaker (front)

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

#### 16 - Centre loudspeaker

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

#### 17 - Bolts

- 3 Nm

#### 18 - Dash panel vent

- 5x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 221](#)
- Press on until it engages

#### 19 - Button for right seat heating -E654-

- Integrated in operating and display unit 5 for air conditioning system -E778-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit

#### 20 - Bolt

- 4x
- 9 Nm

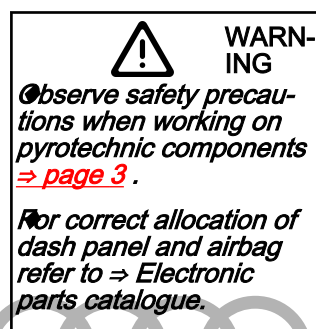
#### 21 - Support

- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 220](#)

#### 22 - Trim panel for dash panel

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 209](#)
- Press on until it engages

#### 23 - Airbag (front passenger side)



- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 125](#)

#### 24 - Bolt

- 3 Nm

#### 25 - Heated rear window button -E230-

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit

#### 26 - Bolt

- 2x



- 3 Nm

### 27 - Centre switch module in dash panel -EX22-

- With: Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. This document is authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- ◆ Hazard warning lights button -E229-
- ◆ Button for TCS and electronic stabilisation program -E256-
- ◆ Parking aid button -E266-
- ◆ Open and close button for front display -E462-
- ◆ Park assist steering button -E581-
- ◆ Switch module for driving mode selection -E592-
- ◆ Start/stop operation button -E693-
- ◆ Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-
- ◆ Adjustable rear spoiler switch -E127-
- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

### 28 - Trim

- For centre switch module in dash panel -EX22-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 220](#)

### 29 - Fresh air and air recirculation button -E781-/defroster button -E782-

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit

### 30 - Bolt

- 3x
- 3 Nm

### 31 - Trim for dash panel insert

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 210](#)

### 32 - Dash panel insert operating button -E493-

- Overview of fitting locations ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in dash panel

### 33 - Trim for dash panel

### 34 - Dash panel insert

- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90; Dash panel insert; Assembly overview - dash panel insert

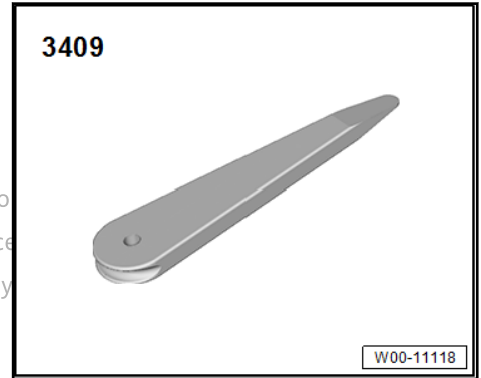
## 2.2 Removing and installing dash panel cover (side)

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

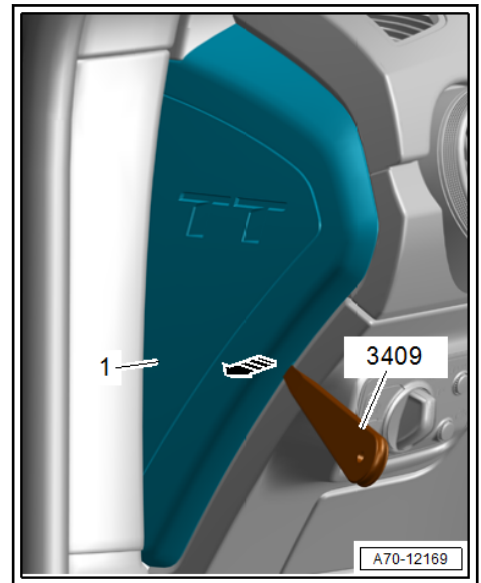
### Special tools and workshop equipment required



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



### Removing



- Prise off dash panel cover (side) -1- using removal wedge -3409- -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

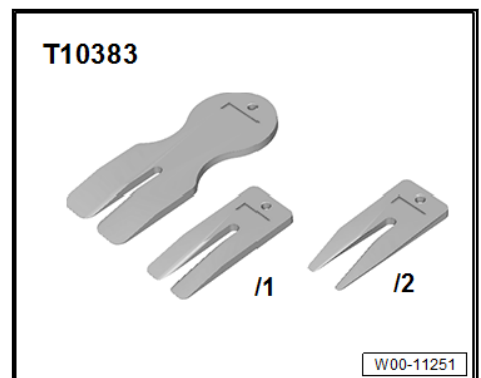
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel", page 205](#)

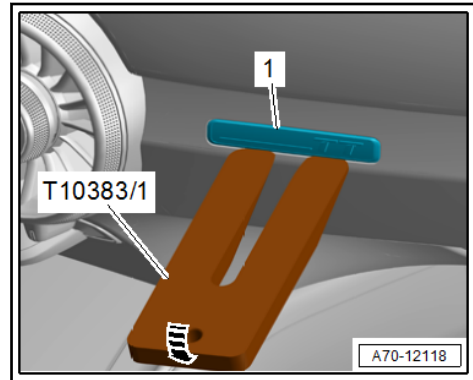
## 2.3 Removing and installing trim panel for dash panel

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



## Removing



- Unclip trim panel -1- -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1-.

## Installing

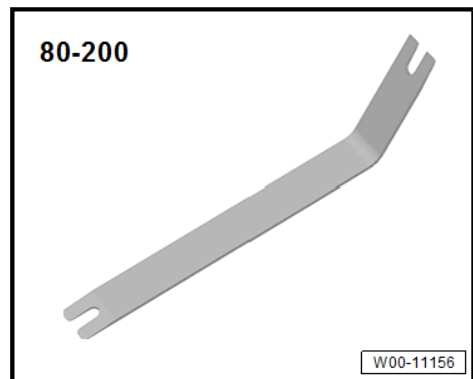
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - dash panel", page 205](#)

## 2.4 Removing and installing trim for dash panel insert

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

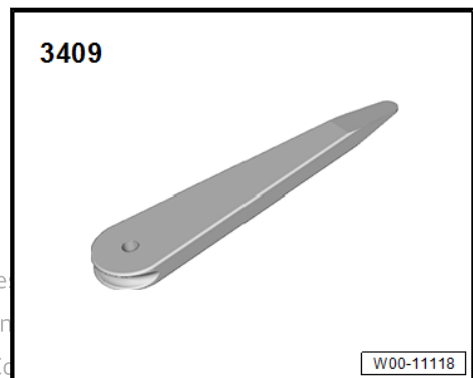
- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

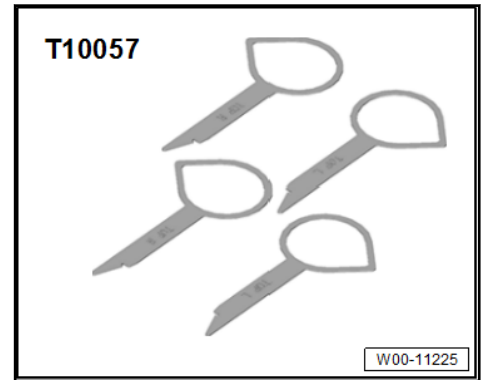


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

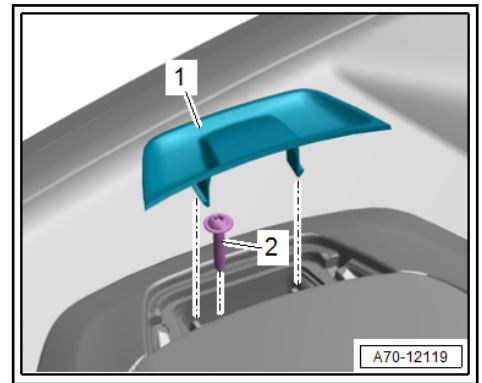




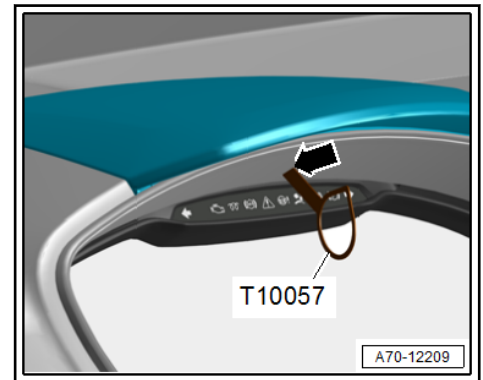
- ◆ Radio release tool -T10057-



## Removing



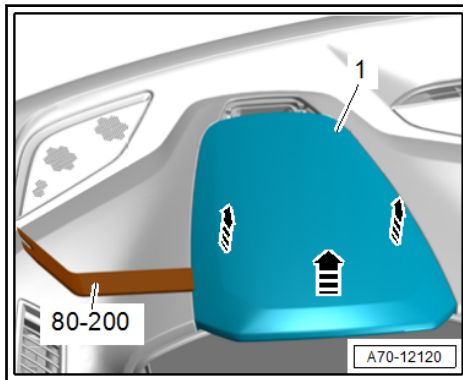
- Unclip cap -1- using removal wedge -3409-.
- If fitted, unscrew bolt -2- for cowl (underneath cap).
- To release retaining clip, insert release tool -T10057- in recess -arrow- and press in.



- Unclip cowl -1- from dash panel -arrows- using removal lever -80-200-.



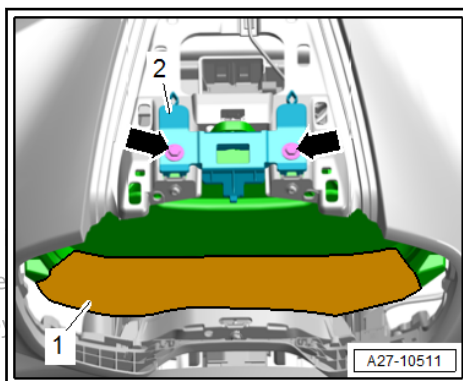
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- To remove reinforcement for dash panel -2-, unscrew bolts -arrows-.



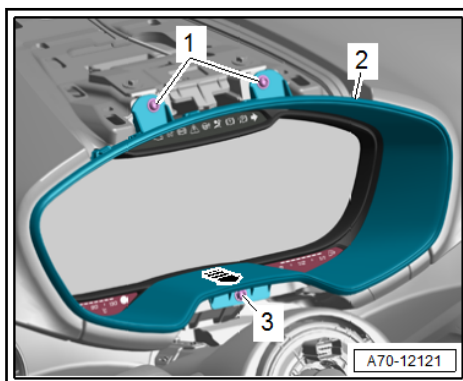
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop



**i** Note

Disregard -item 1-.

- Unclip steering column trim (top) from dash panel ⇒ [page 22](#).



- Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Pull trim -2- for dash panel insert towards rear -arrow- and remove.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o2.1 overview - dash panel](#), page 205

## 2.5 Removing and installing loudspeaker trim

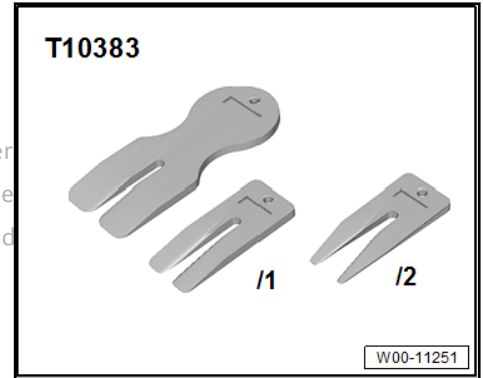
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

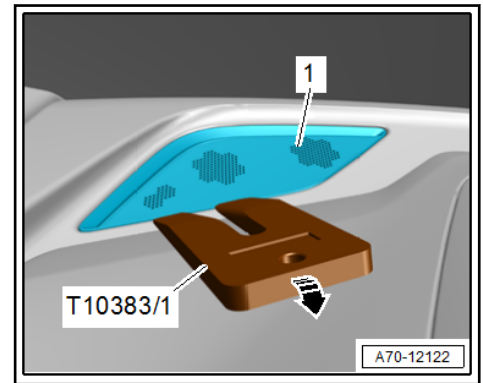
- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



### Removing outer loudspeaker trim:



#### Caution

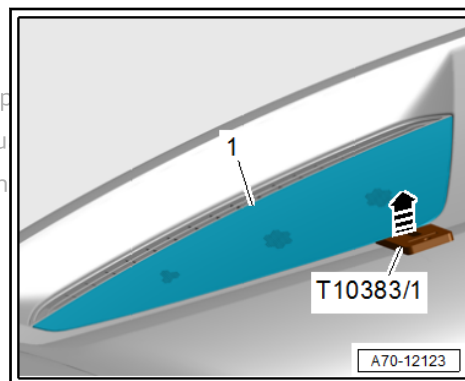
*Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim.*

- ◆ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

- Carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- along gap -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1-; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath trim.

## Removing loudspeaker trim (centre):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



### Caution

*Risk of damage to loudspeaker trim.*

- ◆ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

- Carefully disengage loudspeaker trim -1- along gap -arrow- using wedge -T10383/1-; to do so, insert wedge only approx. 2 mm in gap beneath trim.
- If necessary, push a long screwdriver all the way through under loudspeaker trim towards front until front retaining pins disengage.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - dash panel](#), page 205

## 2.6 Removing and installing dash panel

⇒ [a2.6.1 nd installing dash panel](#), page 214

⇒ [a2.6.2 nd installing support for dash panel](#), page 220

⇒ [a2.6.3 nd installing trim for switch panel](#), page 220

### 2.6.1 Removing and installing dash panel

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Removing

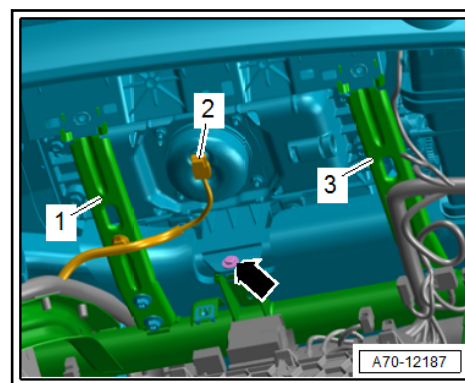
- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Move front seats as far towards rear as possible and tilt backrests to 45°.



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire  
 ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Remove airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ [page 119](#) .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering;  
 Rep. gr. 48; Steering wheel; Removing and installing steering wheel.
- Remove steering column switch ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Steering column switch module; Removing and installing steering column switch module.
- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 208](#) .
- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Remove dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 90; Dash panel insert; Assembly overview - dash panel insert.
- Unplug electrical connector for dash panel insert operating button -E493- and move clear.
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 249](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor -G107- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor -G107-.
- Remove loudspeaker trim in dash panel ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- Remove centre defroster vent (front) ⇒ [page 222](#) .
- Remove loudspeaker in dash panel ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system.
- Remove buttons -E230- and -E781- or -E782- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit.
- Remove dash panel vents ⇒ [page 221](#) .



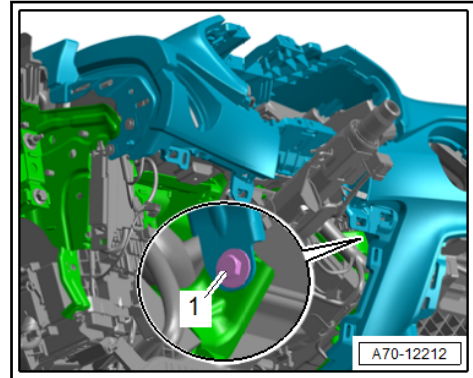
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



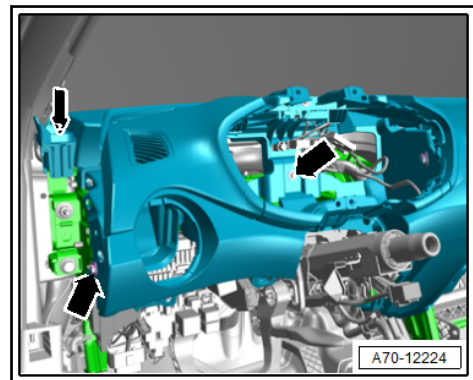
**WARNING**

***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

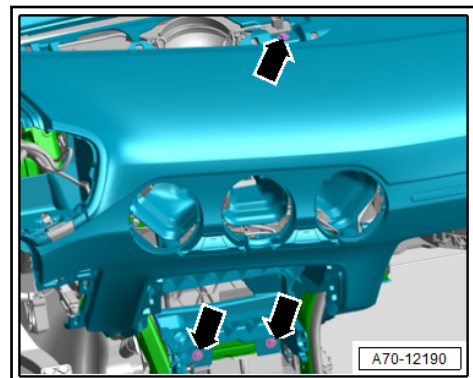
- Unplug electrical connector -2- for airbag (front passenger side) → [page 128](#) ; NAR version → [page 128](#)
- Remove supports -1 and 3- for dash panel → [page 220](#)
- Unscrew bolt -arrow- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (passenger side).
- TT Roadster: Unscrew bolt (bottom) -1- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (driver side).



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (driver side).



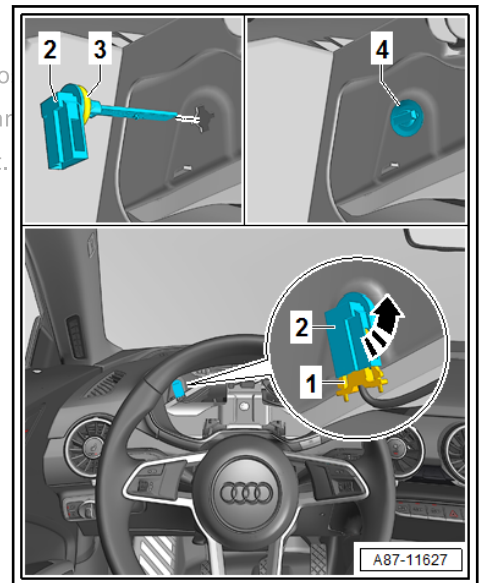
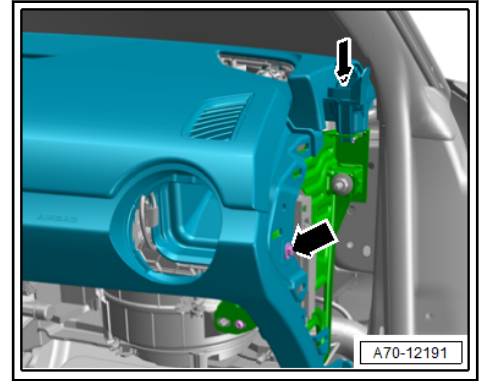
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (centre).



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- for dash panel at dash panel cross member (passenger side).

  
**Equipment version with Climatronic:**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

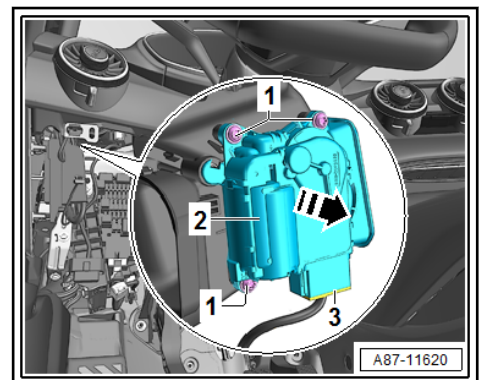


- Unplug electrical connector -1- for left vent temperature sender -G150- -item 2-.

 **Note**

*Disregard -items 3, 4 and arrow-.*

- Unplug electrical connector -3- for left vent temperature sender -V409- -item 2-.



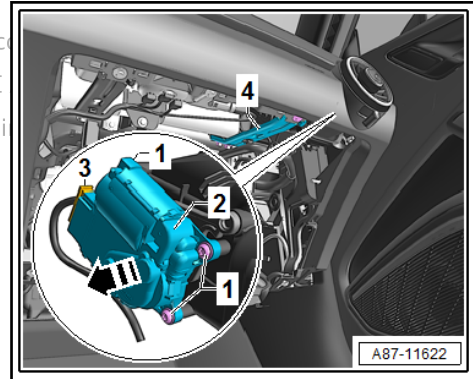


 **Note**

*Disregard -item 1 and arrow-*

- Unplug electrical connector -3- for right vent temperature sender -V410- -item 2-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information.



Disregard -items 1, 4 and arrow-

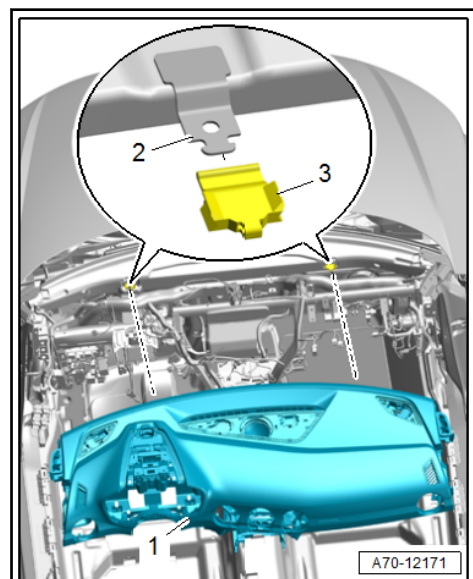
**All vehicles (continued):**

 **Note**

*A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.*


- Lift dash panel slightly and detach it carefully from dash panel cross member towards rear.
- Unclip wiring harnesses at front from dash panel in vicinity of A-pillar.
- Carefully detach dash panel from dash panel cross member towards rear, guiding out electrical connectors.
- Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

**Installing**






Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:


 **WARNING**  
*For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to  
 ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.*

- Fit dash panel in position and guide electrical connectors through opening in dash panel.
- Check whether a rubber buffer -3- has been fitted on each of the dash panel mountings -2- at the lower windscreen frame.
- When inserting dash panel -1-, make sure mountings for dash panel engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.


 **WARNING**  
 ♦ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*  
 ♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

 **Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

 **WARNING**  
*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

 **WARNING**  
*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*  
 ♦ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

... purposes, in part or in whole, is not  
 ... not guarantee or accept any liability  
 ... correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

 Note

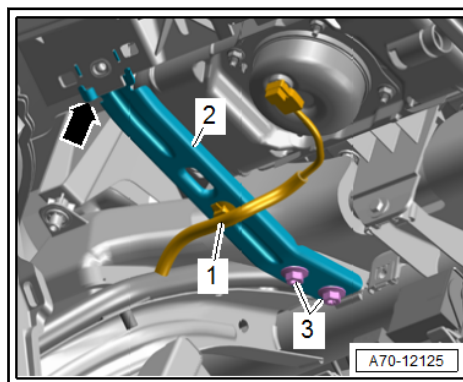
If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - dash panel](#), page 205

## 2.6.2 Removing and installing support for dash panel

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Removing



- Remove glove compartment ⇒ [page 27](#) .
  - Unclip electrical wiring -1- at support for dash panel.
  - Remove bolts -3-.
  - Disengage support -2- at dash panel -arrow- and detach.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

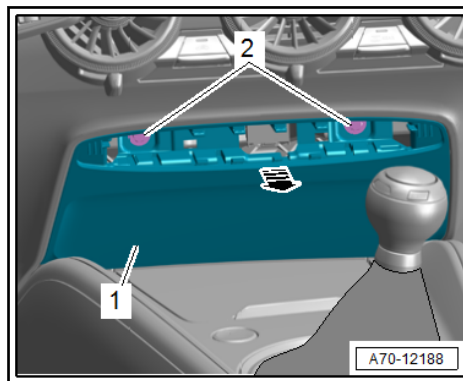
### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - dash panel](#), page 205

## 2.6.3 Removing and installing trim for switch panel

### Removing



- Remove centre switch module in dash panel -EX22- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing switches in dash panel.
- Remove bolts -2-.
- Pull trim -1- to the rear out of dash panel -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

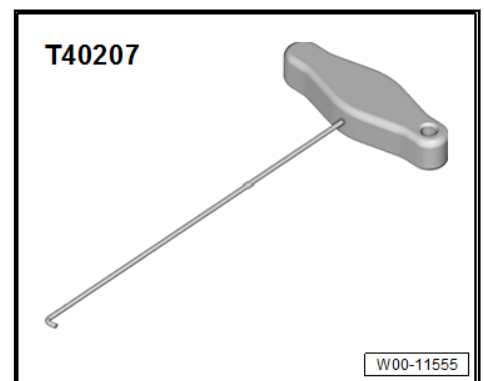
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - dash panel](#), page 205

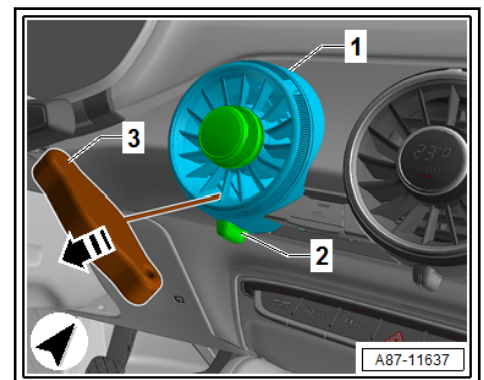
## 2.7 Removing and installing dash panel vents

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Hook -T40207-



### Removing



- Dash panel vent (centre): Remove buttons -E230- and -E781-/-E782- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Operating and display unit; Overview of fitting locations - operating and display unit.
- Move operating lever -2- to “6 o'clock” position.
- Carefully insert hook -T40207- -item 3- between louvres and engage at back of vent.
- Working alternately on each side, carefully prise vent -1- out of opening using hook -T40207- -arrow-.
- Pull vent out of opening and unplug electrical connector.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

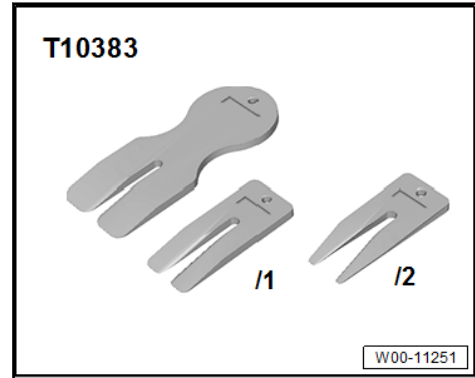
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel](#)", [page 205](#)

## 2.8 Removing and installing defroster vent (front centre)

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

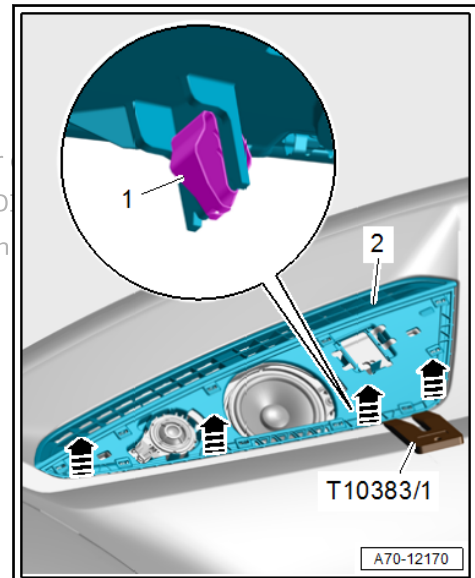
- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD with respect to the correctness of information



is not  
ility

- Remove loudspeaker trim ⇒ [page 213](#) .
- If fitted: Remove sunlight penetration photosensor ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Further control components; Removing and installing sunlight penetration photosensor -G107-.
- If fitted: Remove treble loudspeaker ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system.
- Release retaining clips -1- using wedge -T10383/1- -arrows- and pull out defroster vent -2- towards rear.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

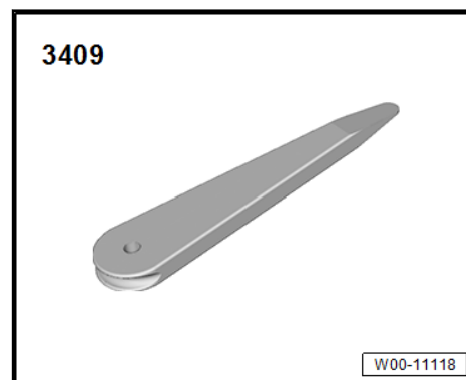
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel", page 205](#)

## 2.9 Removing and installing side defroster vent

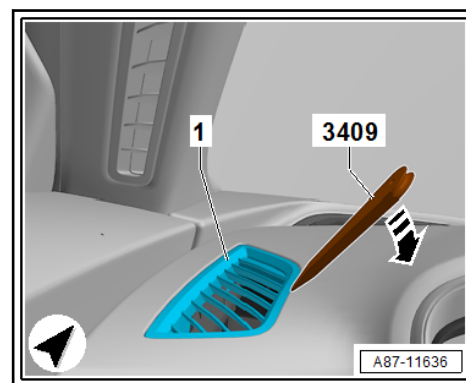
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



### Removing



- Using removal wedge -3409-, carefully prise defroster vent -1- upwards off dash panel -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 verview - dash panel", page 205](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



### 3 Dash panel cross member

⇒ [o3.1 verview - dash panel cross member", page 224](#)

⇒ [a3.2 nd installing crash bar", page 227](#)

⇒ [a3.3 nd installing dash panel cross member", page 228](#)

#### 3.1 Assembly overview - dash panel cross member

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Bolt**

- 20 Nm

**2 - Crash bar**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 227](#)

**3 - Bracket**

- For entry and start authorisation control unit - J518-
- Assembly overview ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Entry and start authorisation; Overview of fitting locations - entry and start authorisation system
- Clip into cross member

**4 - Nut**

- 1x on each side
- Renew after removing
- 20 Nm

**Caution**

**Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.**

**Contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection.**

**5 - Bolt**

- Driver side only
- 20 Nm

**Caution**

**Risk of malfunctions if earth connection is not OK.**

**Thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coating and corrosion; bolted connection provides earth connection.**

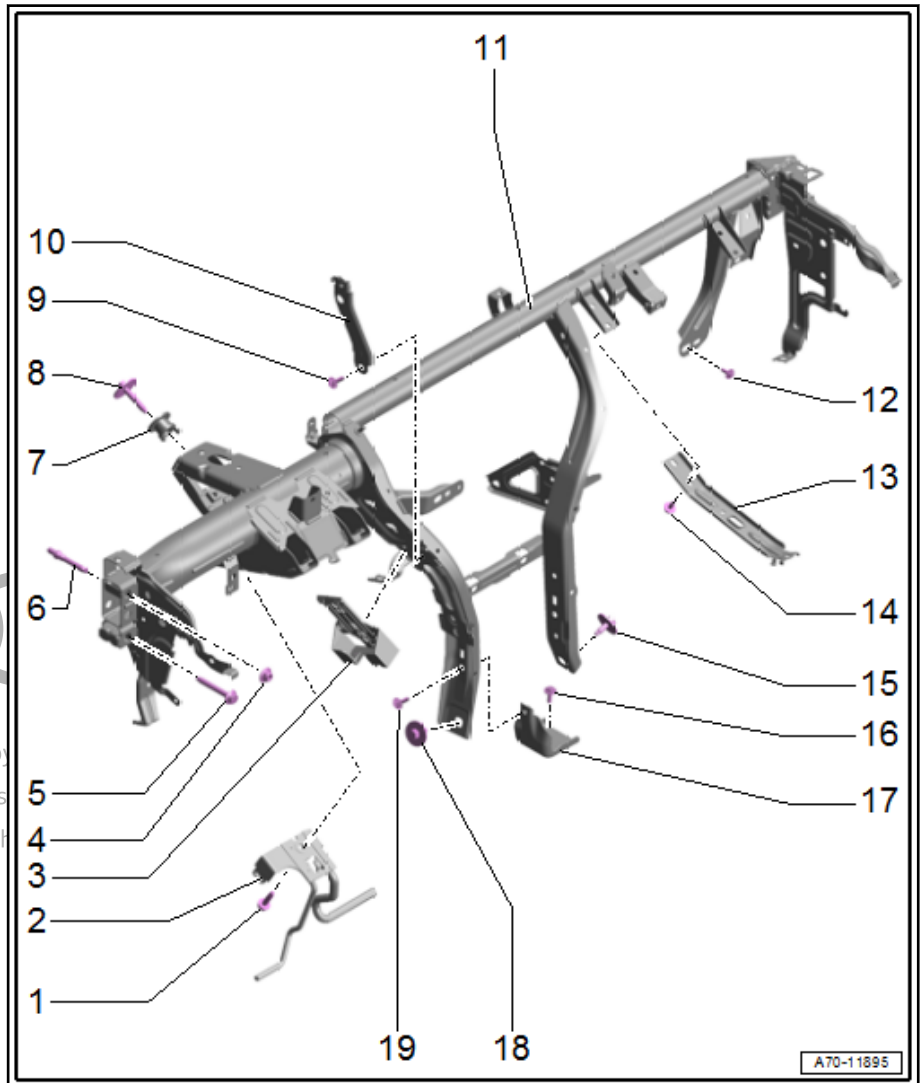
**6 - Threaded pin**

- 1x on each side
- 20 Nm

**7 - Compensation element**

- Clip into cross member
- Check freedom of movement of adjuster nut of compensation element.
- Completely screw down adjuster nut, but do not tighten

**8 - Bolt**



- 20 Nm

#### 9 - Bolt

- 3 Nm

#### 10 - Support

- For dash panel
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### 11 - Cross member

- For dash panel
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 228](#)

#### 12 - Bolt

- For air conditioning unit
- 3x
- 4 Nm

#### 13 - Support

- For dash panel
- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 220](#)

#### 14 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 20 \(page 207\)](#)

#### 15 - Bolt

- 20 Nm

#### 16 - Bolt

- 2x
- 9 Nm

#### 17 - Mounting bracket

- TT Roadster only
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### 18 - Bolt

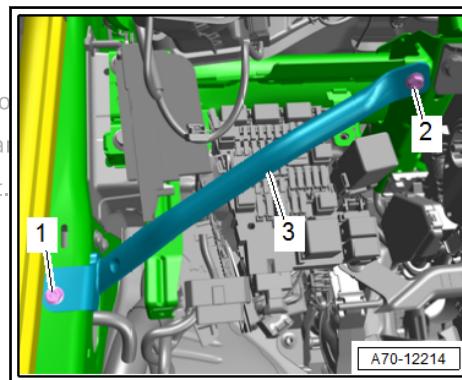
- 20 Nm

#### 19 - Bolt

- 9 Nm

#### Tightening torque - support bar for A-pillar/cross member, TT Roadster

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



- 1 - Bolt, 9 Nm



- 2 - Bolt, 9 Nm
- 3 - Support bar

## 3.2 Removing and installing crash bar

⇒ [a3.2.1 nd installing crash bar", page 227](#)

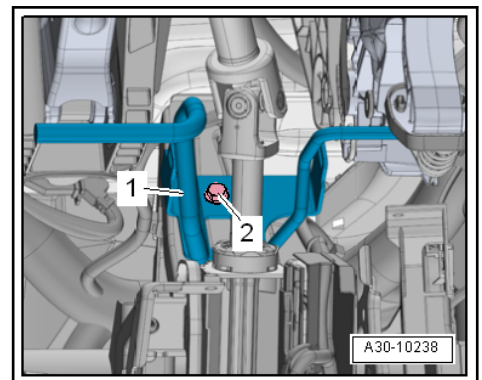
⇒ [a3.2.2 nd installing support bar - TT Roadster", page 228](#)

### 3.2.1 Removing and installing crash bar

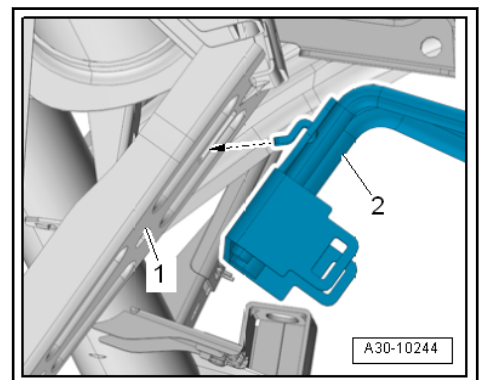
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Removing

- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- NAR vehicles: Remove knee airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 151](#) .
- Remove footwell vent (driver side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air duct system; Assembly overview routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment.
- Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column.
- Remove data bus diagnostic interface -J533- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Control units; Removing and installing data bus diagnostic interface -J533-.
- Unscrew bolt -2-, disengage crash bar -1- and guide it out.



#### Installing



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Engage crash bar -2- at cross member -1- -arrow- and bolt on.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1 verview - dash panel cross member", page 224](#)

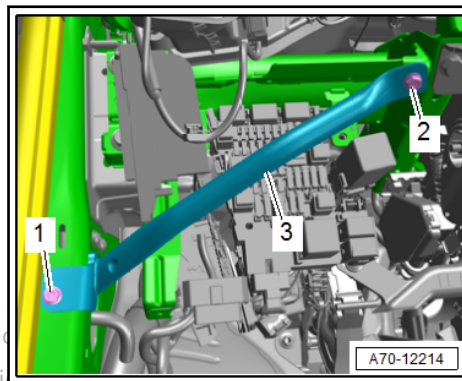
### 3.2.2 Removing and installing support bar - TT Roadster

The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying and distribution of this document is prohibited.



- Remove dash panel cover (driver side) ⇒ [page 21](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom, driver side) ⇒ [page 254](#) .
- Remove bolts -1, 2- and detach support bar -3-.

#### Installing

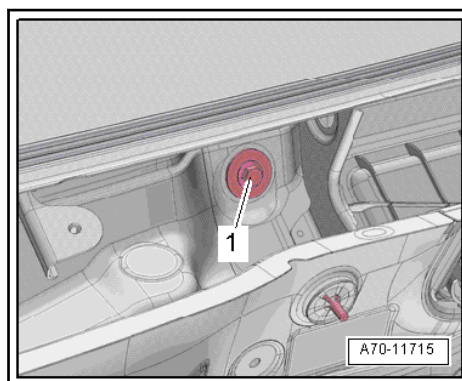
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1 verview - dash panel cross member", page 224](#)

### 3.3 Removing and installing dash panel cross member

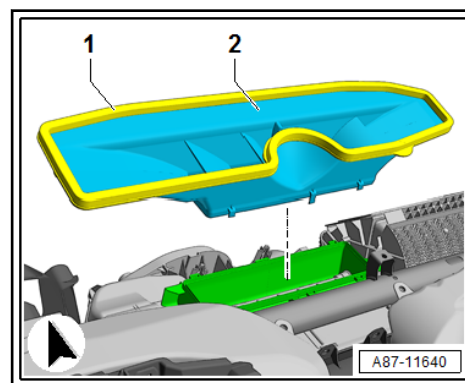
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Removing



- Remove windscreen wiper motor ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92; Windscreen wiper system; Removing and installing windscreen wiper motor -V-.
- Remove bolt -1- securing crash bar and cross member to plenum chamber partition panel.
- Remove dash panel ⇒ [page 214](#) .

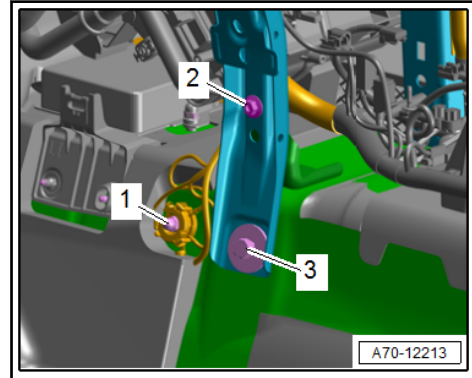
- Remove footwell vent (driver side) ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air duct system; Assembly overview - routing of air flow and air distribution in passenger compartment.
- Unbolt bracket for onboard supply control unit from dash panel cross member and move clear ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes.
- Remove fuse holders (both sides of A-pillar) from dash panel cross member ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronics boxes.
- Remove entry and start authorisation control unit -J518- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 94; Entry and start authorisation; Removing and installing entry and start authorisation control unit -J518-
- Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Overview of fitting locations - air conditioner; Overview of fitting locations - components in passenger compartment (front).
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ [page 249](#) .
- TT Roadster: Remove support bar ⇒ [page 228](#) .
- NAR vehicles: Remove knee airbag (driver side) ⇒ [page 151](#) .
- Unclip and lift off air duct -2-.



 **Note**

*Renew foam seal -1- if damaged or defective.*

- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of bolted connection, unscrew nut -1- and move earth wires clear.

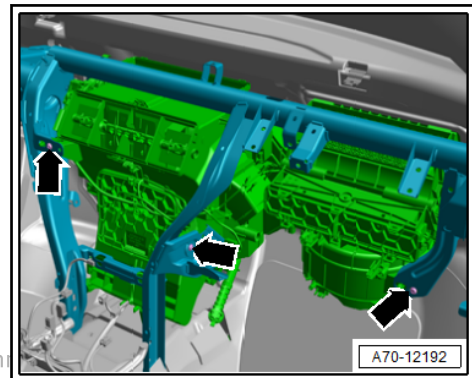


- Sever cable ties, unclip wires at dash panel cross member and move clear.

**Caution**

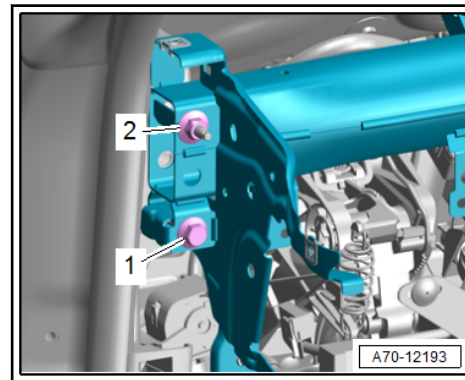
**Mark the vertical and side positions at the dash panel cross member for re-installation.**

- TT Roadster: Remove bolt -2- securing mounting bracket to dash panel cross member.
- Remove bolt -3- (left and right) for support for dash panel cross member.
- Unbolt steering column from dash panel cross member and set it down on floor of vehicle ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing steering column.
- Remove crash bar ⇒ [page 227](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- for air conditioning unit.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolt -1- for dash panel cross member.



- Remove nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).
- Unclip and disengage wires at dash panel cross member and move them clear.

 **Note**

*A second mechanic is required to detach dash panel cross member.*

- Carefully swivel top of dash panel cross member to rear and take it out of vehicle interior.

**Installing**

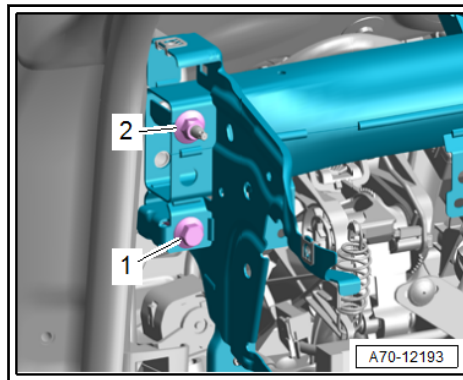
- Carefully insert dash panel cross member in body.
- Align dash panel cross member with A-pillar in accordance with marks for cross member (made during removal).
- Tighten nuts and bolts for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

Perform remaining installation steps in reverse order of removal; observe the following:

- Install steering column ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Assembly overview - steering column.

**Checking installation position of dash panel cross member**

- Insert dash panel to check if it fits correctly.
- Bolt dash panel (left and right) to dash panel cross member.
- Close doors.
- Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
- Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.
- If setting is incorrect, note down the lateral and/or vertical deviation.
- Unscrew bolts on dash panel cross member.
- Adjust dash panel cross member in accordance with notes on deviations.
- Tighten bolt -1- and nut -2- for dash panel cross member at A-pillar (driver and passenger side).

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1 verview - dash panel cross member](#), [page 224](#)**

## 4 Passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [o4.1 f fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels", page 233](#)

⇒ [o4.2 verview - sill panel moulding", page 235](#)

⇒ [o4.3 verview - A-pillar trim", page 236](#)

⇒ [o4.4 verview - C-pillar trim", page 237](#)

⇒ [o4.5 verview - windscreen frame trim", page 238](#)

⇒ [o4.6 verview - side trim", page 239](#)

⇒ [o4.7 verview - back panel trim", page 240](#)

⇒ [o4.8 verview - foot rest and floor covering", page 242](#)

⇒ [o4.9 verview - rear shelf", page 244](#)

⇒ [o4.10 verview - rollover bar trim", page 245](#)

⇒ [o4.11 verview - convertible roof compartment trim", page 246](#)

⇒ [a4.12 nd installing sill panel moulding", page 247](#)

⇒ [a4.13 nd installing A-pillar trim", page 249](#)

⇒ [a4.14 nd installing windscreen frame trim", page 255](#)

⇒ [a4.15 nd installing C-pillar trim", page 257](#)

⇒ [a4.16 nd installing side trim", page 258](#)

⇒ [a4.17 nd installing back panel trim", page 260](#)

⇒ [a4.18 nd installing foot rest", page 265](#)

⇒ [a4.19 nd installing floor covering", page 267](#)

⇒ [a4.20 nd installing rear shelf", page 269](#)

⇒ [a4.21 nd installing rollover bar trim", page 270](#)

⇒ [a4.22 nd installing convertible roof compartment trim", page 271](#)

### 4.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels

⇒ [o4.1.1 f fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, TT Coupé", page 233](#)

⇒ [o4.1.2 f fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, TT Roadster", page 234](#)

#### 4.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, TT Coupé

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.





**1 - Side trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 239](#)

**2 - C-pillar trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 237](#)

**3 - Sill panel moulding**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 235](#)

**4 - A-pillar trim (bottom)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 236](#)

**5 - Gap cover for A-pillar**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.13 nd installing A-pillar trim](#), [page 249](#)

**6 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 236](#)

**7 - Foot rest**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)

**8 - Steering column cover**

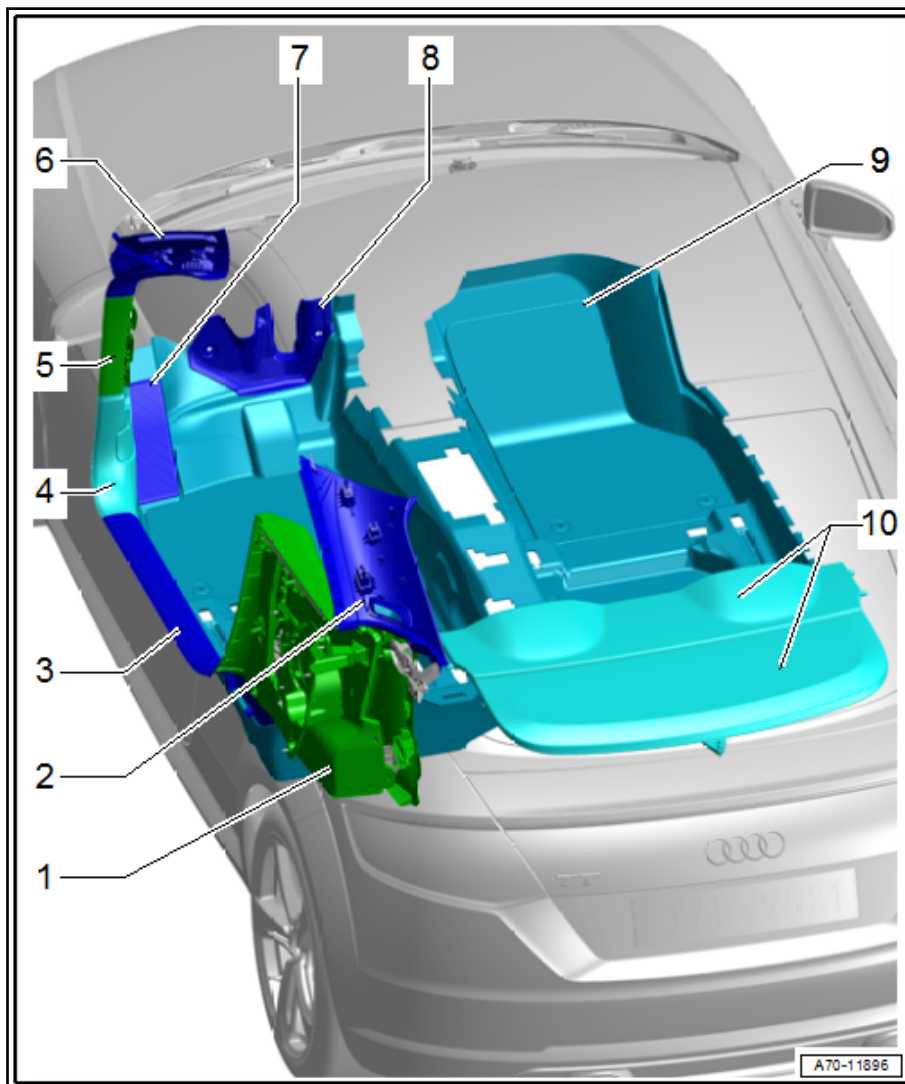
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)

**9 - Floor covering**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 242](#)

**10 - Rear shelf**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 244](#)



### 4.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - passenger compartment trim panels, TT Roadster

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Convertible roof compartment trim (front)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 246](#)

**2 - Back panel trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 240](#)

**3 - Sill panel moulding**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 235](#)

**4 - Rollover bar trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 245](#)

**5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 236](#)

**6 - Gap cover for A-pillar**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.13.2 nd installing A-pillar trim \(top\) - TT Roadster](#), [page 252](#)

**7 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 236](#)

**8 - Foot rest**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)

**9 - Steering column cover**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#) by copyright

**10 - Windscreen frame trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 238](#)

**11 - Floor covering**

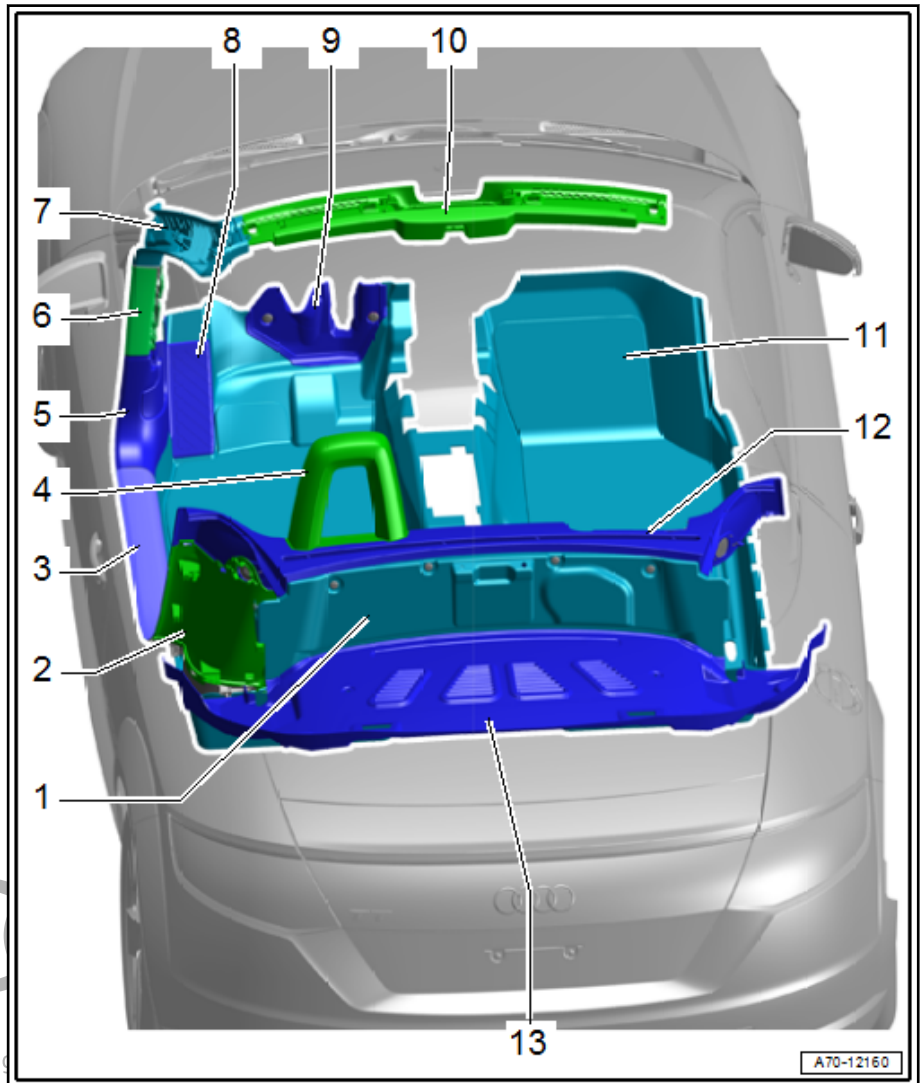
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 242](#)

**12 - Back panel cover**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 240](#)

**13 - Convertible roof compartment trim (bottom)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 246](#)



**4.2 Assembly overview - sill panel moulding**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Clip**

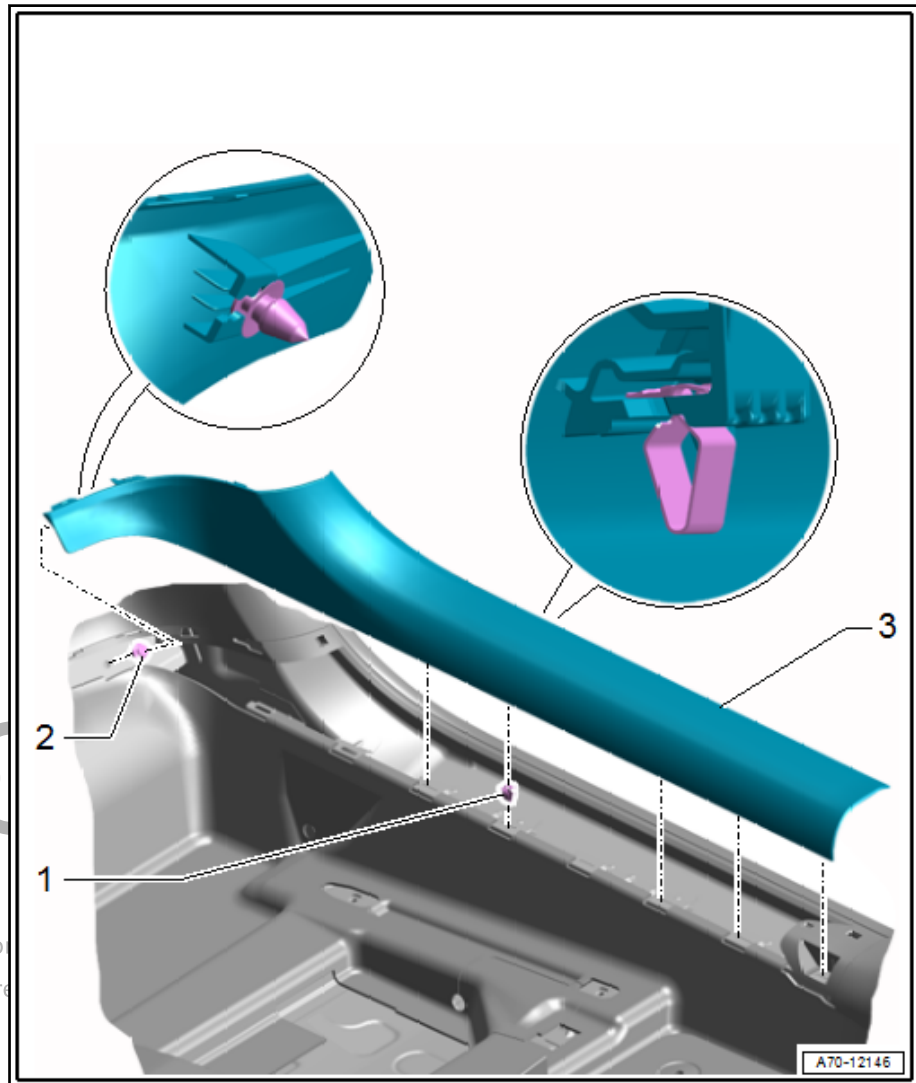
- 5x
- Insert in sill panel moulding
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in sill panel moulding for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**2 - Clip**

- Insert in sill panel moulding
- Renew clip if damaged or deformed

**3 - Sill panel moulding**

- Removing and installing => [page 247](#)
- Engage sill panel moulding in side trim
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of door seal



Protected by copyright.  
permitted unless author  
with respect to the corre

### 4.3 Assembly overview - A-pillar trim

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

**Note**

The illustration shows the A-pillar trim for the TT Coupé as an example.

**1 - A-pillar trim (bottom)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 254](#)
- Insert in floor covering at front
- Fold over lip of door seal

**2 - Handle for operating lever**

- For bonnet lock
- Driver side only
- Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet lock

**3 - Clip**

- Insert in gap cover
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

**4 - Gap cover for A-pillar**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.13 and installing A-pillar trim", page 249](#)
- Clip into A-pillar trim (top) and into A-pillar trim (bottom)
- Fold over lip of door seal

**5 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- Different versions; for correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 249](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of door seal/window frame seal

**6 - Clip**

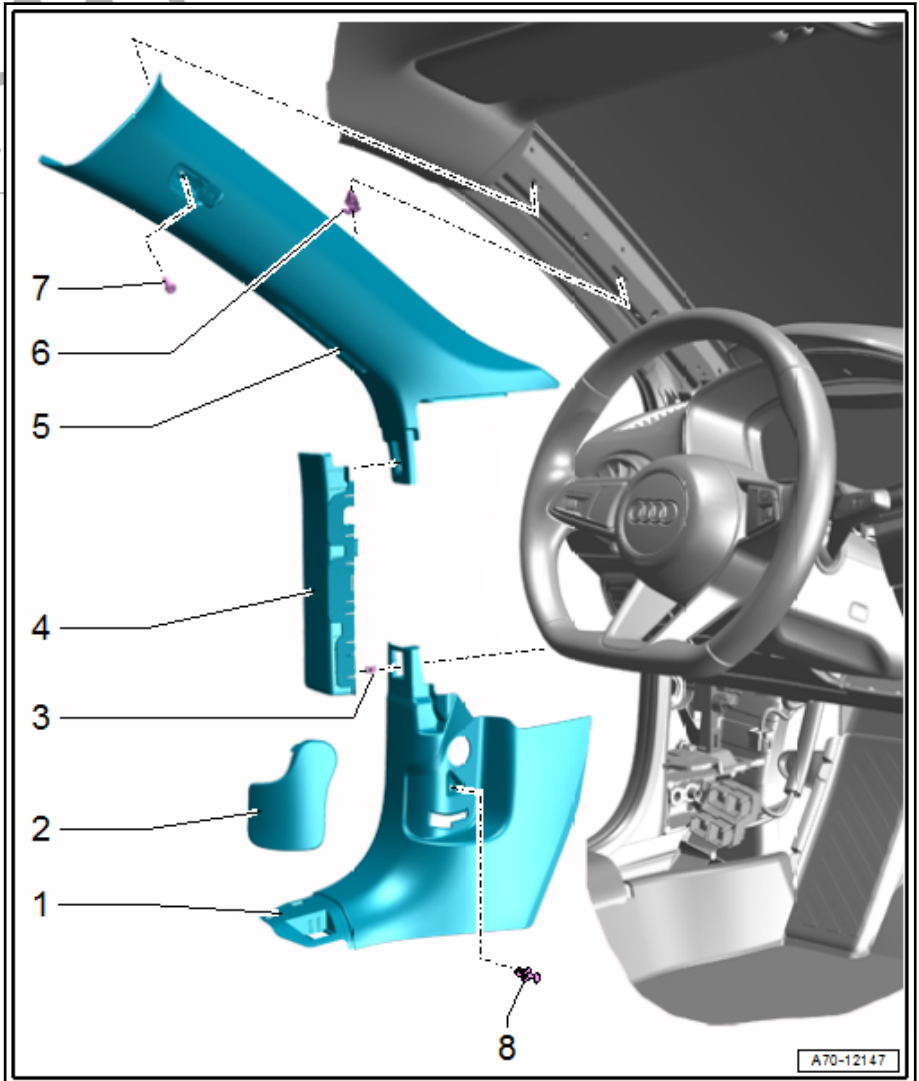
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280-

**7 - Bolt**

- 8 Nm
- TT Coupé only

**8 - Fastener**

- Driver side only



**4.4 Assembly overview - C-pillar trim**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



### 1 - Rear belt guide

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 98](#)

### 2 - C-pillar trim

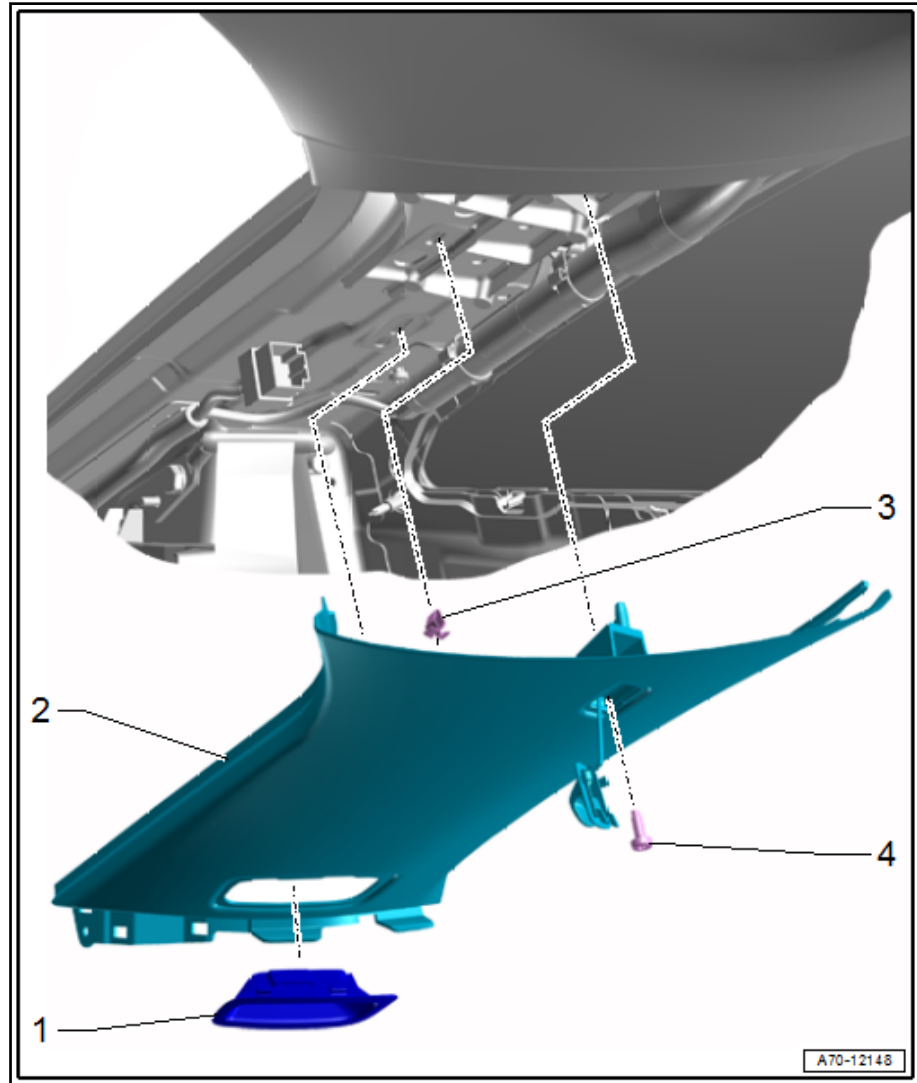
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 257](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal

### 3 - Clip

- 2x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

### 4 - Bolt

- 8 Nm



## 4.5 Assembly overview - windscreen frame trim



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - A-pillar trim (top)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 252](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of window frame seal

**2 - Clip**

- 2x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

**3 - Clip**

- 4x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-

**4 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 0.9 Nm

**5 - Windscreen frame trim**

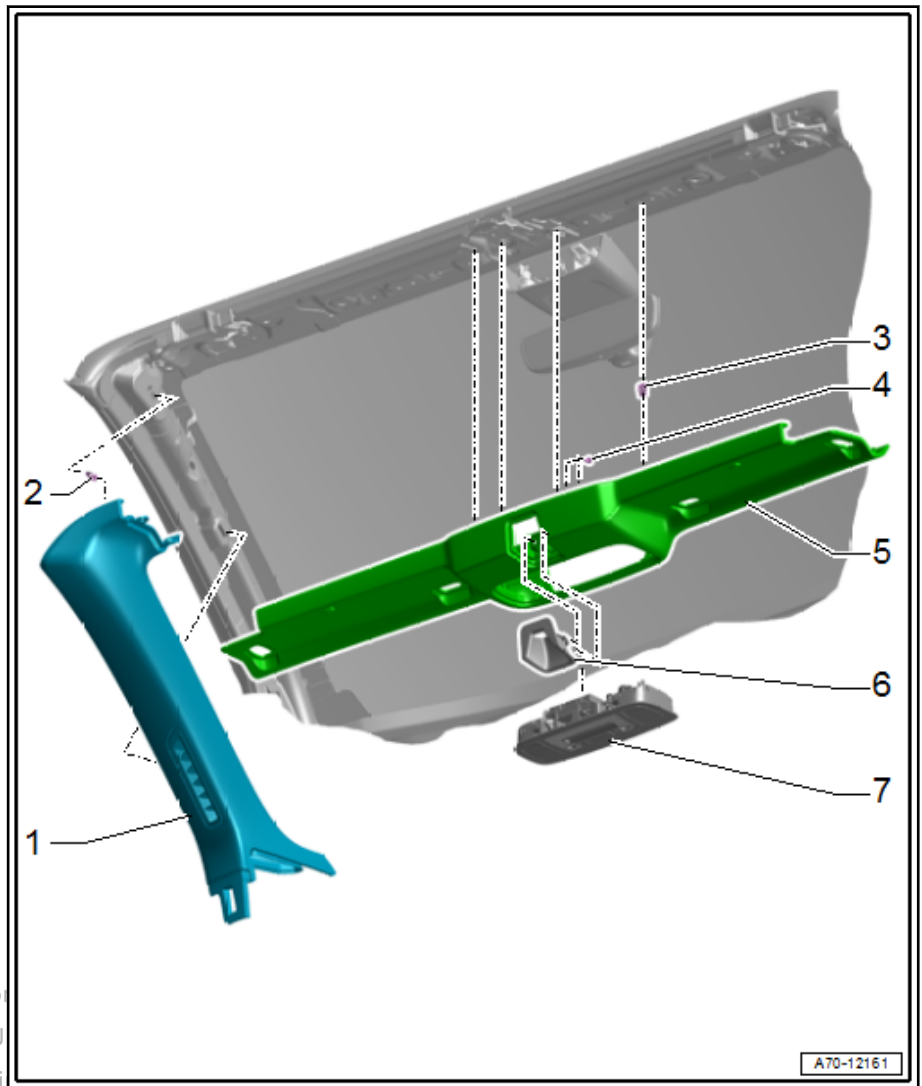
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 255](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of window frame seal

**6 - Insert**

- For convertible roof locking mechanism
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.14 nd installing windscreen frame trim", page 255](#)

**7 - Roof module**

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front)



Protected by copyright. Copying for permitted use is authorised by Audi AG. We accept no responsibility for the correctness of the information.

**4.6 Assembly overview - side trim**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



**1 - Side trim**

- Removing and installing => [page 258](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of door seal

**2 - Insulating mat**

**3 - Bolt**

- 5x
- 1.5 Nm

**4 - Mounting**

- For loudspeaker/side trim

**5 - Front belt guide**

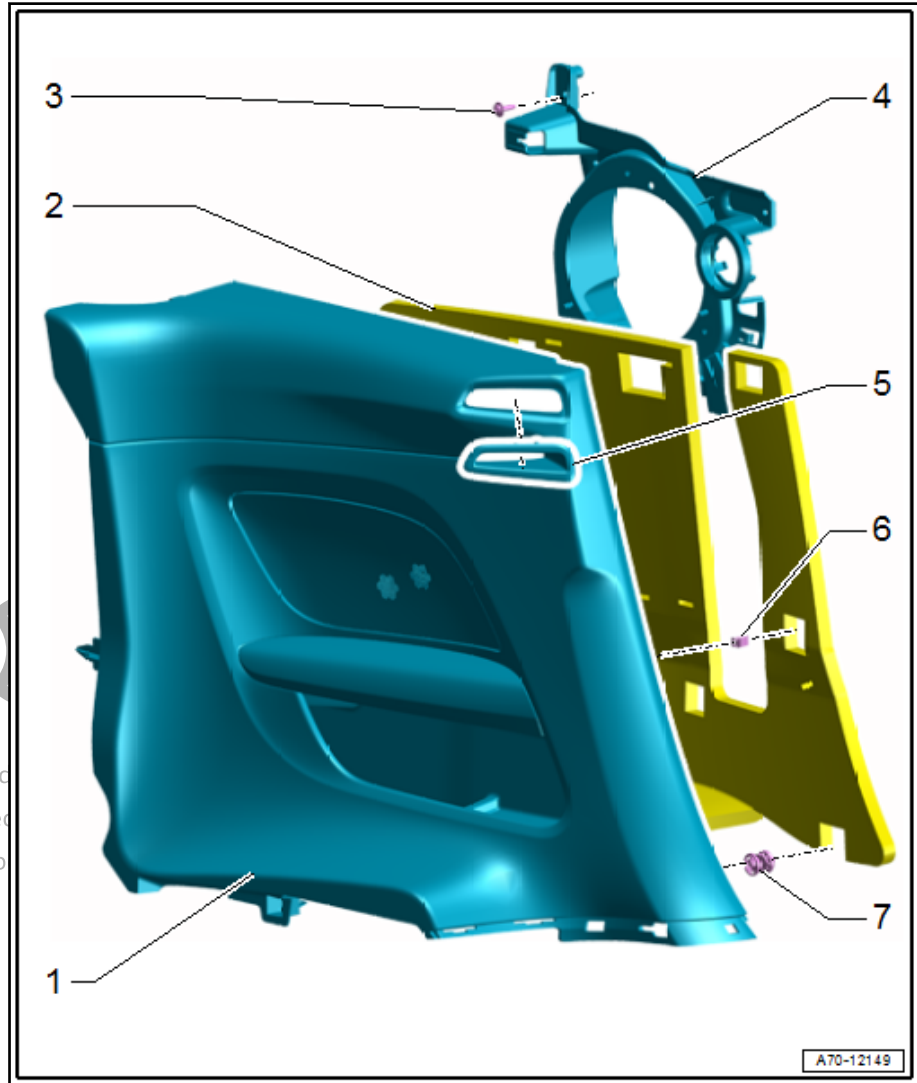
- Removing and installing => [page 99](#)

**6 - Clip**

- 5x
- Insert into side trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**7 - Clip**

- For side trim
- Insert in trim
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed



**4.7 Assembly overview - back panel trim**



**1 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 2 Nm

**2 - Storage compartment**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 264](#)

**3 - Clip**

- 2x
- Press into recess in storage compartment
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**4 - Clip**

- 6x
- Insert in back panel cover
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280-
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**5 - Clip**

- 3x on each side
- Press into recess on rollover bar trim and body
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**6 - Clip**

- 6x
- Insert in back panel cover
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**7 - Back panel cover**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 260](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**8 - Front belt guide**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 99](#)

**9 - Loudspeaker trim**

- Press into back panel cover until it engages audibly

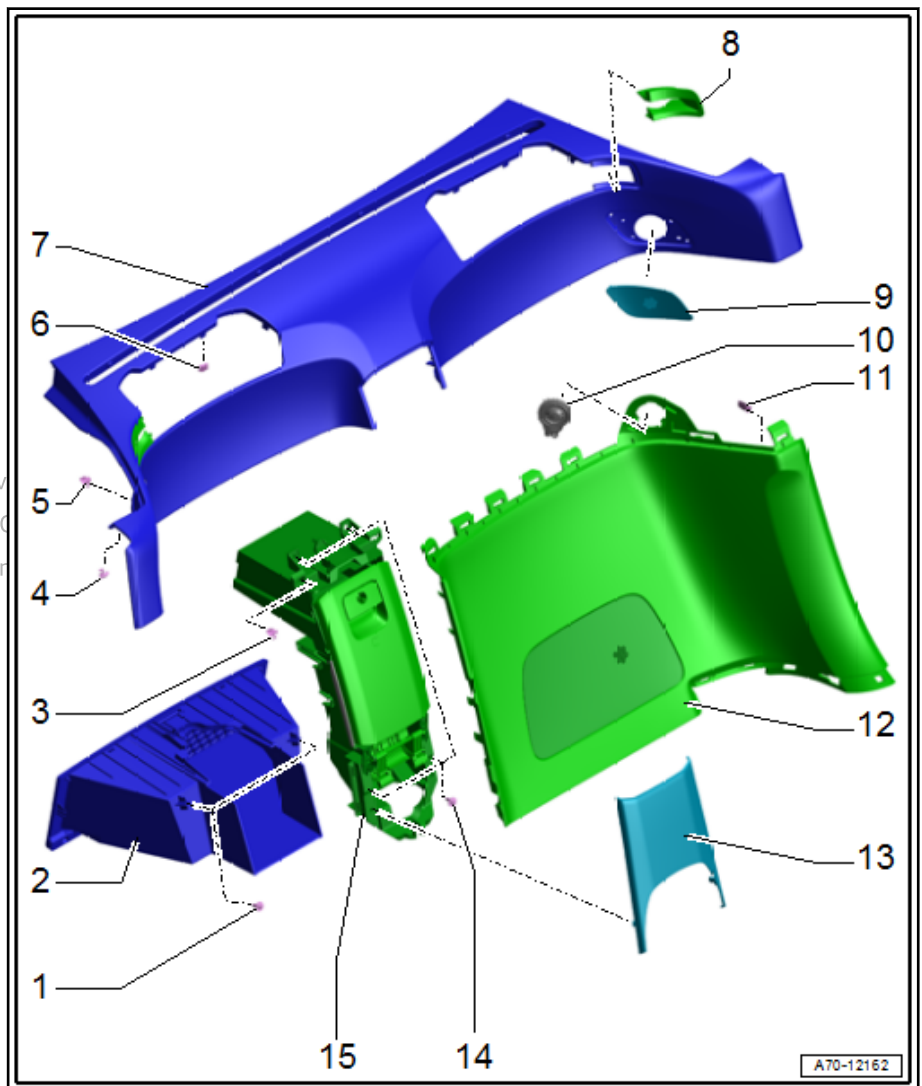
**10 - Treble loudspeaker**

- Removing and installing ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system

**11 - Clip**

- 10x
- Insert in back panel cover
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280-
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**12 - Back panel trim**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private use is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG with respect to the correctness of information.



- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 262](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of door seal

### 13 - Back panel trim (centre)

- Removing and installing ⇒ ["3.2 nd installing rear centre console trim", page 50](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

### 14 - Bolt

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 5x
- 2 Nm

### 15 - Storage compartment cover

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 264](#)

## 4.8 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering

⇒ ["4.8.1 verview - foot rest and floor covering, left-hand drive vehicles", page 242](#)

⇒ ["4.8.2 verview - foot rest, right-hand drive vehicles", page 243](#)

### 4.8.1 Assembly overview - foot rest and floor covering, left-hand drive vehicles



#### Note

*The illustration shows the foot rest and floor covering for the TT Coupé as an example.*



**1 - Floor covering**

- One-piece
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 268](#)

**2 - Foot rest**

- Must engage completely in bracket
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 265](#)

**3 - Bracket**

- For foot rest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.18.1 nd installing foot rest - left-hand drive vehicles", page 265](#)

**4 - Nut**

- 3x
- 2 Nm

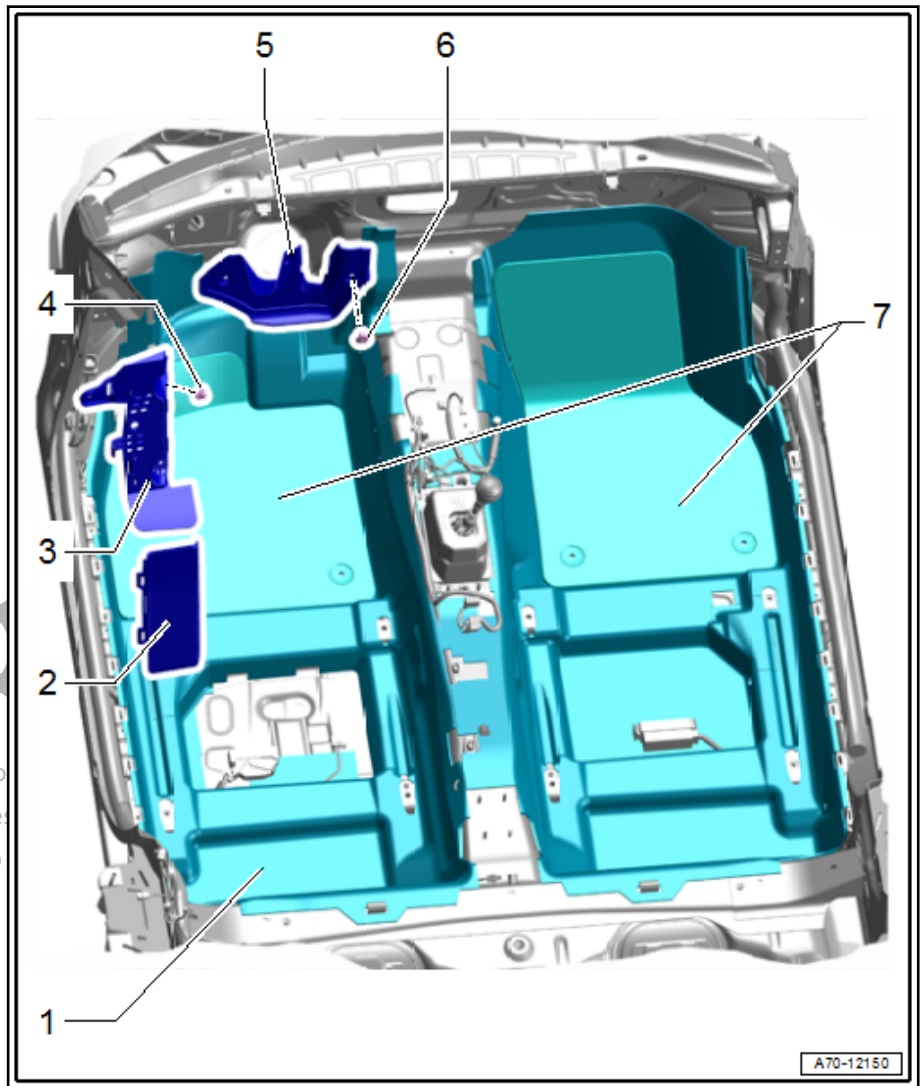
**5 - Steering column cover**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 267](#)

**6 - Nut/stud**

- 2x
- Nut: 2 Nm
- Stud: Press in as far as stop
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**7 - Floor mats**



**4.8.2 Assembly overview - foot rest, right-hand drive vehicles**



**1 - Foot rest**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 266](#)

**2 - Foot rest bracket**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a4.18.2 nd installing foot rest - right-hand drive vehicles](#), [page 266](#)

**3 - Nut**

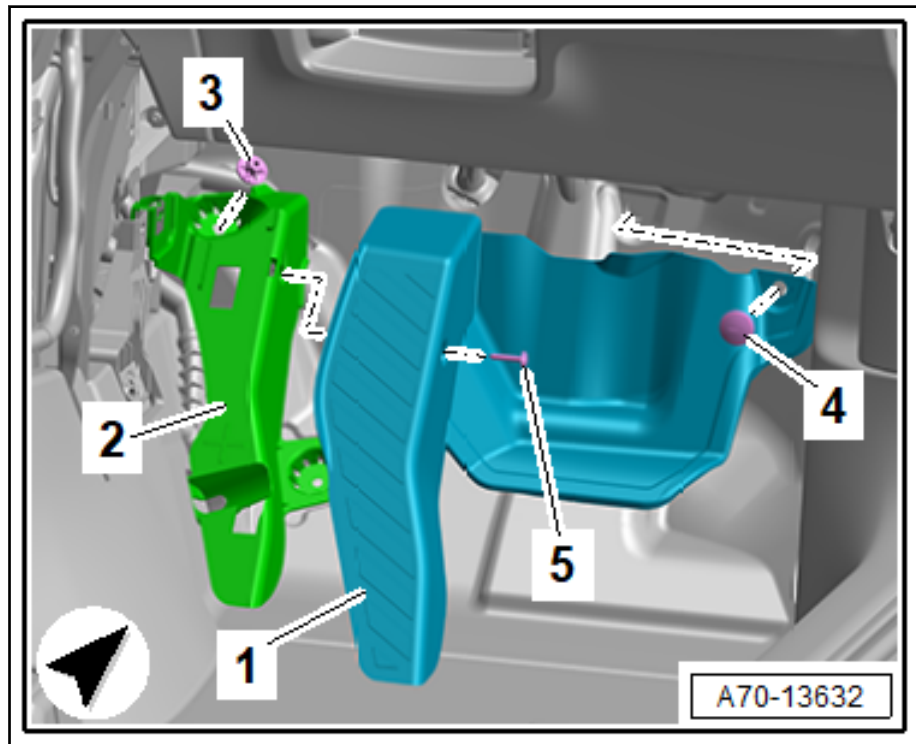
- ❑ To secure foot rest bracket to body
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2 Nm

**4 - Nut/stud**

- ❑ To secure foot rest to body
- ❑ Nut: 2 Nm

**5 - Bolt**

- ❑ To secure foot rest to foot rest bracket
- ❑ 2 Nm



## 4.9 Assembly overview - rear shelf



**Note**

A repair set is available for servicing the rear shelf ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Rear section of rear shelf**

- Engaged in mountings in rear lid trim

**2 - Mounting**

- Not available separately; repair set => Electronic parts catalogue
- Clip into rear shelf
- Repairing, renewing mounting => [page 269](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**3 - Front section of rear shelf**

- Insert in mountings in luggage compartment side trim panels

**4 - Rubber cap**

- 4x
- Insert in rear shelf

**5 - Washer**

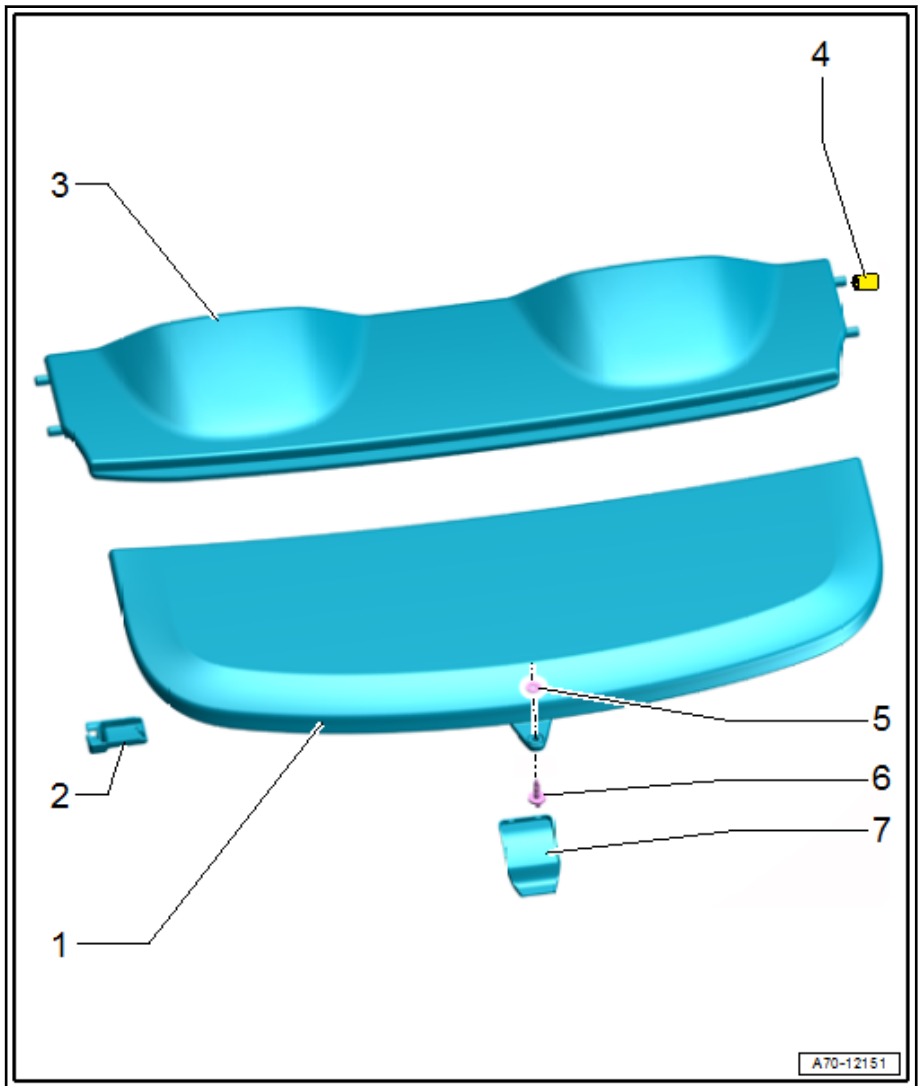
- Not available separately; repair set => Electronic parts catalogue
- Insert in striker pin

**6 - Striker pin**

- Not available separately; repair set => Electronic parts catalogue
- Insert in rear shelf

**7 - Cover**

- Not available separately; repair set => Electronic parts catalogue
- Clip into rear shelf
- Push on until it engages audibly



**4.10 Assembly overview - rollover bar trim**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Clip**

- 3x
- Press into recess on rollover bar trim and body
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**2 - Rollover bar trim (front)**

- Removing and installing => [page 270](#)
- Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- Renew after removing

**3 - Bolt**

- 1.5 Nm

**4 - Bracket for rollover bar trim**

**5 - Rollover bar**

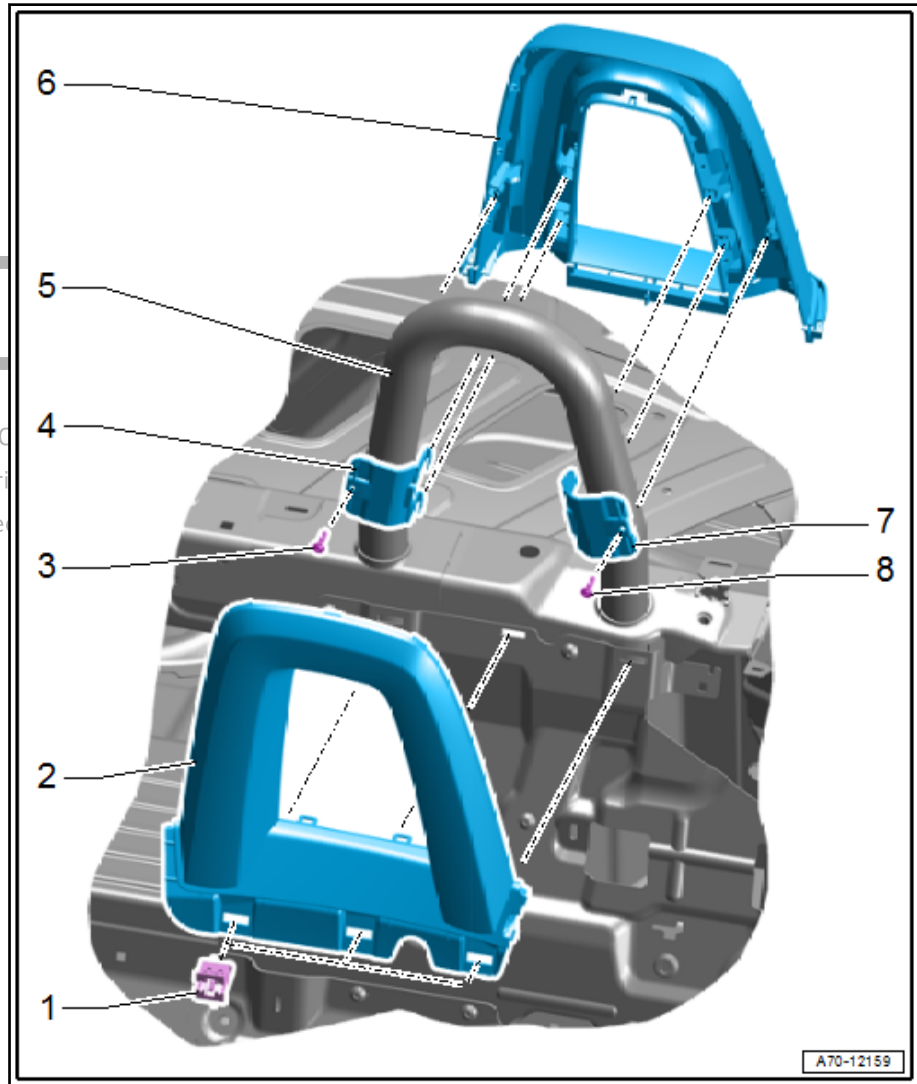
**6 - Rollover bar trim (rear)**

- Removing and installing => [page 270](#)

**7 - Bracket for rollover bar trim**

**8 - Bolt**

- 1.5 Nm



**4.11 Assembly overview - convertible roof compartment trim**

**1 - Convertible roof compartment trim (bottom)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 272](#)

**2 - Convertible roof compartment trim (front)**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 271](#)

**3 - Fastener**

- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 C-

**4 - Convertible roof compartment trim (rear)**

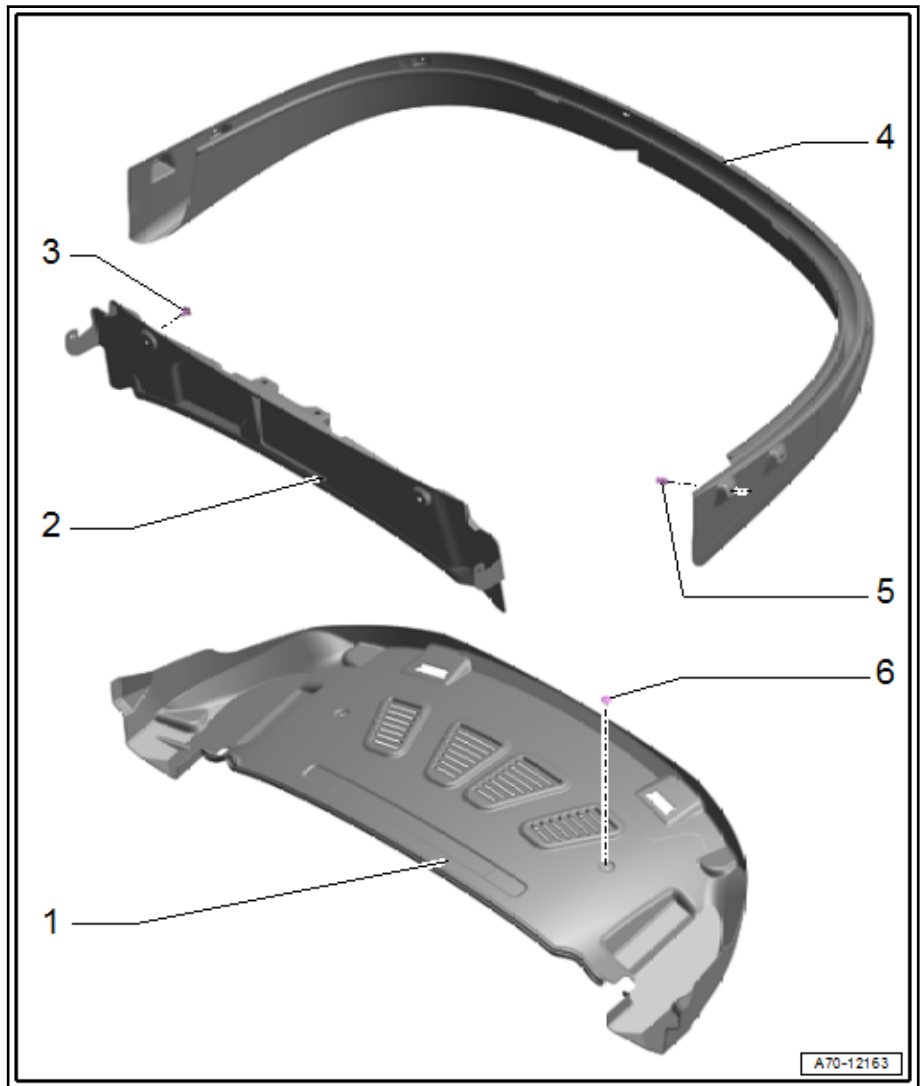
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55; Convertible roof compartment lid

**5 - Fastener**

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 C-

**6 - Fastener**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Remove with pliers - T40172 C-

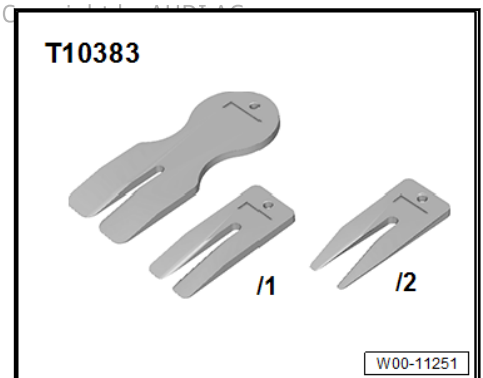


**4.12 Removing and installing sill panel moulding**

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Wedges - T10383-



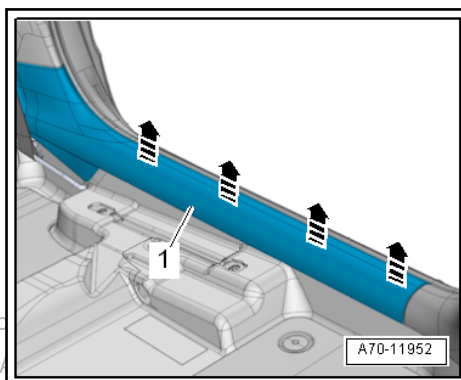
◆ Removal tool -T40280-



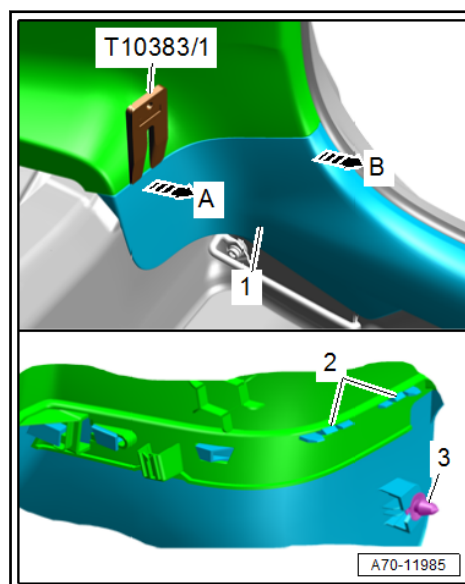
**Removing**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not responsible for the content with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Move clear sill panel moulding in vicinity of door seal.
- Starting at front, use wedge -T10383- to unclip sill panel moulding -1- from side member -arrows-.
- Release retaining tabs -2- and clip -3- on sill panel moulding using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow A-.



 **Note**

*The illustration shows the sill panel moulding for the TT Coupé as an example.*

- Pull sill panel moulding -1- off side trim towards front -arrow B-.
- Detach sill panel moulding.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.2 verview - sill panel moulding", page 235](#)

## 4.13 Removing and installing A-pillar trim

⇒ [a4.13.1 nd installing A-pillar trim \(top\) - TT Coupé", page 249](#)

⇒ [a4.13.2 nd installing A-pillar trim \(top\) - TT Roadster", page 252](#)

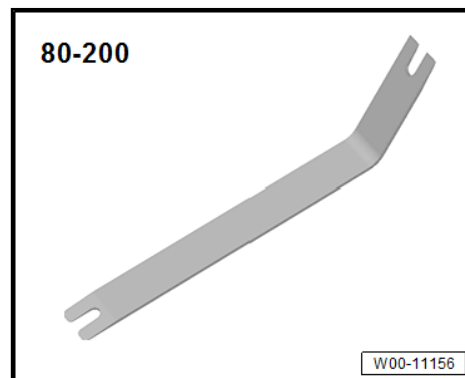
⇒ [a4.13.3 nd installing lower A-pillar trim", page 254](#)

### 4.13.1 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - TT Coupé

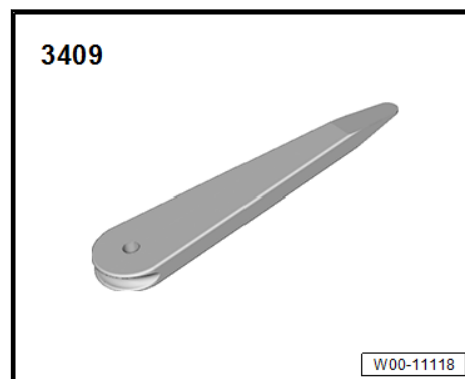
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-

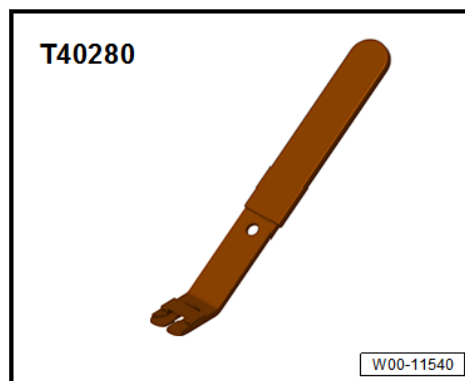


- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

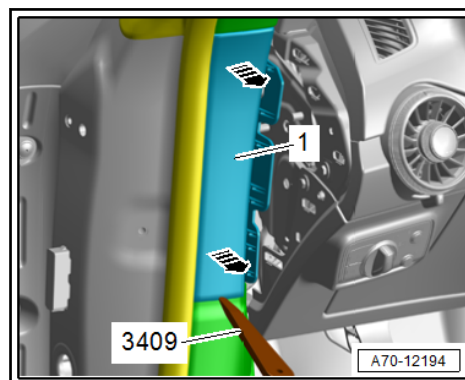


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal tool -T40280-



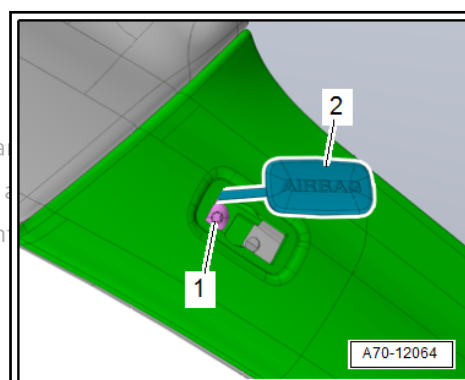
## Removing



- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 208](#) .
- Unclip gap cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge -3409- -arrows- and detach.
- Use removal wedge -3409- to prise out cap -2- with “airbag” symbol.

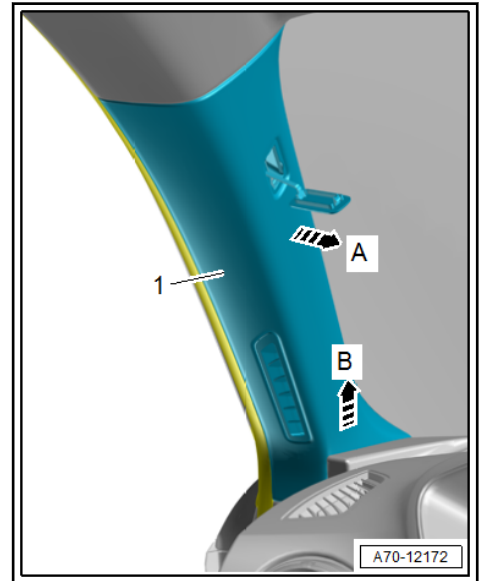


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



- Remove bolt -1-.





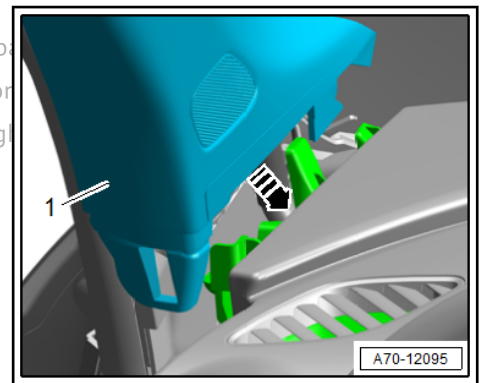
**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*

- Unclip A-pillar trim -1- from A-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrow A-.
- Pull A-pillar trim upwards out of dash panel -arrow B- and detach.

**Installing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or assume any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2015



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3 .*
- ◆ *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting A-pillar trim (top).*

- Insert A-pillar trim -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.
- The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [04.3 overview - A-pillar trim](#), page 236

### 4.13.2 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) - TT Roadster

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

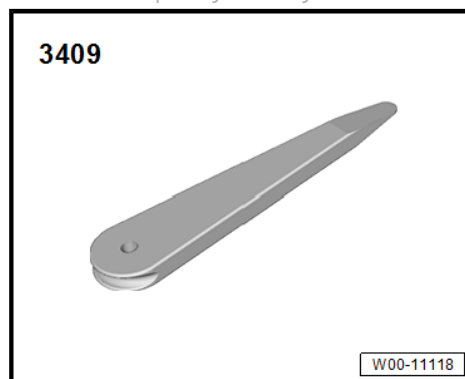
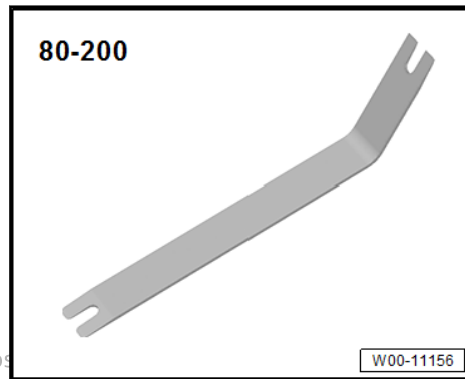
#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

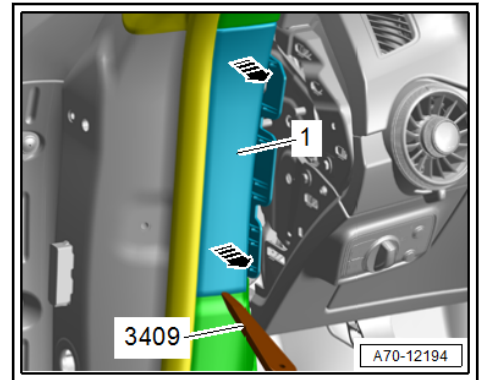
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-



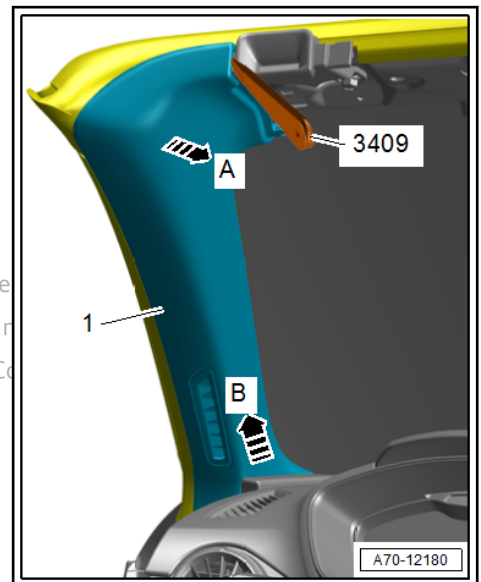
## Removing



- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 208](#) .
- Unclip gap cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge -3409- -arrows- and detach.
- Remove windscreen frame trim ⇒ [page 255](#) .

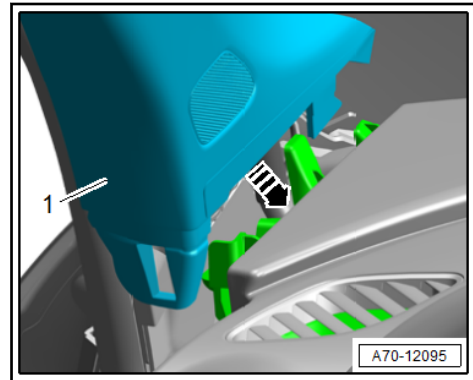


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



- Carefully unclip A-pillar trim -1- at location indicated using removal wedge -3409-.
- Starting at top, carefully unclip A-pillar trim from A-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrow A-.
- Pull A-pillar trim upwards out of dash panel -arrow B- and detach.

## Installing



- Insert A-pillar trim -1- in mounting at dash panel -arrow-.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.3 overview - A-pillar trim](#), page 236**

### 4.13.3 Removing and installing lower A-pillar trim

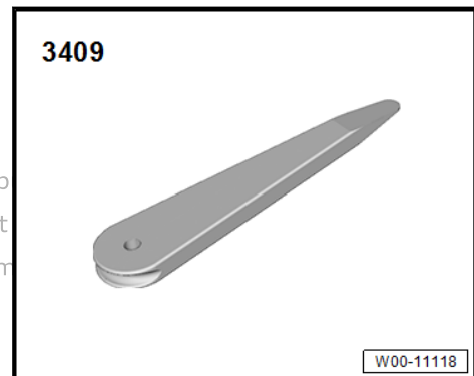
The removal and installation procedures are described for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

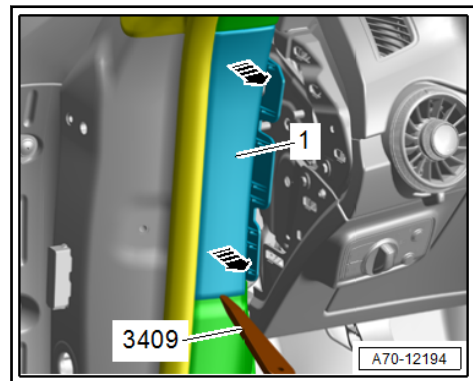
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



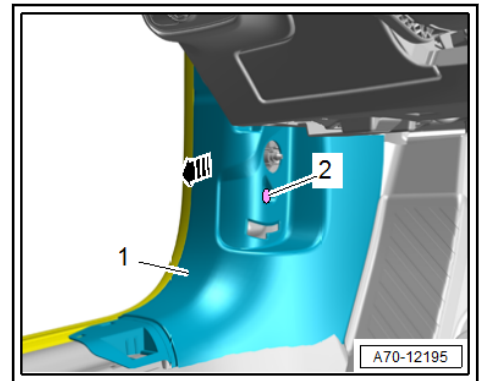
## Removing



- Remove dash panel cover (side) ⇒ [page 208](#) .
- Unclip gap cover -1- at A-pillar using removal wedge -3409- -arrows- and detach.

- Unclip sill panel moulding at front from A-pillar trim (bottom)  
 => [page 247](#).

**Driver side:**

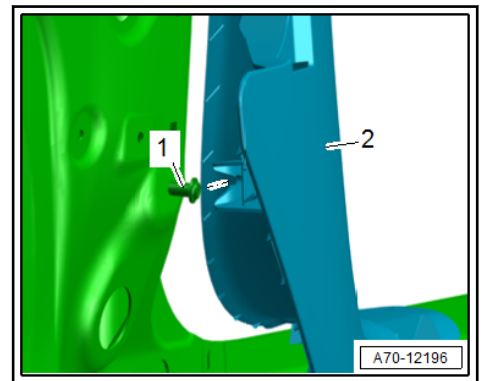


- Remove handle of operating lever for bonnet lock => General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 55; Bonnet; Removing and installing operating lever for bonnet.
- Remove fastener -2- for A-pillar trim (bottom).

**Both sides of vehicle (continued):**

- Pull A-pillar trim -1- towards rear -arrow- and detach.

**Installing**



Installation is carried out in reverse order: note the following:

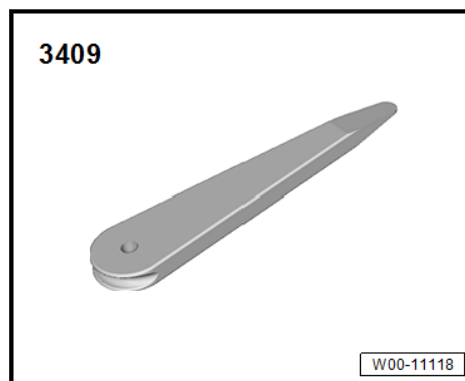
- Passenger side: A-pillar trim -2- must be engaged at pin -1- on A-pillar.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o4.3 overview - A-pillar trim](#)", [page 236](#)**

#### 4.14 Removing and installing windscreen frame trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-



◆ Removal tool -T40280-

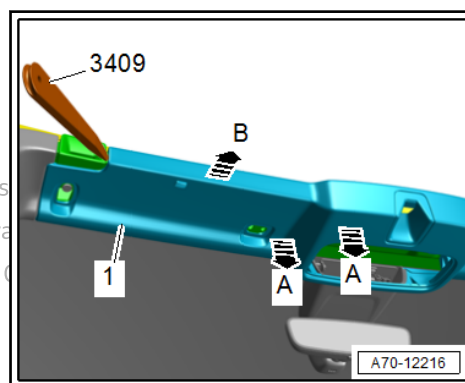


### Removing

- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 36](#) .
- Remove sun visor centre mount ⇒ [page 37](#) .
- Remove roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Overview of fitting locations - controls in roof trim.
- Unclip windscreen frame trim -1- at location indicated using removal wedge -3409-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Unclip windscreen frame trim from windscreen frame in vicinity of roof module -arrows A-.
- Detach windscreen frame trim towards rear from windscreen frame -arrow B- and remove.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

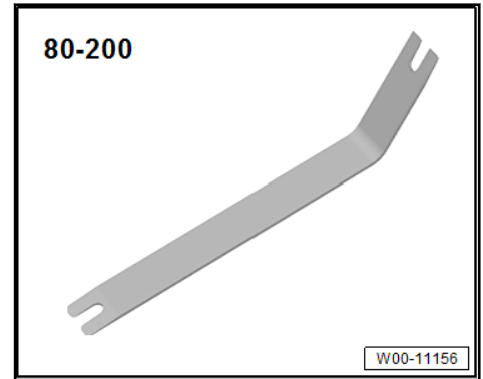
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [04.5 overview - windscreen frame trim](#), [page 238](#)

## 4.15 Removing and installing C-pillar trim

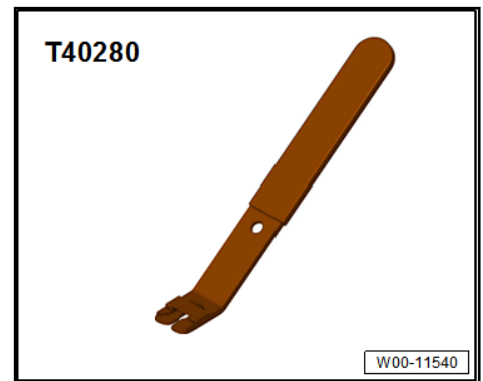
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required


- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-



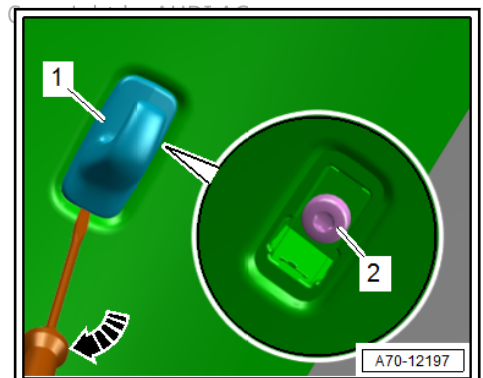
### Removing

 **WARNING**

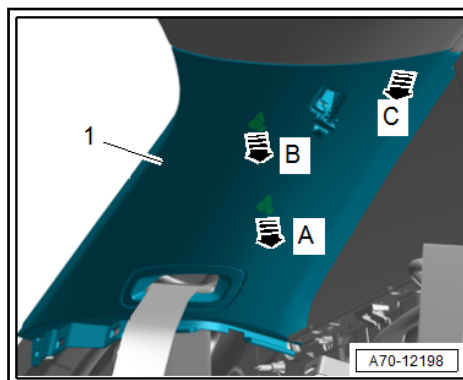
*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 291](#) .
- Remove side trim ⇒ [page 258](#)
- Unclip coat hook 1 with a screwdriver -arrow-

with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Unscrew bolt -2- underneath cap.
- Unclip C-pillar trim -1- from C-pillar using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A, B-



- Pull C-pillar trim downwards -arrow C- out of moulded headliner and detach.



**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent or acceptance of Audi AG. When renewing C-pillar trim, remove rear belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#). with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Installing**



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Take care not to trap curtain airbag when fitting C-pillar trim.*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

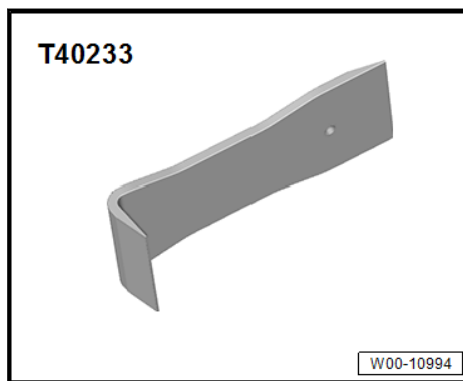
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.4 overview - C-pillar trim](#), [page 237](#)

**4.16 Removing and installing side trim**

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

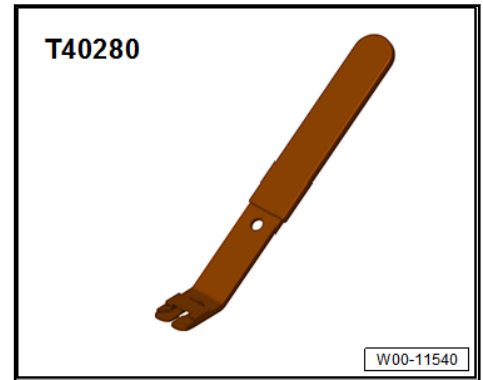
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Removal wedge -T40233-



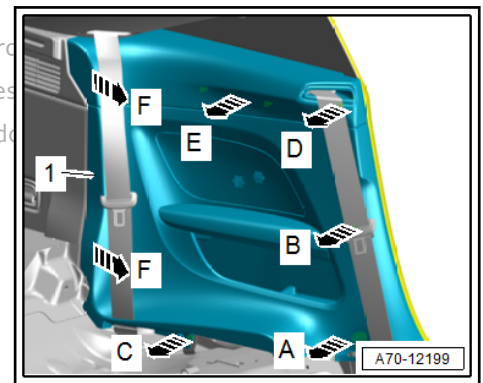


◆ Removal tool -T40280-



## Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove sill panel moulding ⇒ [page 247](#) .
- Remove bench seat/individual seats ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Starting at bottom, unclip side trim -1- from body -arrows A ... E-.
- Pull side trim forwards out of mountings and off luggage compartment side trim -arrows F- and remove.

### Note

When renewing side trim, remove front belt end fitting ⇒ [page 101](#) .

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Fold lip of door seal over side trim.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [04.6 overview - side trim](#), page 239

## 4.17 Removing and installing back panel trim

⇒ [4.17.1 nd installing back panel cover](#), page 260

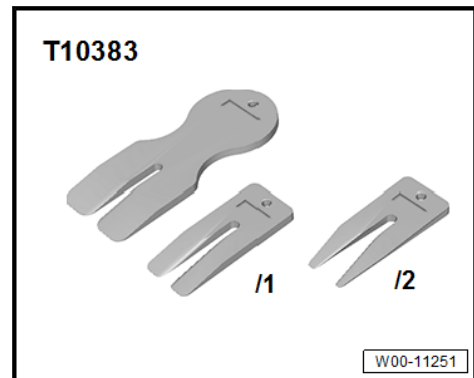
⇒ [4.17.2 nd installing back panel trim](#), page 262

⇒ [4.17.3 nd installing centre storage compartment](#), page 264

### 4.17.1 Removing and installing back panel cover

Special tools and workshop equipment required

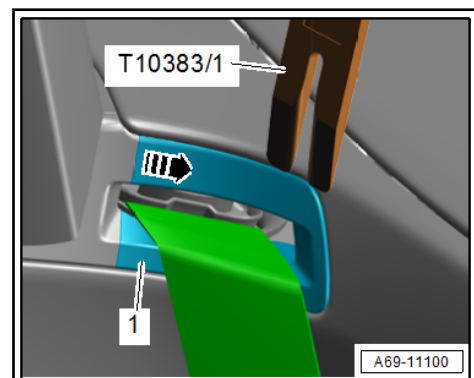
◆ Wedges -T10383-



◆ Removal tool -T40280-



### Removing

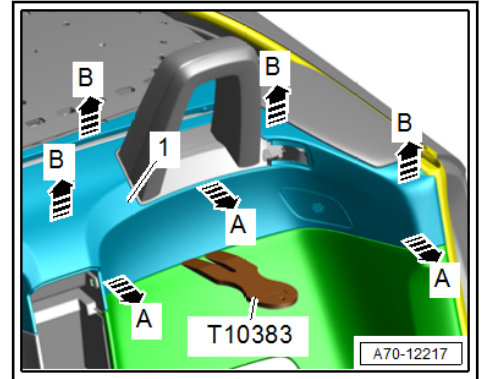


– Open convertible roof.

– Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.

Permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Unclip front belt guide -1- from back panel cover using wedge -T10383/1-.
- Pull belt guide outwards out of rollover bar trim in direction of -arrow- and detach.
- Open storage compartment cover.



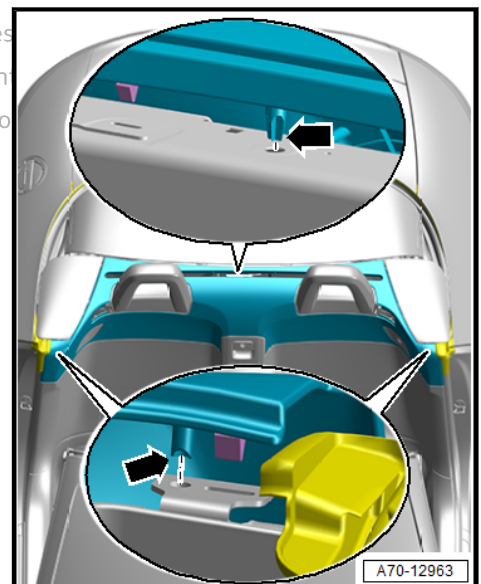
- Working along gap at front, carefully unclip back panel cover -1- -arrows A- using wedge -T10383-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Then unclip back panel cover upwards from body and from windbreak mount -arrows B-.
- Detach back panel cover upwards over both rollover bars and remove.

 **Note**

*When renewing back panel cover, remove front belt end fittings  
 => [page 101](#).*

**Installing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



**Note**

*When installing the back panel trim, make sure the drifts on the back panel trim are positioned correctly. The drifts must be positioned first; only then can the clips be pressed in. If the drifts are not positioned correctly during installation, they will break off.*

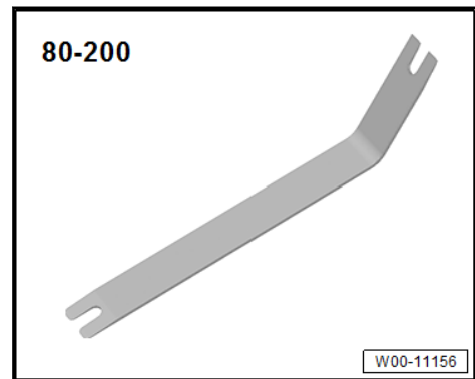
- Align back panel cover centrally, insert drifts -arrows- in holes and press back panel cover into body mounting point so that it engages audibly.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [04.7 overview - back panel trim](#), page 240**

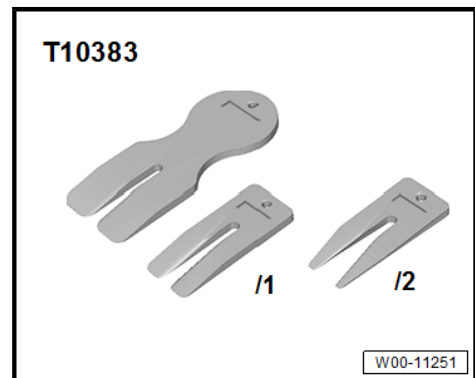
### 4.17.2 Removing and installing back panel trim

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

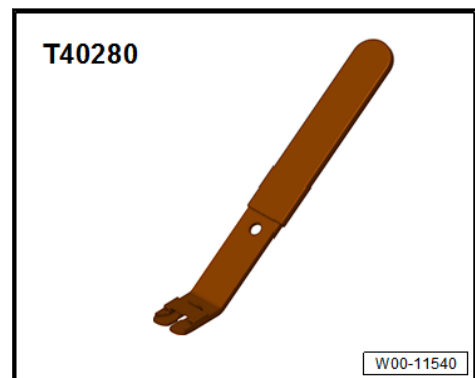
- ◆ Removal lever -80 - 200-



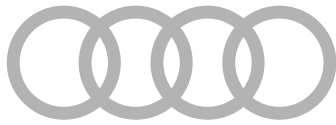
- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-

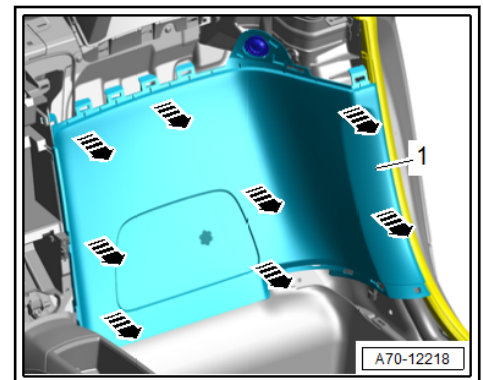
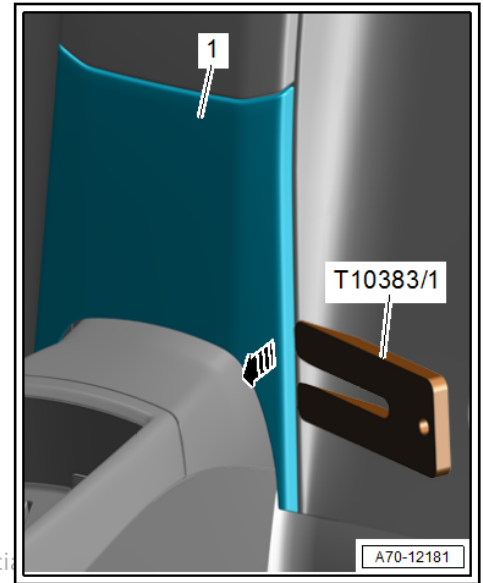


## Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Open convertible roof.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove back panel cover with belts inserted and place to one side ⇒ [page 260](#) .
- Remove sill panel moulding ⇒ [page 247](#) .
- Unclip back panel trim (centre) -1- with wedge -T10383/1- -arrow- and detach.
- Open storage compartment cover.



- Starting from outer edge at bottom, unclip back panel trim -1- from back panel -arrows- using removal lever -80 - 200-.
- Pull back panel trim slightly towards inside and unplug electrical connector for loudspeaker.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

 **Note**

*When installing the back panel trim, make sure the drifts on the back panel trim are positioned correctly. The drifts must be positioned first; only then can the clips be pressed in. If the drifts are not positioned correctly during installation, they will break off.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.7 verview - back panel trim", page 240](#)

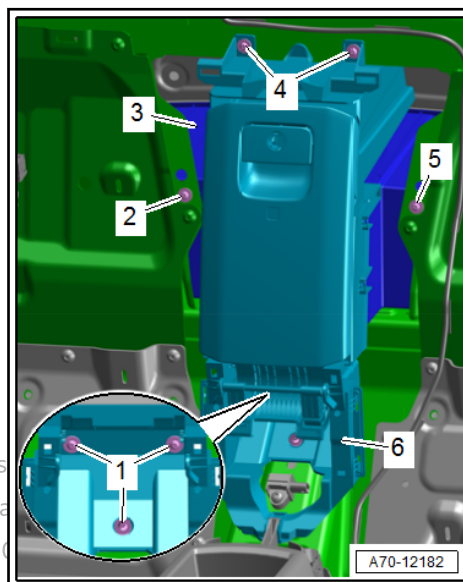
### 4.17.3 Removing and installing centre storage compartment

#### Removing

- Open convertible roof.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove back panel trim ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Open storage compartment cover and remove bolts -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove bolts -4-.
- Disengage lower part of storage compartment cover -6- from bracket for centre console, release storage compartment cover from storage compartment and detach.
- Disengage handle with cable for manual release of rear lid.
- Remove bolts -2, 5-.
- Remove storage compartment -3- through luggage compartment towards rear.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.7 overview - back panel trim](#), page 240

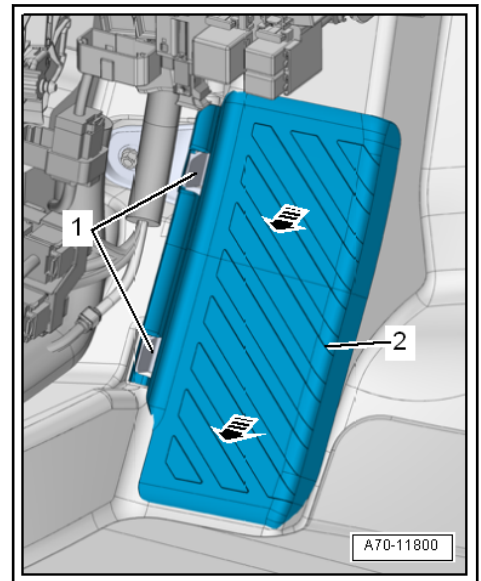
## 4.18 Removing and installing foot rest

⇒ [a4.18.1 nd installing foot rest - left-hand drive vehicles](#), page 265

⇒ [a4.18.2 nd installing foot rest - right-hand drive vehicles](#), page 266

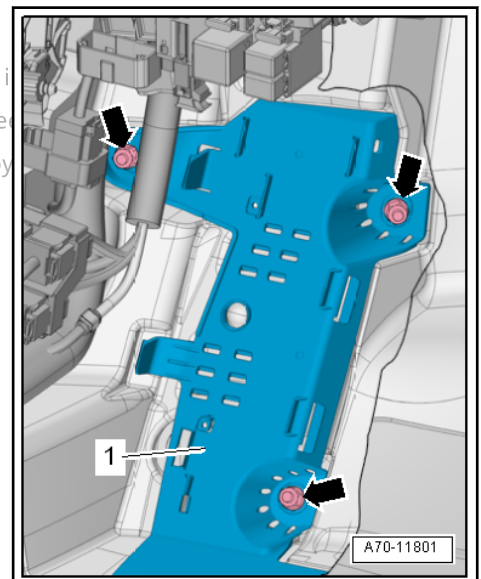
### 4.18.1 Removing and installing foot rest - left-hand drive vehicles

#### Removing



- Remove A-pillar trim (bottom, driver side) ⇒ [page 254](#) .
- Release catches -1-, disengage foot rest -2- from retainer and detach -arrows-.
- Press floor covering to side in vicinity of attachment points and unscrew nuts -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



- Lift retainer -1- off studs and pull retainer out from underneath floor covering.

### Installing

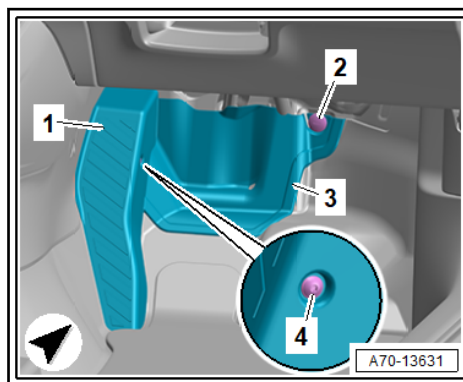
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [04.8.1 overview - foot rest and floor covering, left-hand drive vehicles](#), page 242**

## 4.18.2 Removing and installing foot rest - right-hand drive vehicles

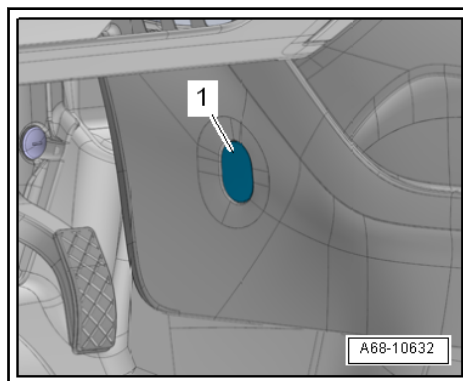
### Removing

Copyright by Audi AG. This document, in part or in whole, is not permitted to be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



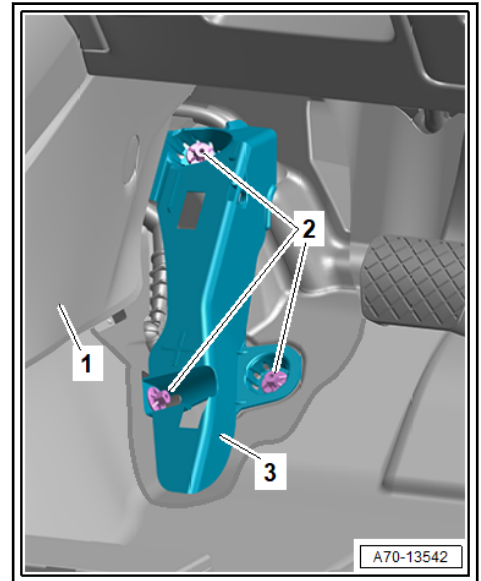
- Unscrew stud/nut -2-.
- Remove bolt -4-.
- Disengage and detach foot rest -1- with steering column cover -3-.

### Removing bracket:



- Unclip cap -1- using a small flat-bladed screwdriver (shown here as an example).
- Unscrew bolt underneath.
- Carefully press centre console -1- slightly to side and move floor covering clear in area of bolted connections for bracket.





- Press floor covering to side and remove nuts -2-.
- Carefully press centre console slightly to side.
- Lift bracket -3- off studs, disengage from centre console and detach.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [a4.8.2 overview - foot rest, right-hand drive vehicles](#), page 243**

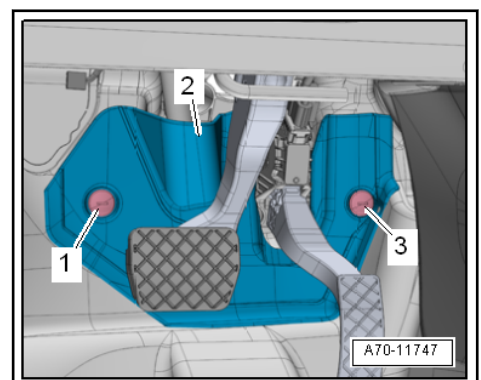
### 4.19 Removing and installing floor covering

⇒ [a4.19.1 nd installing steering column cover - left-hand drive vehicles](#), page 267

⇒ [a4.19.2 nd installing floor covering](#), page 268

#### 4.19.1 Removing and installing steering column cover - left-hand drive vehicles

##### Removing



- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Remove fasteners -1 and 3- with a screwdriver.
  - Version with nuts: Remove nuts -1, 3-
  - Disengage and detach steering column cover -2-.



## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [04.8 overview - foot rest and floor covering](#), page 242

### 4.19.2 Removing and installing floor covering

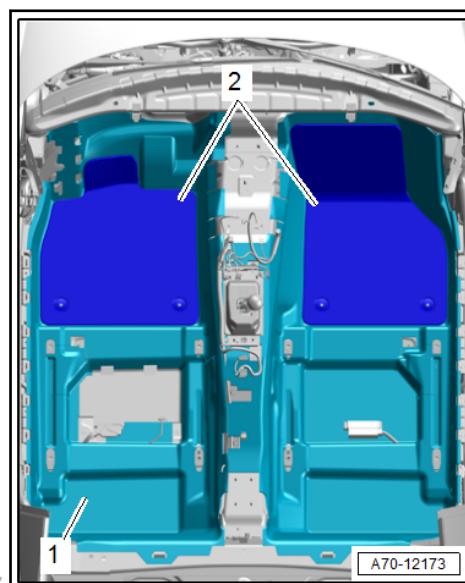
#### Removing

- Remove front seats ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- TT Coupé: Remove bench seat/individual seats ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Remove sill panel mouldings ⇒ [page 247](#) .
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ [page 254](#) .
- Remove front belt end fittings ⇒ [page 101](#) .
- Remove centre console ⇒ [page 57](#) .
- Remove foot rest ⇒ [page 265](#) .
- Left-hand drive vehicles: Remove steering column cover ⇒ [page 267](#) .
- Remove mounting bracket for centre console and lower selector mechanism ⇒ [page 64](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove digital sound package control unit -J525- ⇒ Communication; Rep. gr. 91; Sound system; Overview of fitting locations - sound system.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove electronically controlled damping control unit -J250- ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 43; Electronic damping control; Removing and installing electronically controlled damping control unit -J250-.
- TT Roadster: Detach back panel trim in vicinity of floor covering ⇒ [page 262](#) .
- Remove floor mats -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes,

- Lift floor covering -1- at rear and pull towards rear.
- permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**i** Note

*Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.*

- Fold up floor covering and take it out.

**Installing**

- Fold up floor covering and place it in vehicle.
- Slide floor covering forwards and align until hole patterns coincide.

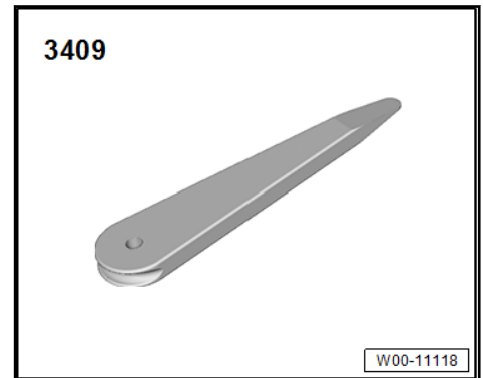
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o4.8 overview - foot rest and floor covering](#), page 242**

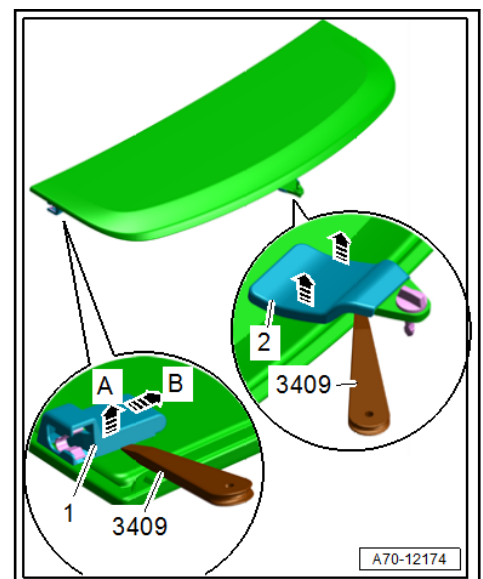
## 4.20 Removing and installing rear shelf

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



**Removing**



- Remove rear shelf and set it down on a stable, clean surface.

**Removing mounting:**

- Unclip mounting -1- with removal wedge -3409- -arrow A-, disengage in direction of -arrow B- and detach.

**Removing cover:**

- Unclip cover -2- -arrows- using removal wedge -3409- and detach.

**4.21 Removing and installing rollover bar trim**

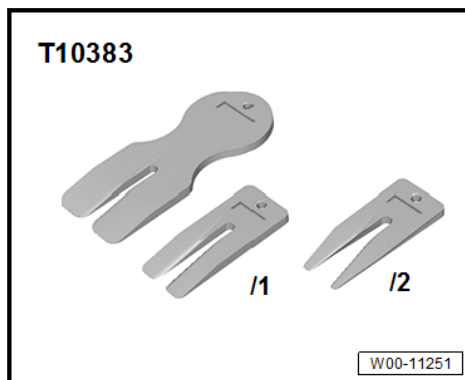


**Note**

*The rollover bar trim (front) cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably.*

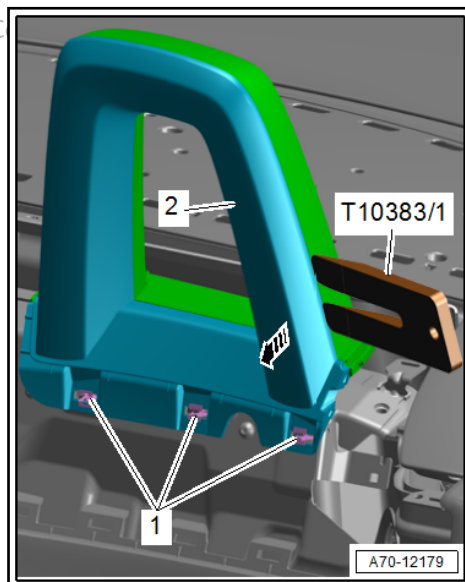
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-

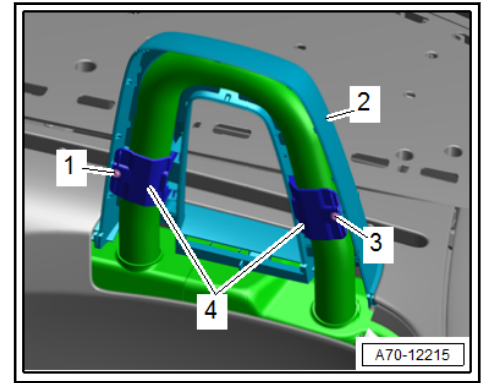


**Removing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



- Remove back panel cover with belts inserted and place to one side => [page 260](#) .
- Remove clips -1- from rollover bar trim.
- Starting at bottom, unclip trim (front) -2- from trim (rear) using wedge -T10383/1- -arrow-.
- Remove bolts -1, 3-.



- Unclip brackets -4- from trim and detach.
- Detach trim -2- from roll-over bar.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [04.10 overview - roll-over bar trim](#), page 245**

## 4.22 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim

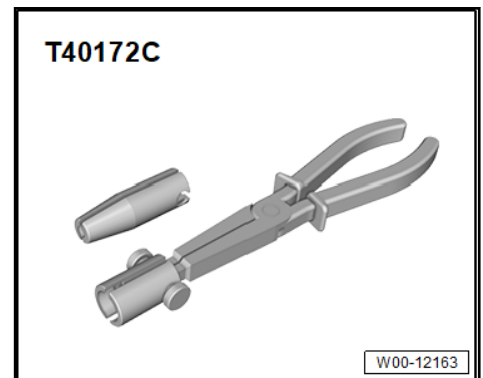
**=> [a4.22.1 nd installing front convertible roof compartment trim](#), page 271**

**=> [a4.22.2 nd installing convertible roof compartment trim \(bottom\)](#), page 272**

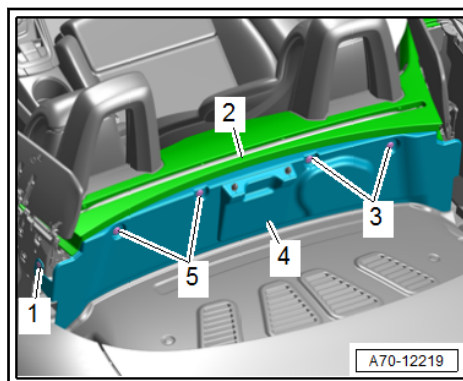
### 4.22.1 Removing and installing front convertible roof compartment trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pliers -T40172 C-



## Removing



- Move convertible roof to “open” position.
- Lower windbreak.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove fastener -1- (both sides).
- Move convertible roof to “closed” position.
- Remove fasteners -3, 5- using pliers -T40172 C-.
- Unclip back panel cover -2- upwards from windbreak mount in vicinity of convertible roof compartment trim.
- Disengage convertible roof compartment trim -4- and remove towards front.

## Installing

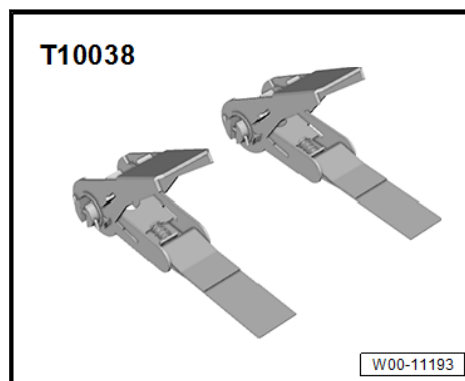
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.11 view - convertible roof compartment trim](#), page [246](#)

### 4.22.2 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (bottom)

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Tensioning strap -T10038-



- ◆
- ◆ Hook -T40306-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

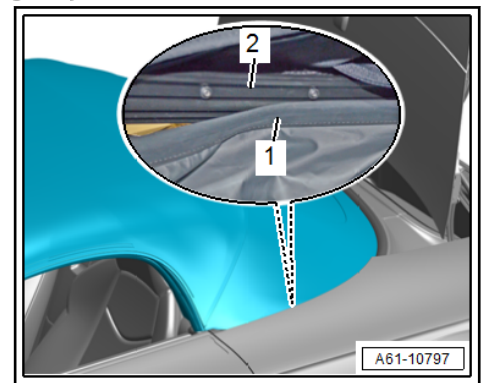
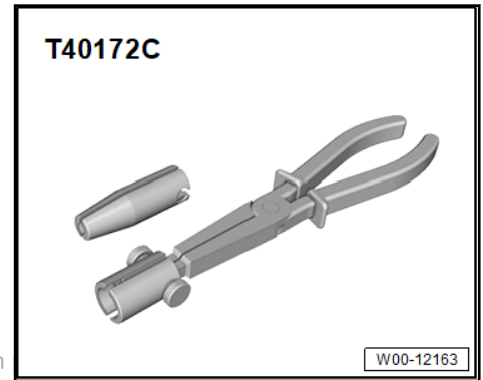
◆ Pliers -T40172 C-



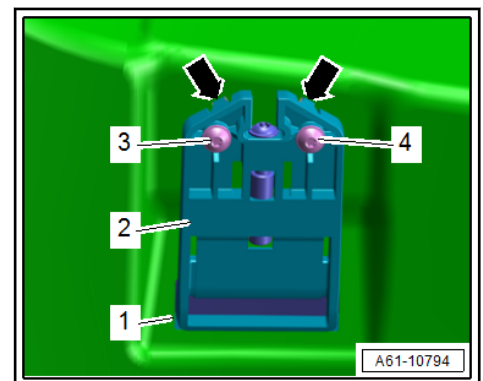
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

**Removing**

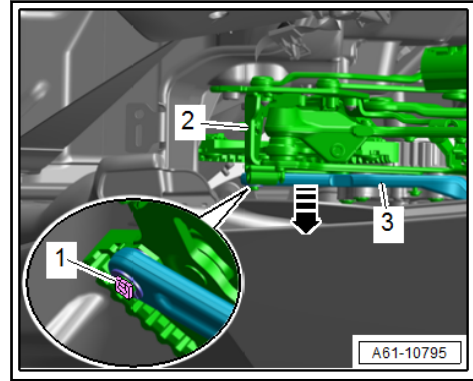
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Convertible roof closed
- Starting from outer edge, carefully pull convertible roof compartment trim -1- out of mounting at tensioner -2-.
- Move convertible roof to “open” position.
- Remove luggage compartment trim (top) ⇒ [page 294](#) .



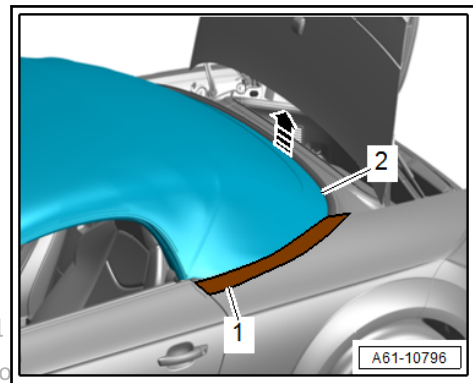
- Remove bolts -3, 4-.
- Disengage catches -arrows-.
- Slide tensioning strap -2- through opening in body -1- into convertible roof compartment.
- Pull off securing element -1- and detach operating lever -3- for tensioner at mounting -2- -arrow-.



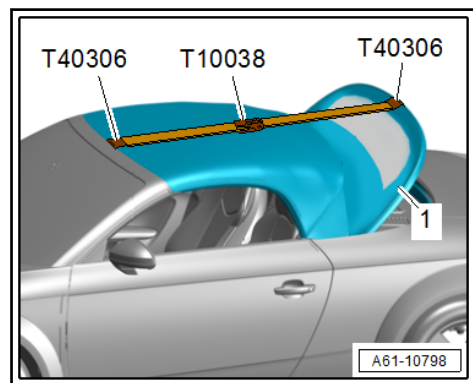
- Mask body to prevent damage to paintwork.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Use at least four layers of adhesive tape -1-.
- Move convertible roof to "closed" position by hand.
- Lift tensioner -2- out of convertible roof compartment -arrow-.
- Pivot tensioner -1- upwards and secure it in position to make sure it is not closed unintentionally.

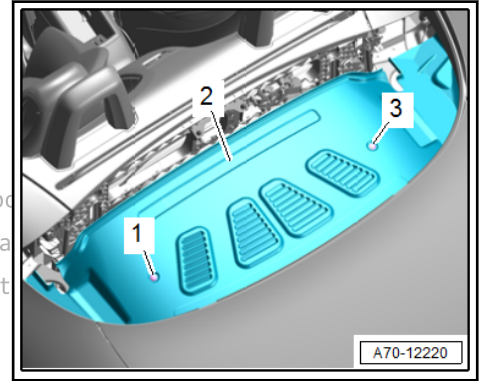


- Attach tensioning strap -T10038- to hooks -T40306- and tension strap three revolutions on shaft at quick-release tensioner.
- Engage hooks -T40306- at front and rear centre edge of convertible roof and tension again, if necessary.
- Remove convertible roof compartment trim (front) ⇒ [page 271](#).





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove fasteners -1, 3- using pliers -T40172 C-.
- Disengage convertible roof compartment trim -2- and remove towards top.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.11 verview - convertible roof compartment trim](#), page [246](#)**

## 5 Luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ [o5.1 f fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels", page 276](#)

⇒ [o5.2 overview - luggage compartment side trim", page 278](#)

⇒ [o5.3 overview - luggage compartment floor", page 282](#)

⇒ [o5.4 overview - lower rear lid trim", page 282](#)

⇒ [o5.5 overview - upper rear lid trim", page 285](#)

⇒ [a5.6 nd installing lower rear lid trim", page 286](#)

⇒ [a5.7 nd installing upper rear lid trim", page 290](#)

⇒ [a5.8 nd installing luggage compartment side trim", page 291](#)

⇒ [a5.9 nd installing luggage compartment trim", page 294](#)

⇒ [a5.10 nd installing lock carrier trim", page 296](#)

⇒ [a5.11 nd installing fastening ring", page 297](#)

⇒ [a5.12 nd installing grip for rear luggage compartment floor", page 297](#)

### 5.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels

⇒ [o5.1.1 f fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, TT Coupé", page 276](#)

⇒ [o5.1.2 f fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, TT Roadster", page 277](#)

#### 5.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, TT Coupé

**1 - Luggage compartment floor**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 282](#)

**2 - Lock carrier trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 278](#)

**3 - Lower rear lid trim**

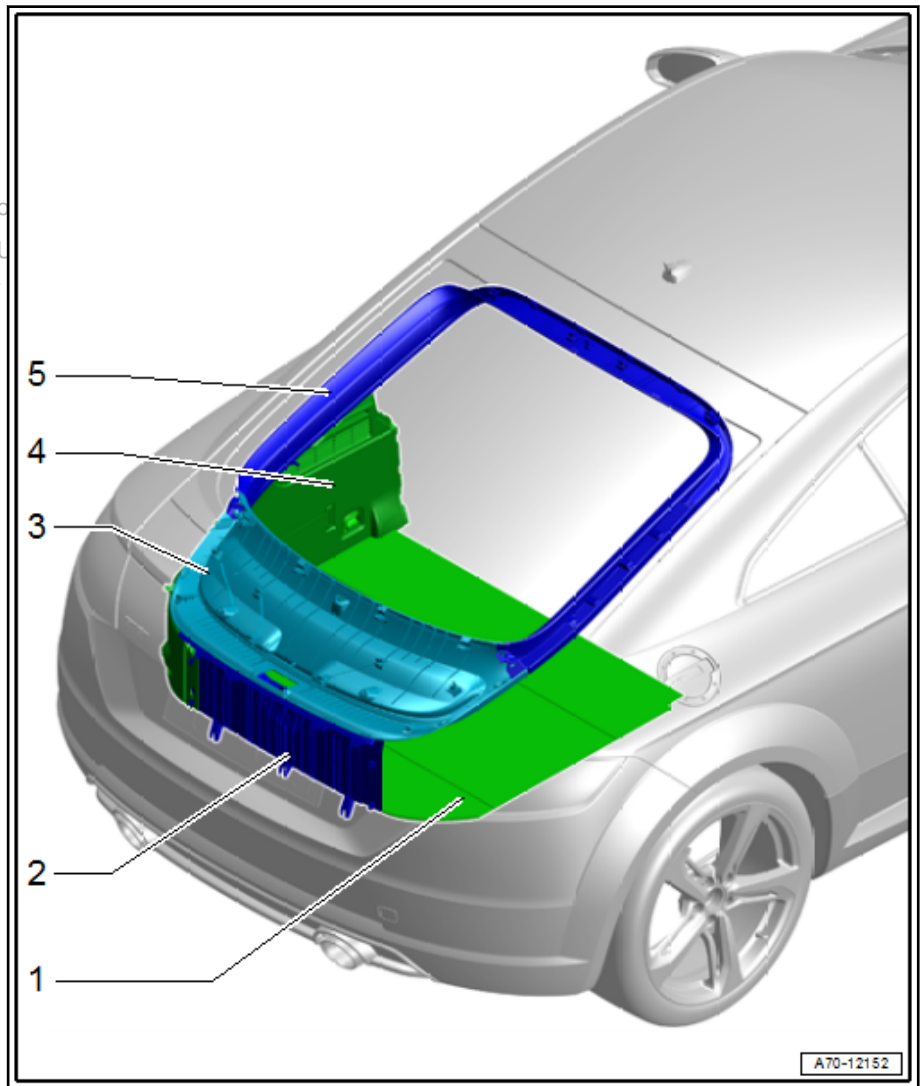
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 282](#)

**4 - Luggage compartment side trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 278](#)

**5 - Upper rear lid trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 285](#)



**5.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - luggage compartment trim panels, TT Roadster**



**1 - Lock carrier trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 280](#)

**2 - Luggage compartment side trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 280](#)

**3 - Luggage compartment trim (top)**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 280](#)

**4 - Luggage compartment trim (front)**

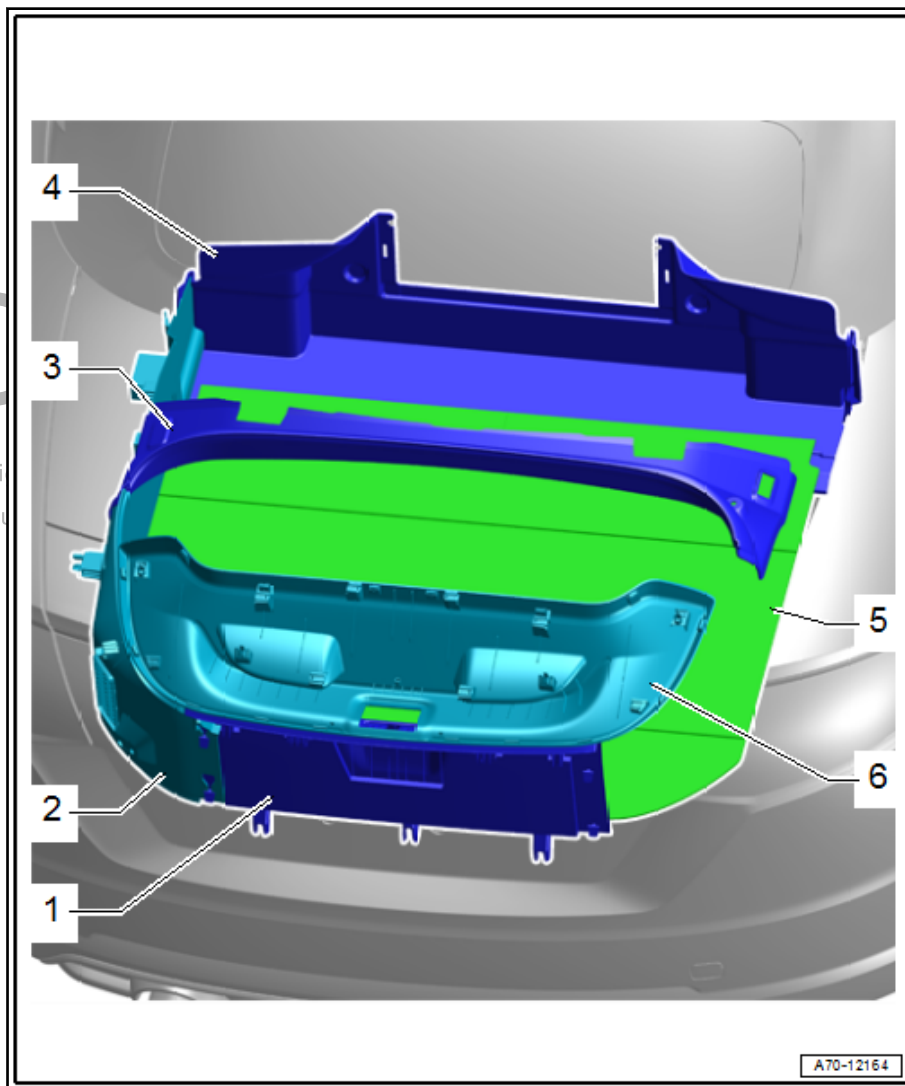
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 280](#)

**5 - Luggage compartment floor**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 282](#)

**6 - Rear lid trim**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 283](#)



**5.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim**

⇒ [o5.2.1 overview - luggage compartment side trim, TT Coupé](#), [page 278](#)

⇒ [o5.2.2 overview - luggage compartment trim, TT Roadster](#), [page 280](#)

**5.2.1 Assembly overview - luggage compartment side trim, TT Coupé**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Clip**

- 4x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool - T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**2 - Socket -U-**

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Cigarette lighter, socket; Assembly overview - cigarette lighter, 12 V socket

**3 - Clip**

- Insert in trim

**4 - Clip**

- 4x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**5 - Luggage compartment side trim**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 291](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal

**6 - Luggage compartment light -W18-/W35-**

- Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment

**7 - Nut**

- 2x
- 8 Nm

**8 - Bracket**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a5.8.1 and installing luggage compartment side trim - TT Coupé](#), page 291

**9 - Bolt**

- 8 Nm

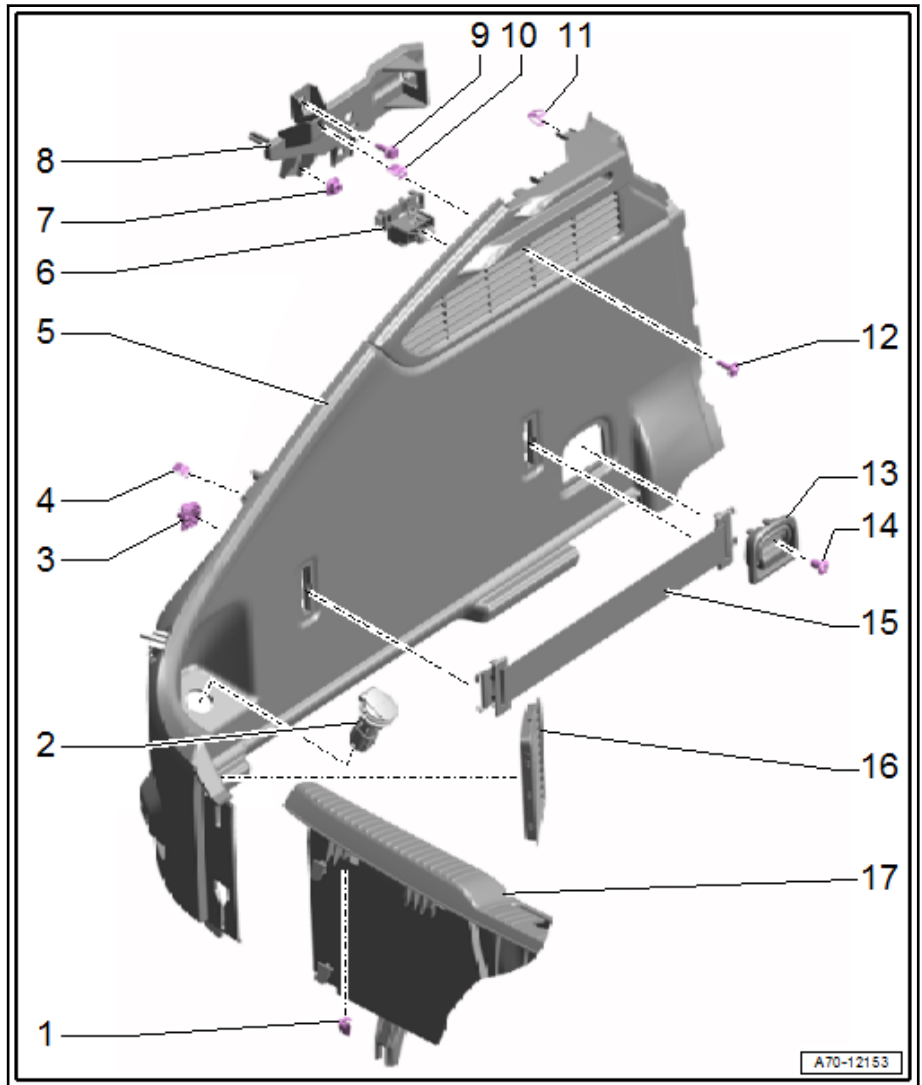
**10 - Expanding nut**

- Clip into bracket

**11 - Clip**

- 2x
- Insert in trim
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**12 - Bolt**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- 1.5 Nm

### 13 - Fastening ring

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 297](#)

### 14 - Bolt

- 8 Nm

### 15 - Securing strap

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)

### 16 - Ventilation grille

- Clip into trim

### 17 - Lock carrier trim

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 296](#)
- Must engage in pins and luggage compartment side trim
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal

## 5.2.2 Assembly overview - luggage compartment trim, TT Roadster

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Clip**

- 4x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool T40280- and insert in trim for installation unless
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**2 - Luggage compartment side trim**

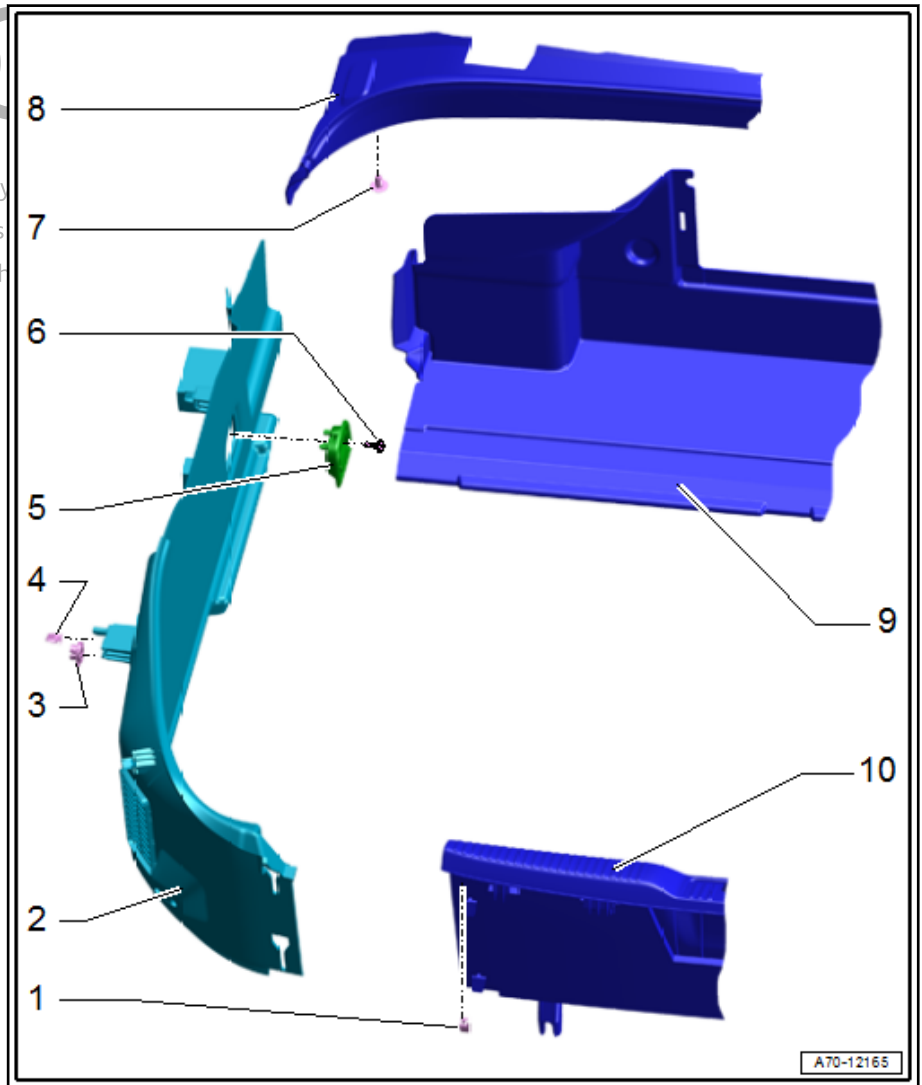
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 293](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**3 - Clip**

- Insert in trim

**4 - Clip**

- 3x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed



**5 - Fastening ring**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 297](#)

**6 - Bolt**

- 8 Nm

**7 - Fastener**

- 4x
- Remove with pliers -T40172 C-

**8 - Luggage compartment trim (top)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 294](#)
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal

**9 - Luggage compartment trim (front)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 295](#)

**10 - Lock carrier trim**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 296](#)
- Must engage in pins and luggage compartment side trim
- Push on until it engages audibly
- Fold over lip of rear lid seal

### 5.3 Assembly overview - luggage compartment floor

#### 1 - Insert

- Mounting for tools
- Depending on version

#### 2 - Luggage compartment floor

#### 3 - Grip

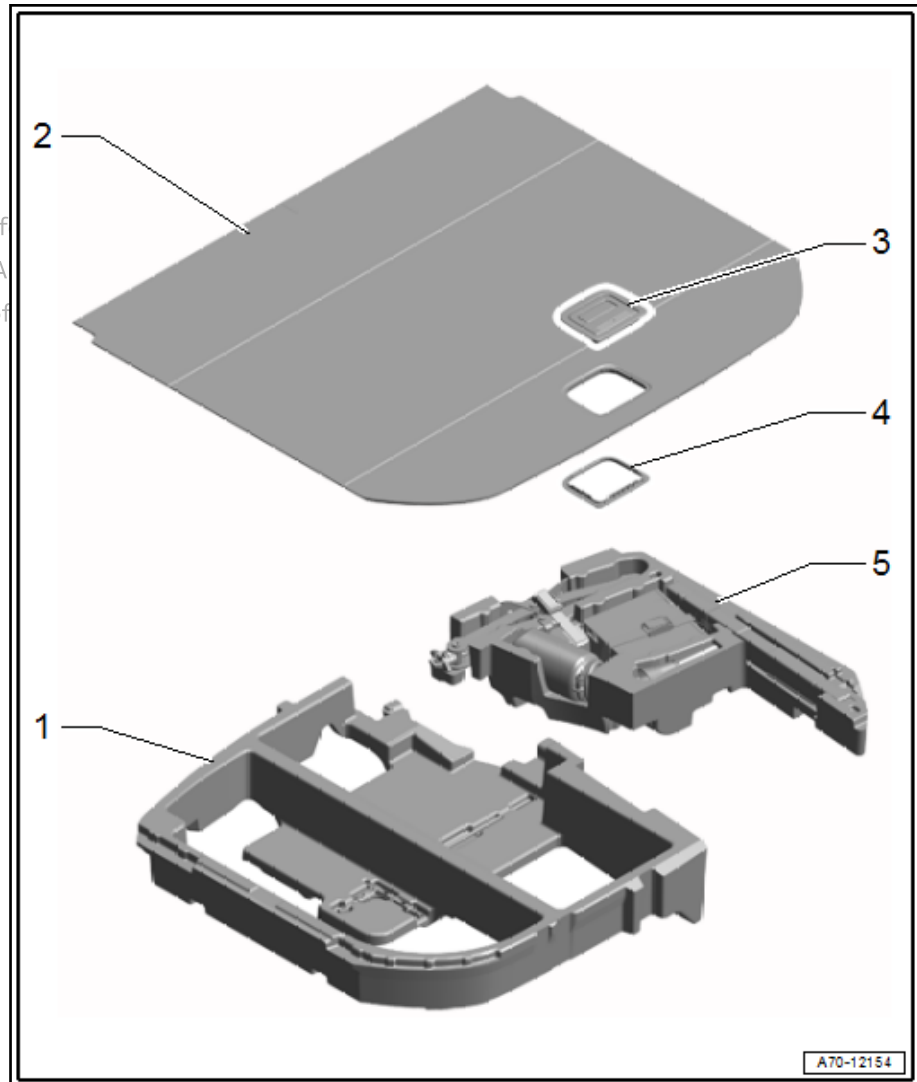
- For luggage compartment floor
- Removing and installing => [page 297](#)

#### 4 - Retaining frame

- For grip for luggage compartment floor
- Can only be pressed onto grip for luggage compartment floor in one position
- Push on until it engages audibly

#### 5 - Insert

- Mounting for tools
- Depending on version



### 5.4 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim

=> [o5.4.1 verview - lower rear lid trim, TT Coupé](#), page 282

=> [o5.4.2 verview - lower rear lid trim, TT Roadster](#), page 283

#### 5.4.1 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, TT Coupé



**1 - Fastener**

- 2x
- Remove with pliers - T40172 C- and adapter -T40172/2A-

**2 - Lower rear lid trim**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 286](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**3 - Rubber buffer**

- 14x
- Insert in trim

**4 - Clip**

- 8x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

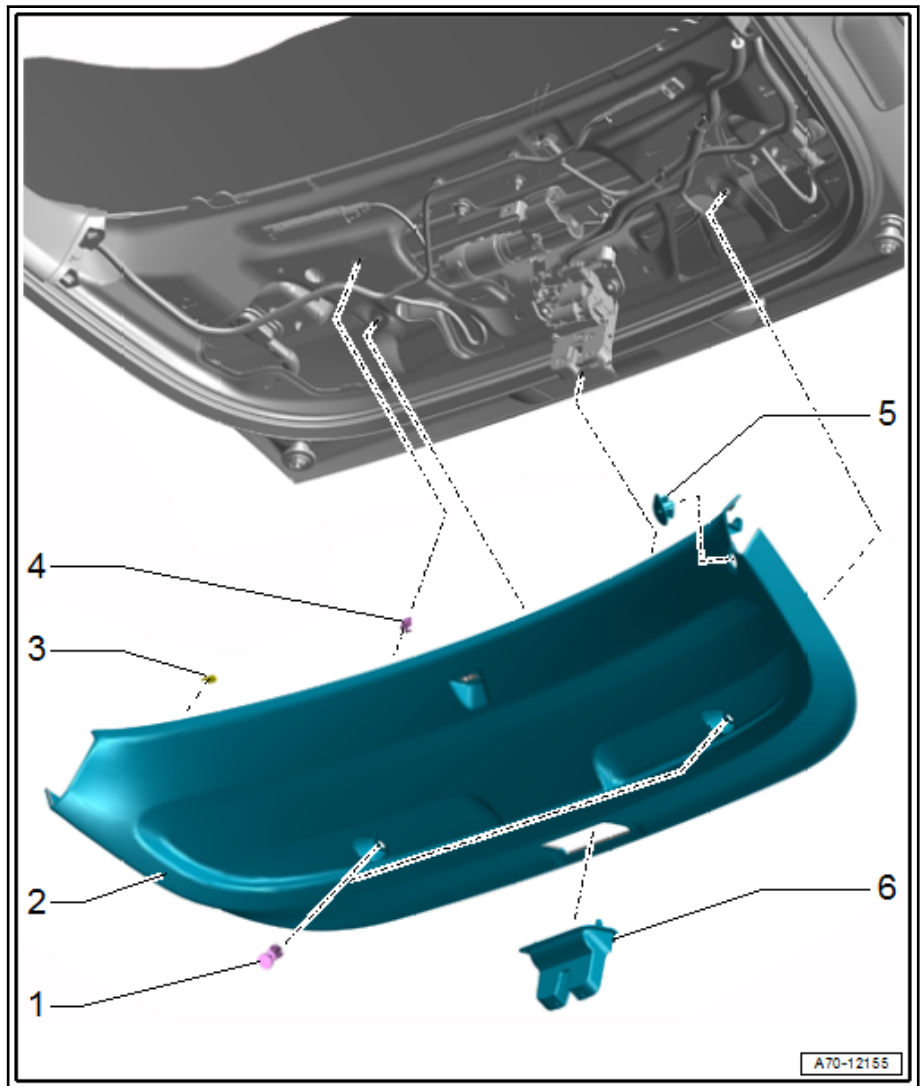
**5 - Cover**

- For manual release mechanism
- Clip into rear lid trim

**6 - Trim for rear lid lock**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a5.6.1 nd installing lower rear lid trim - TT Coupé](#), [page 286](#)

- Push on until it engages audibly



**5.4.2 Assembly overview - lower rear lid trim, TT Roadster**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Rear lid trim**

- Removing and installing => [page 288](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**2 - Rubber buffer**

- 10x
- Insert in trim

**3 - Clip**

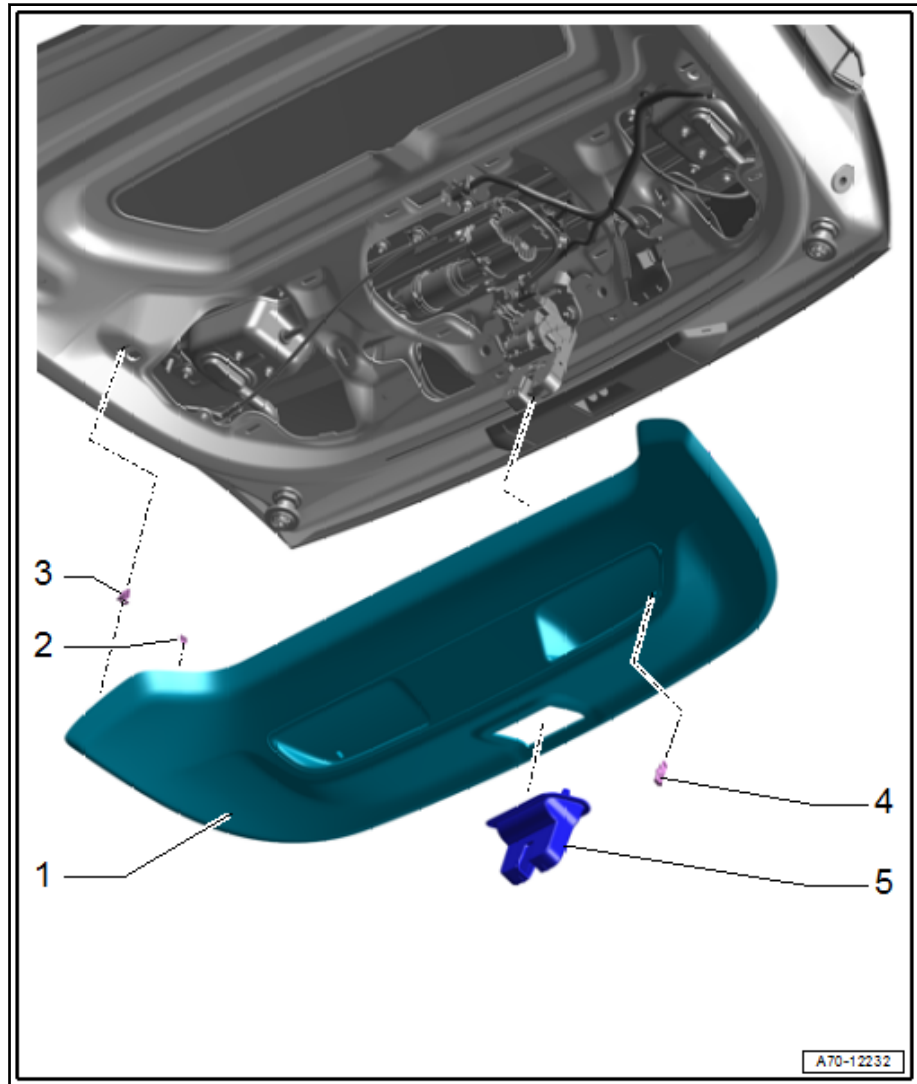
- 12x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

**4 - Spreader pin**

- 2x
- Insert in trim

**5 - Trim for rear lid lock**

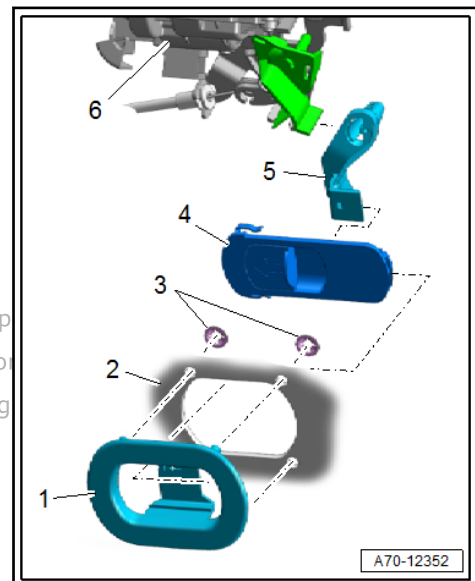
- Removing and installing => [a5.6.2 nd installing rear lid trim - TT Roadster](#), page 288
- Push on until it engages audibly



**Manual release mechanism - NAR version**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2015 Audi AG



**1 - Trim**

- 2 - Lower rear lid trim
- 3 - Clamping washers (4x)
- 4 - Manual release handle
- 5 - Actuating lever
- 6 - Rear lid lock

## 5.5 Assembly overview - upper rear lid trim

### 1 - Clip (side)

- 3x on each side
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

### 2 - Rubber buffer (side)

- 2x on each side
- Insert in trim

### 3 - Upper rear lid trim

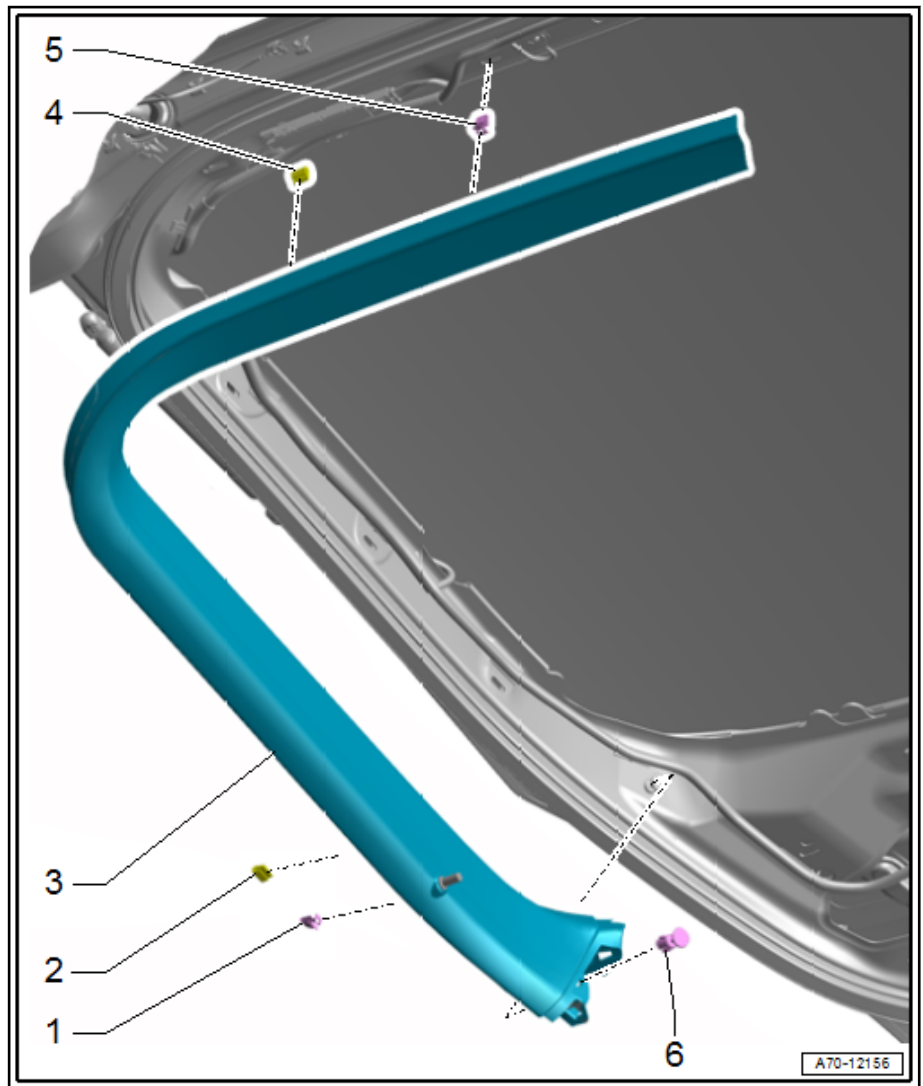
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 290](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

### 4 - Rubber buffer (top)

- 4x
- Insert in trim

### 5 - Clip (top)

- 4x
- Insert in trim
- Remove any clips left in rear lid mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in trim for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed



### 6 - Fastener

- 1x on each side
- Remove with pliers -T40172 C-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 5.6 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim

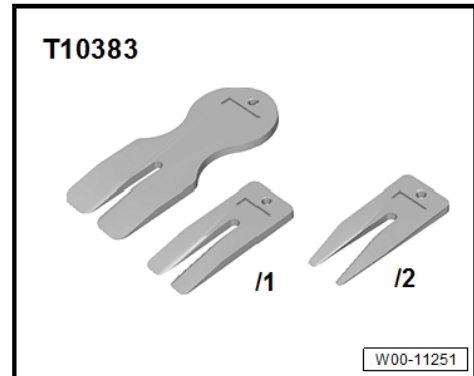
⇒ [a5.6.1 nd installing lower rear lid trim - TT Coupé”, page 286](#)

⇒ [a5.6.2 nd installing rear lid trim - TT Roadster”, page 288](#)

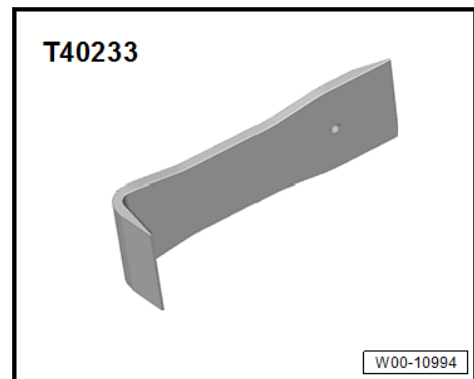
### 5.6.1 Removing and installing lower rear lid trim - TT Coupé

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Wedges -T10383-



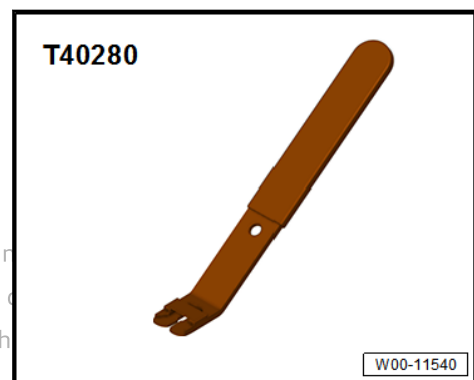
◆ Removal wedge -T40233-



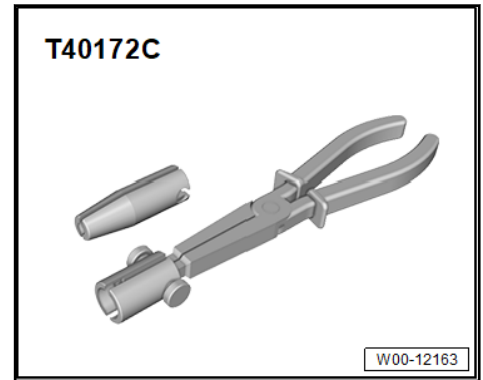
◆ Removal tool -T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

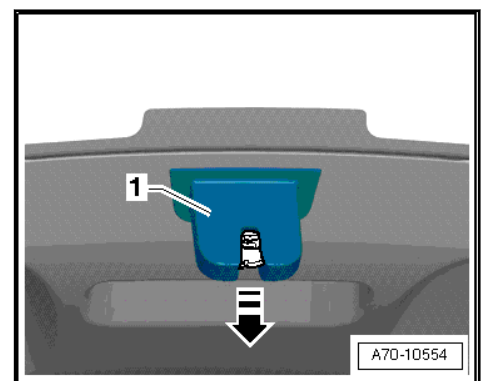


◆ Pliers -T40172 C-

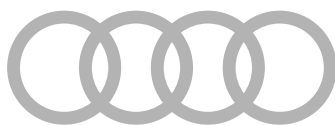


◆ Adapter -T40172/2A-

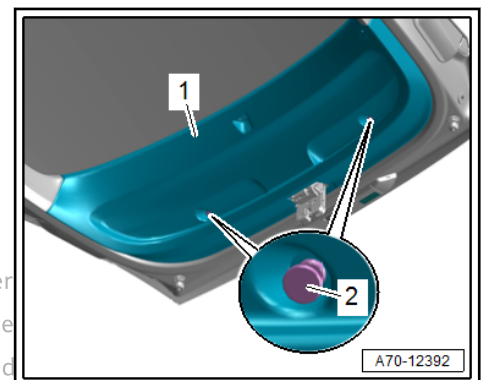
Removing



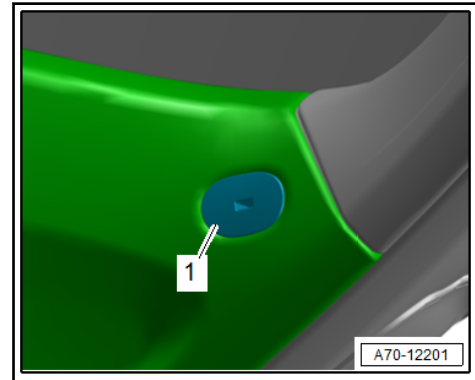
- Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge -T40233-.
- To remove fastener, remove locking pin -1- in fastener using pliers -T40172 C- with adapter -T40172/2A-.



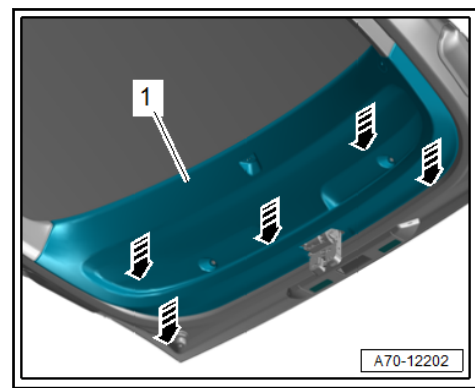
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove released fastener.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Unclip cover -1- for manual release from rear lid trim.



- Guide cover for manual release out of rear lid trim.
- Unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using wedge -T10383-  
-arrows-.



### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.4.1 overview - lower rear lid trim, TT Coupé](#), page 282

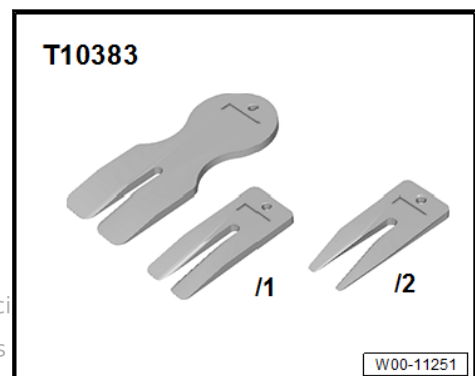
## 5.6.2 Removing and installing rear lid trim - TT Roadster

Special tools and workshop equipment required

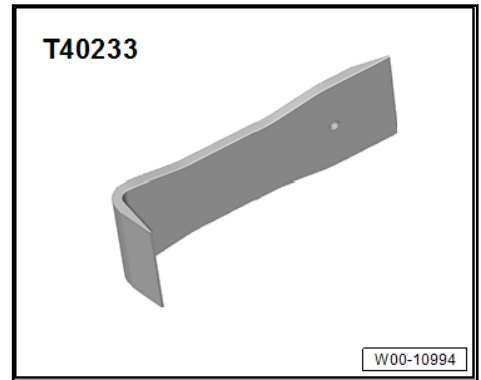
- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge -T40233-



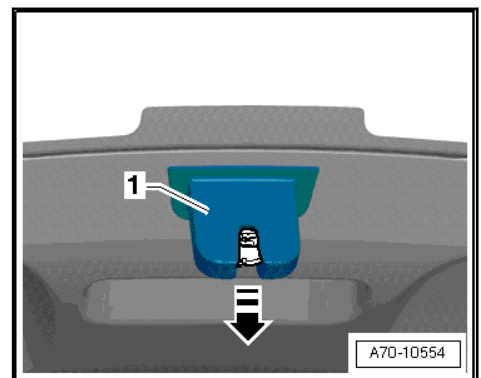
◆ Removal tool -T40280-



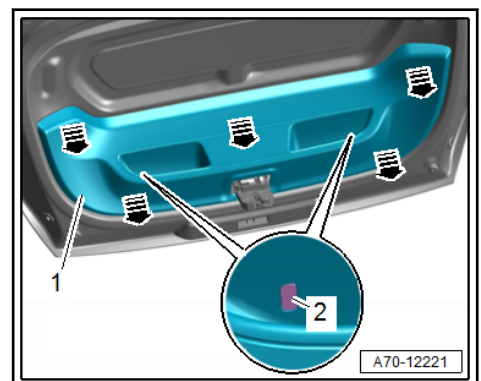
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



Removing



- Unclip trim for rear lid lock -1- in direction of -arrow- using removal wedge -T40233-.
- Using a screwdriver, carefully press fastener -2- in by approx. 5 mm (do not press through completely as this would cause fastener to fall off).





- Unclip rear lid trim -1- from rear lid using wedge -T10383-  
-arrows-.

### Installing

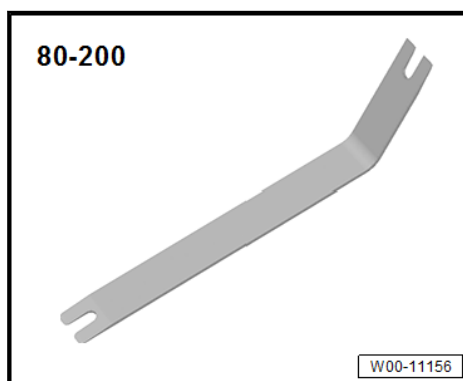
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o5.4.2 overview - lower rear lid trim, TT Roadster](#), page 283

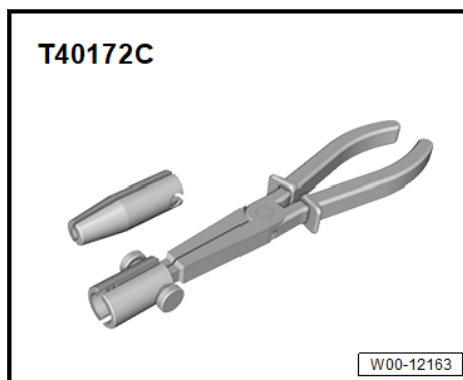
## 5.7 Removing and installing upper rear lid trim

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



- ◆ Pliers -T40172 C-



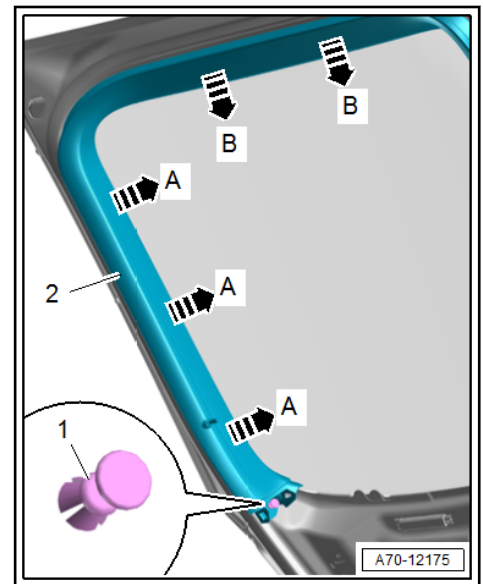
- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.





## Removing



- Remove lower rear lid trim ⇒ [page 286](#) .
- Remove fasteners -1- on both sides of rear lid using pliers -T40172 C-.
- Starting at side bottom, unclip trim -2- from rear lid using removal lever -80-200- -arrows A-.
- Then unclip trim (top) from rear lid using removal lever -80-200- -arrows B- and detach.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.5 overview - upper rear lid trim](#), [page 285](#)

## 5.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

⇒ [a5.8.1 nd installing luggage compartment side trim - TT Coupé](#), [page 291](#)

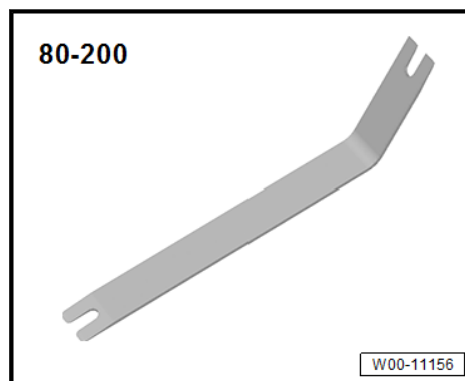
⇒ [a5.8.2 nd installing luggage compartment side trim - TT Roadster](#), [page 293](#)

### 5.8.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - TT Coupé

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

◆ Removal lever -80-200-



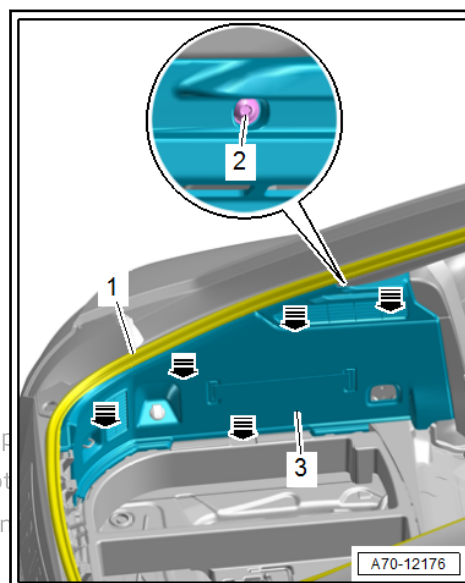
◆ Removal tool -T40280-



Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove front section of rear shelf.
- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 296](#) .
- Remove fastening ring ⇒ [page 297](#) .
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.
- Starting at rear, unclip luggage compartment side trim -3- from body using removal lever -80-200- -arrow-.

- Pull luggage compartment side trim slightly inwards, unplug electrical connector for socket and luggage compartment light.
- Pull luggage compartment side trim towards rear out of side trim and remove.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

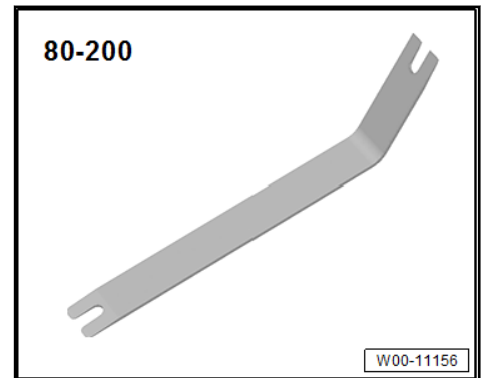
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.2.1 overview - luggage compartment side trim, TT Coupé](#), [page 278](#)

## 5.8.2 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim - TT Roadster

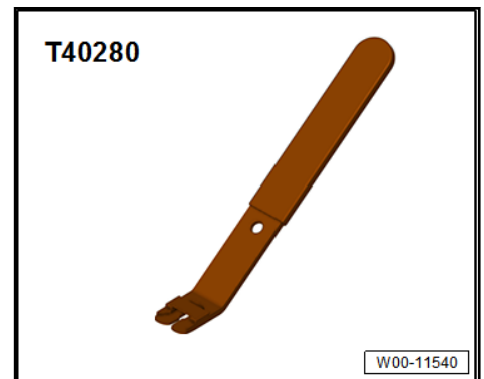
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



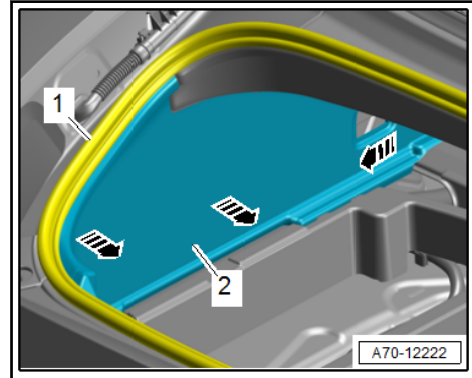
- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Removing

- Remove **luggage compartment floor**.
- Remove lock carrier trim ⇒ [page 296](#) .
- Remove fastening ring ⇒ [page 297](#) .
- Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment side trim.



- Starting at rear, unclip luggage compartment side trim -2- from body using removal lever -80-200- -arrow-.
- If fitted, unplug electrical connector.
- Pull luggage compartment side trim towards rear out of mounting and remove.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.2.2 overview - luggage compartment trim, TT Roadster](#), page 280

## 5.9 Removing and installing luggage compartment trim

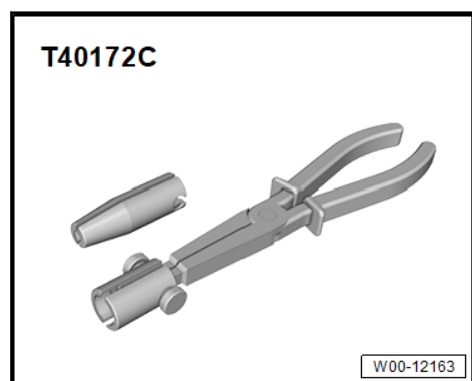
⇒ [a5.9.1 nd installing luggage compartment trim \(top\)](#), page 294

⇒ [a5.9.2 nd installing front luggage compartment trim](#), page 295

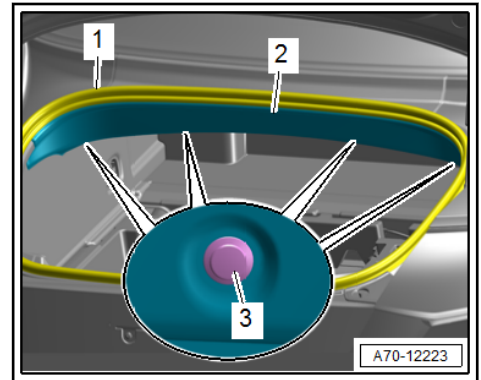
### 5.9.1 Removing and installing luggage compartment trim (top)

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pliers -T40172 C-



## Removing



- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 293](#) .
- If fitted, remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Overview of fitting locations - lights in luggage compartment.
- Remove fasteners -3- using pliers -T40172 C-.
- Pull off rear lid seal -1- in area of luggage compartment trim -2-.
- Detach luggage compartment trim downwards.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

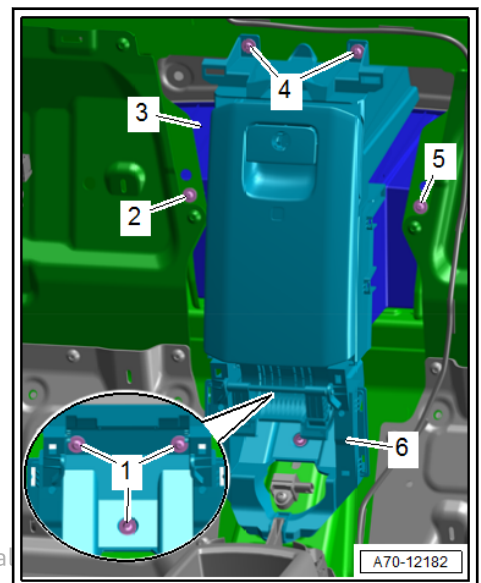
**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.2.2 overview - luggage compartment trim, TT Roadster](#), page 280**

## 5.9.2 Removing and installing front luggage compartment trim

### Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Open convertible roof.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.
- Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ [page 293](#) .



- Remove back panel trim => [page 262](#) .
- Remove bolts -2, 5-
- Disengage handle with cable for manual release of rear lid.
- Remove storage compartment -3- through luggage compartment towards rear.



**Note**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without express authorisation by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Detach luggage compartment trim towards rear.

**Installing**

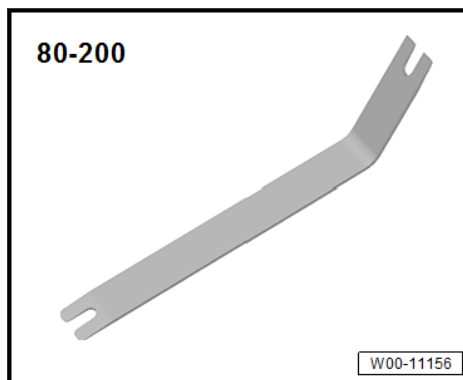
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [04.7 overview - back panel trim](#), [page 240](#)

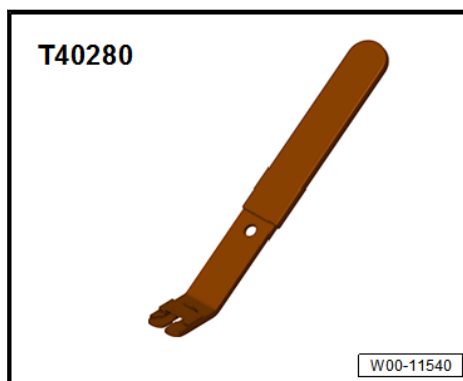
### 5.10 Removing and installing lock carrier trim

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-

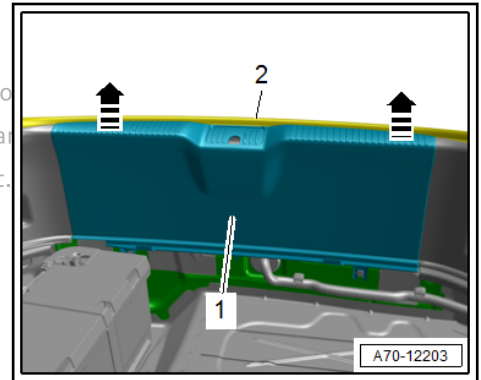


- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-



## Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Pull off rear lid seal -2- in area of lock carrier trim.
- Working vertically upwards, unclip lock carrier trim -1- in direction of -arrows- using removal lever -80-200-.

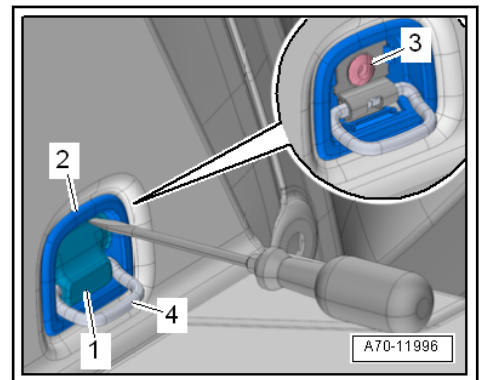
### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.2 overview - luggage compartment side trim](#), page 278

## 5.11 Removing and installing fastening ring

### Removing



- Fold down clip -4- and unclip cover -1- with a screwdriver.
- Unscrew bolt -3- and detach complete fastening ring -2-.

### **i** Note

*The illustration shows the fastening ring for the TT Coupé as an example.*

### Installing

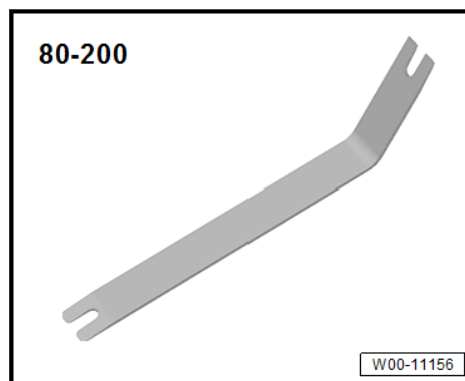
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.2 overview - luggage compartment side trim](#), page 278

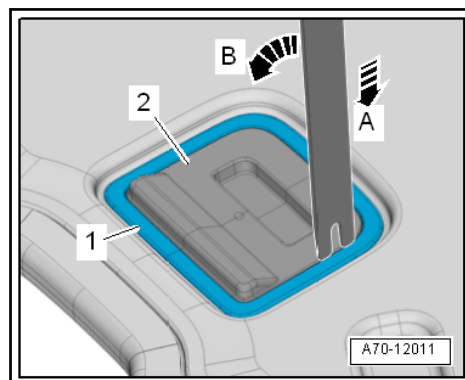
## 5.12 Removing and installing grip for rear luggage compartment floor

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal lever -80-200-



**Removing**



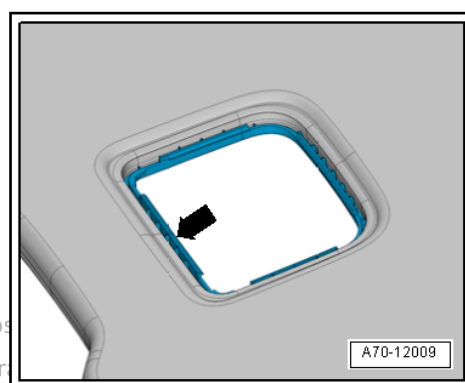
- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Release retaining frame -1- on underside of luggage compartment floor.
- To do so, apply removal lever -80-200- -arrow A- and release retaining frame -arrow B-.
- Disengage retaining frame and detach grip -2- for luggage compartment floor.

**Installing**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee

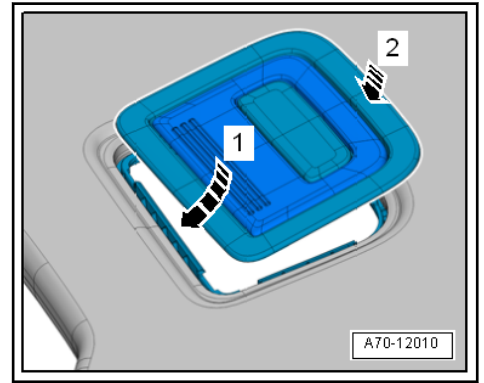
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert retaining frame -arrow- into opening in luggage compartment floor from underneath and hold it in position.
- Slide grip for luggage compartment floor into retaining frame towards rear of vehicle -arrow 1- and engage downwards -arrow 2-.





Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o5.3 verview - luggage compartment floor](#), page 282



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 6 Roof trim panels

⇒ [o6.1 verview - moulded headliner", page 300](#)

⇒ [a6.2 nd installing moulded headliner", page 301](#)

⇒ [r6.3 oof reinforcement to body", page 304](#)

### 6.1 Assembly overview - moulded headliner

#### 1 - Moulded headliner

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 301](#)



**Caution**

*The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*

*Bent moulded headliners must be renewed.*

#### 2 - Clip

- With catch
- Renew after removing
- Insert in moulded headliner
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280-

#### 3 - Roof reinforcement

- Attaching to body ⇒ [page 304](#)

#### 4 - Clip

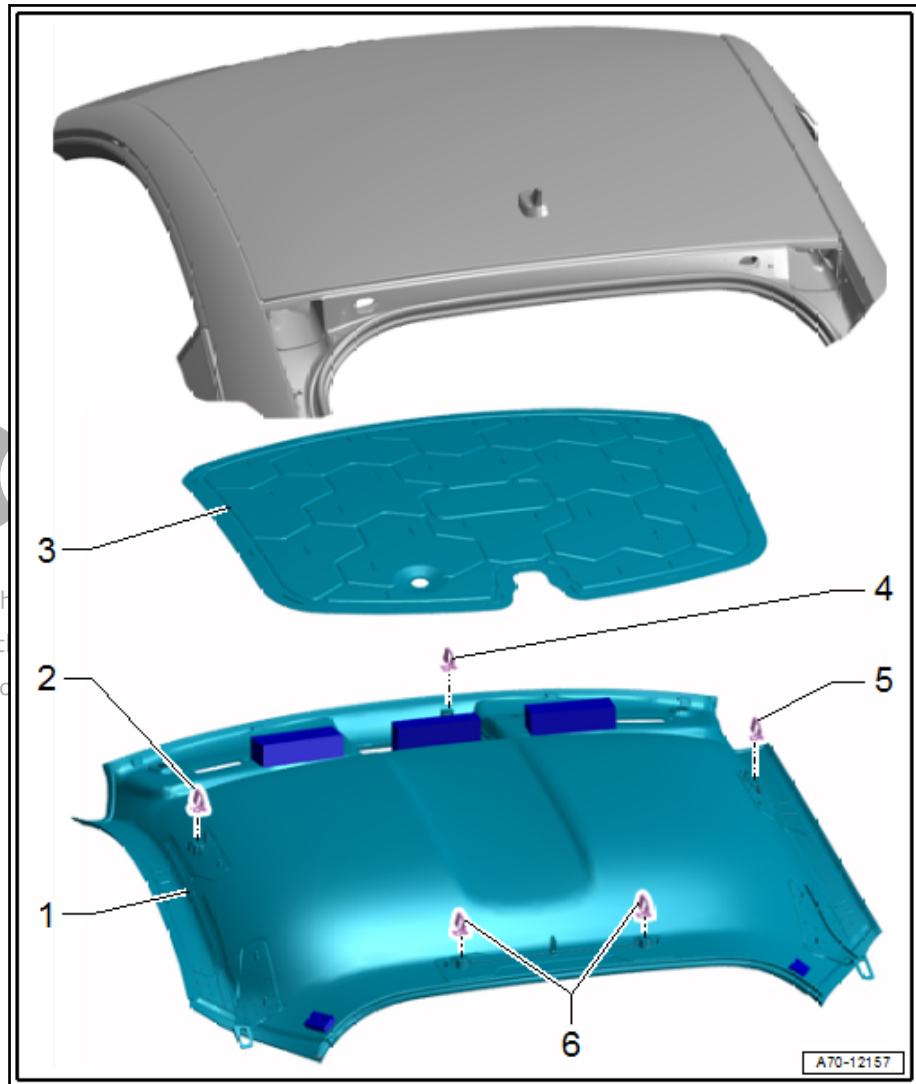
- With catch
- Renew after removing
- Insert in moulded headliner
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280-

#### 5 - Clip

- Insert in moulded headliner
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed

#### 6 - Clip

- 2x
- Insert in moulded headliner
- Remove any clips left in body mounting points using removal tool -T40280- and insert in moulded headliner for installation
- Renew clips if damaged or deformed



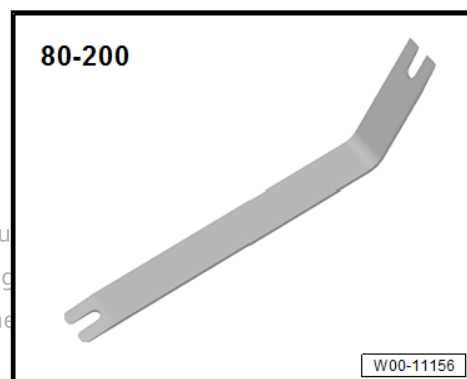
## 6.2 Removing and installing moulded headliner

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



- ◆ Removal tool -T40280-



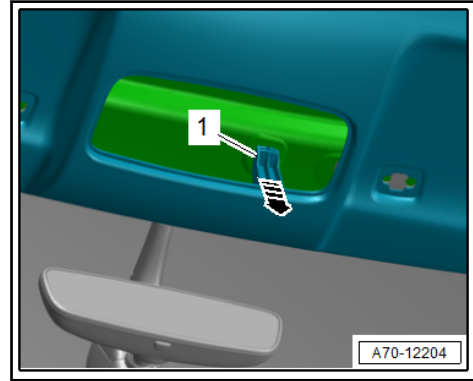
### Removing



#### WARNING

Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .

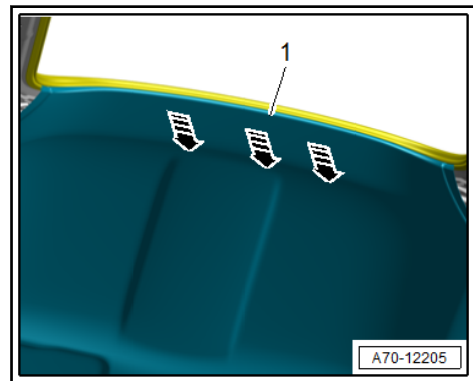
- Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ [page 249](#) .
- Remove C-pillar trim panels ⇒ [page 257](#) .
- Remove front roof module ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Controls; Removing and installing interior light/reading light (front).
- Depending on equipment version: Remove cover for front camera ⇒ [page 70](#) .
- Remove vanity mirror light ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 96; Lights; Removing and installing illuminated vanity mirror - W20-/-W14-.
- Remove sun visors ⇒ [page 36](#) .
- Remove sun visor centre mount ⇒ [page 37](#) .
- Fold down rear seat backrest.



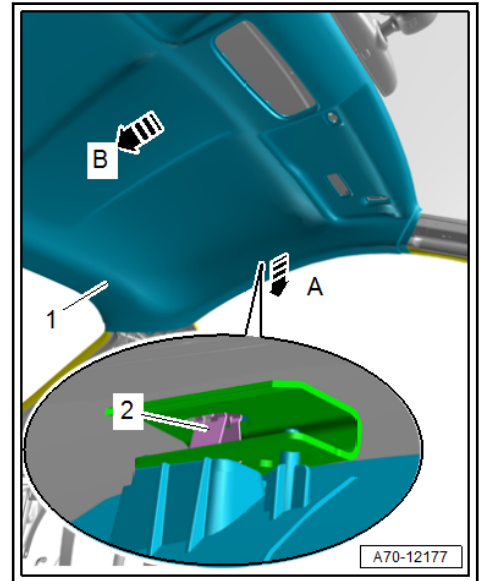
**Caution**

- ◆ *The moulded headliner is kinked very easily.*
- ◆ *Bent moulded headliners must be renewed.*

- Unclip moulded headliner -1- at front from clip on body -arrow-.
- Unclip moulded headliner -1- at rear from clips and centring pin on body using removal lever -80-200- -arrows-.



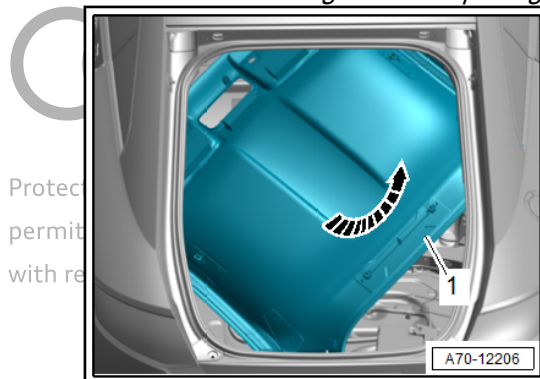
- Unclip moulded headliner -1- at side from clip -2- with catches on body as far as first catch -arrow A- using removal lever -80-200-.



- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- To release clip with catches, pull moulded headliner towards rear -arrow B-; this causes clip to slide out of mounting point in body.
- Move front seats as far forwards and down as possible and tilt backrests as far forwards as possible.

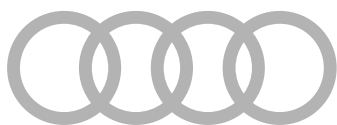
**i** Note

Take out moulded headliner through rear lid opening.

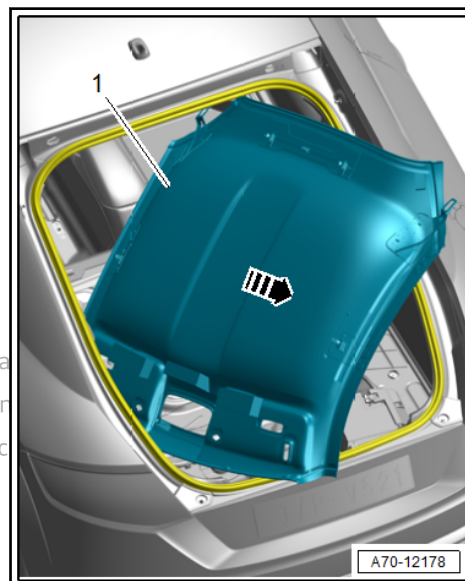


- Lower moulded headliner -1- on left side of vehicle and at the same time carefully turn it 90° in anti-clockwise direction -arrow-.
- Carefully take out moulded headliner -1- through rear lid opening, as shown in illustration -arrow-.

Protect...  
 permit...  
 with re...  
 commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not  
 AG does not guarantee or accept any liability  
 this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- To do so, carefully guide edges of moulded headliner out through rear lid opening.

#### Installing



#### WARNING

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- Align moulded headliner centrally and press centring pin at rear of moulded headliner into mounting point in body until it engages audibly.
- Install sun visor centre mount ⇒ [page 37](#).
- Press clips at rear of moulded headliner into mounting points in body until they engage audibly.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

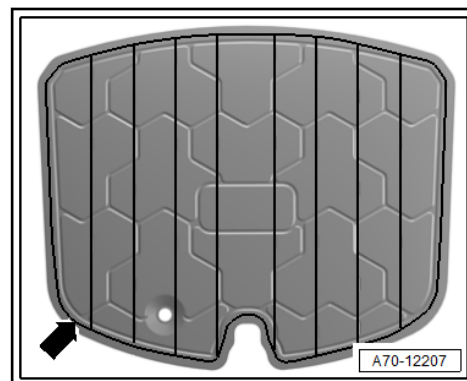
**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o6.1 overview - moulded headliner](#), [page 300](#)**

### 6.3 Attaching roof reinforcement to body

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

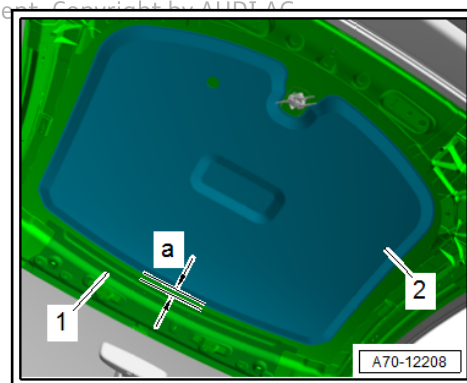
- ◆ Assembly adhesive ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

Procedure



- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ [page 301](#) .
- Apply adhesive beads -arrow- to roof reinforcement as shown in illustration.
- Thickness of adhesive beads: approx. 8 mm
- Apply adhesive beads according to markings on roof reinforcement.
- Position roof reinforcement -2- on roof centrally between outer edges and at distance -a- from cross strut -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted and is prohibited by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



- Dimension -a- = 16 mm
- Press roof reinforcement onto surface of roof.
- Wipe off any surplus adhesive.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o6.1 verview - moulded headliner](#)", [page 300](#)**



## 72 – Seat frames

### 1 Overview - seat versions

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

⇒ [o1.1 fitting locations - seat versions" page 306](#)

in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - seat versions

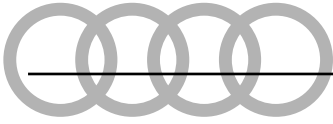
The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



#### Note

*The illustration shows the seat versions for the TT Coupé as an example.*





### 1 - Front passenger seat

#### Sports seat/super sports seat

Equipment versions:

with respect to the correctness of in-

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Lumbar support
- ◆ Pneumatic system (super sports seat)
- ◆ Storage compartment
- ◆ Child seat anchor
- ◆ Seat rake adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Seat depth adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Neck heating (super sports seat) - Roadster
- ◆ With manual/electric adjustment

Assembly overview ⇒ [page 312](#)

### 2 - Rear seat backrest (right-side)

#### Sports seat/super sports seat

TT Coupé only

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather

Assembly overview ⇒ [page 393](#)

### 3 - Bench seat

#### Sports seat/super sports seat

TT Coupé only

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather

Assembly overview ⇒ [page 393](#)

### 4 - Rear left seat backrest

#### Sports seat/super sports seat

TT Coupé only

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather

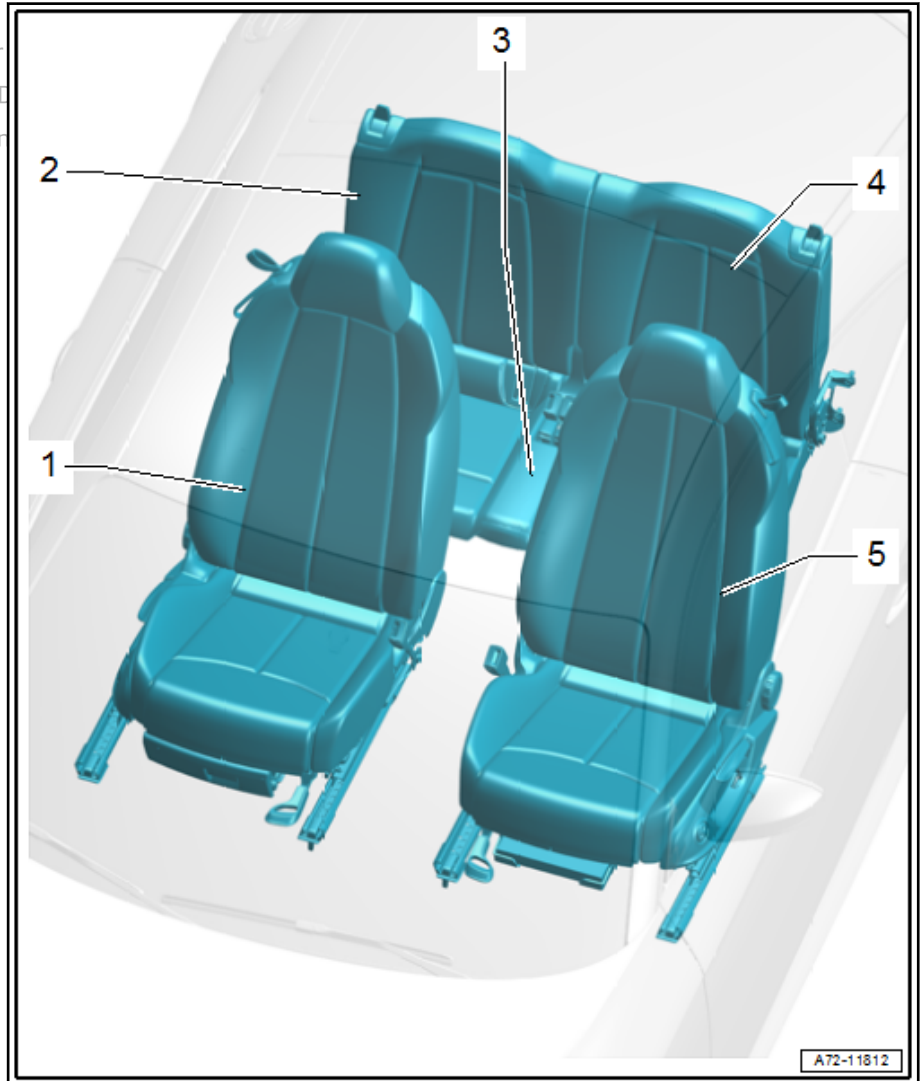
Assembly overview ⇒ [page 393](#)

### 5 - Driver seat

#### Sports seat/super sports seat

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric





- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Lumbar support
- ◆ Pneumatic system (super sports seat)
- ◆ Storage compartment
- ◆ Seat rake adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Seat depth adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Neck heating (super sports seat) - Roadster
- ◆ With manual/electric adjustment
  - Assembly overview ⇒ [page 312](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 2 Front seats

⇒ [o2.1 fitting locations - electrical and electronic components", page 309](#)

⇒ [o2.2 overview - front seat", page 312](#)

⇒ [o2.3 overview - backrest release mechanism and easy entry system", page 314](#)

⇒ [o2.4 overview - front seat backrest", page 316](#)

⇒ [o2.5 overview - seat pan", page 321](#)

⇒ [a2.6 and installing front seat", page 329](#)

⇒ [a2.7 and disconnecting airbag adapter", page 335](#)

⇒ [f2.8 front seat to seat repair stand", page 338](#)

⇒ [a2.9 and installing seat height adjuster", page 338](#)

⇒ [a2.10 and installing seat rake adjustment unit", page 340](#)

⇒ [a2.11 and installing backrest adjustment unit", page 342](#)

⇒ [a2.12 and installing front seat backrest", page 347](#)

⇒ [a2.13 and installing head restraint", page 358](#)

⇒ [a2.14 and installing head restraint guide", page 359](#)

⇒ [a2.15 and assembling seat pan", page 361](#)

⇒ [a2.16 and installing trim for backrest release mechanism", page 384](#)

⇒ [a2.17 and installing backrest release mechanism", page 385](#)

⇒ [a2.18 and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176/E177", page 389](#)

⇒ [a2.19 and installing lumbar support adjustment motor V125/V126/V129/V130", page 390](#)

### 2.1 Overview of fitting locations - electrical and electronic components

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.



**1 - Driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V31-
- Motor and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory; if defective, renew lower seat pan frame ⇒ [page 380](#)

**2 - Seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-**

- Country-specific version
- Passenger side only
- Clipped into storage compartment
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 169](#)

**3 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat -Z6-/heated backrest for driver seat -Z7-**

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat -Z8-/heated backrest for front passenger seat -Z9-
- Depending on version
- Removing and installing heater element ⇒ [page 425](#)

**4 - Driver side belt switch -E24-**

- Passenger side: front passenger side belt switch -E25-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.12 nd installing front belt buckle", page 102](#)

**5 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor -V45-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor -V46-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 320](#)

**6 - Lumbar support**

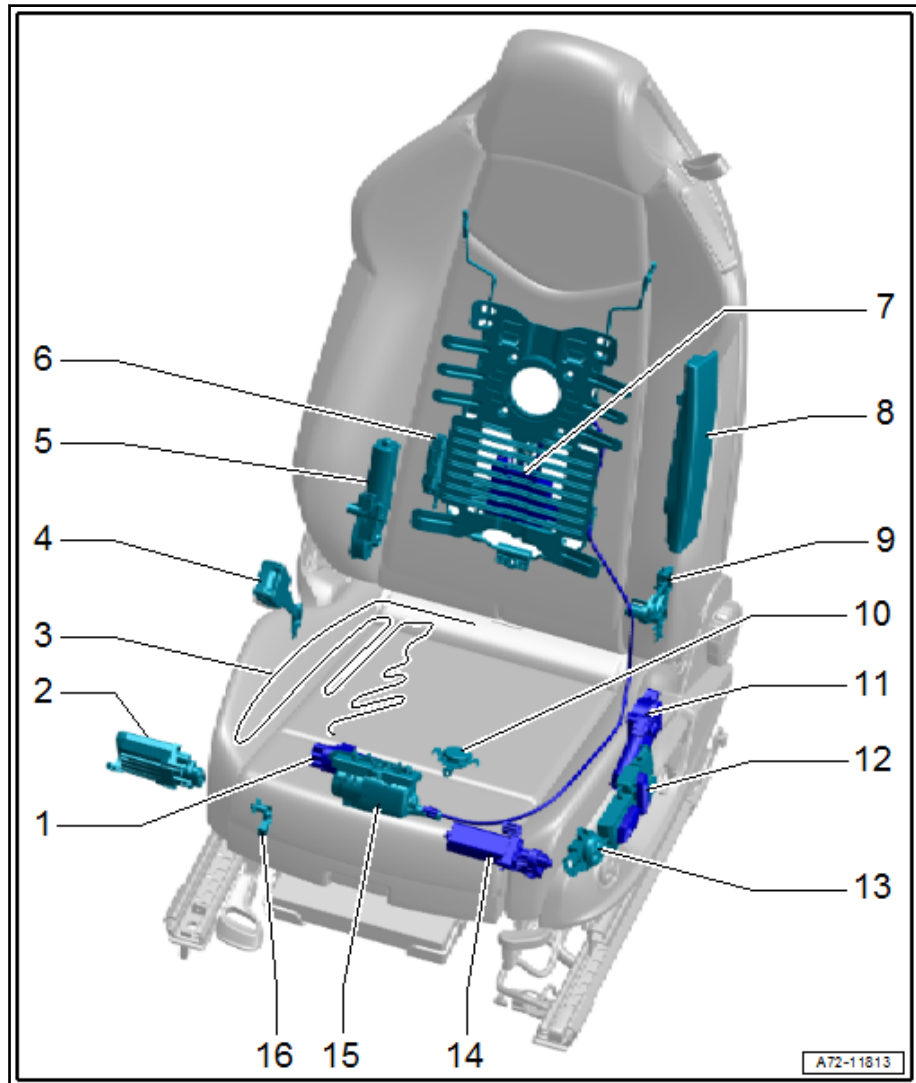
- Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125-/driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-/front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 390](#)

**7 - Control unit for driver multicontour seat -J873-**

- Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multicontour seat -J872-
- For front seat with pneumatic system only

**8 - Front side airbag**

- Driver side: with side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-
- Passenger side: with side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200-

**WARNING**

*Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components  
 ⇒ [page 3](#).*

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 133](#)

**9 - Driver seat backrest limit switch -E69-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 320](#)

**10 - Seat occupied sensor on front passenger side -G128-**

- Passenger side only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 175](#)
- Press clips on until they engage audibly

**11 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor -V246-
- Not available as a separate part; if defective, renew upper seat pan frame ⇒ [a2.15.12 nd installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment](#)", [page 380](#)

**12 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit -E470-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit -E471-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 321](#)

**13 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 321](#)

**14 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor -V244-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 326](#)

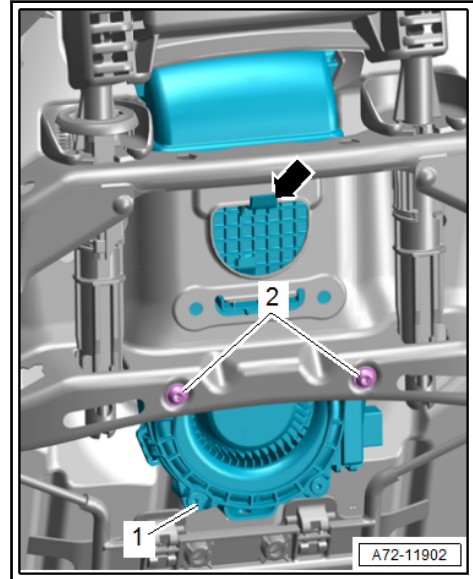
**15 - Compressor for multicontour driver seat -V439-**

- Passenger side: compressor for multicontour front passenger seat -V440-
- For front seat with pneumatic system only

**16 - Driver side seat position sensor -G553-**

- Passenger side: front passenger side seat position sensor -G554-
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 169](#)

**Neck heating for Roadster (depending on equipment version)**



1 - Blower for neck heating -V450-/-V451-

2 - Bolts

Assembly overview ⇒ [page 320](#)

## 2.2 Assembly overview - front seat

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Cover**

- For seat rail
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 363](#)
- Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

**2 - Bolt**

- 4x
- 40 Nm

**3 - Spindle cover**

- For seat rail
- 2x
- Slide onto spindle carefully until it engages audibly

**4 - Belt buckle**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 102](#)

**5 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 366](#)

**6 - Sports seat/super sports seat**

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- ◆ Seat/backrest heating
- ◆ Lumbar support
- ◆ Pneumatic system (super sports seat)
- ◆ Storage compartment (front passenger seat)
- ◆ Child seat anchor (front passenger seat)
- ◆ Seat rake adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Seat depth adjustment (super sports seat)
- ◆ Neck heating (super sports seat) - Roadster
- ◆ With manual/electric adjustment
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 329](#)

**7 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system**

- TT Coupé only
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 314](#)

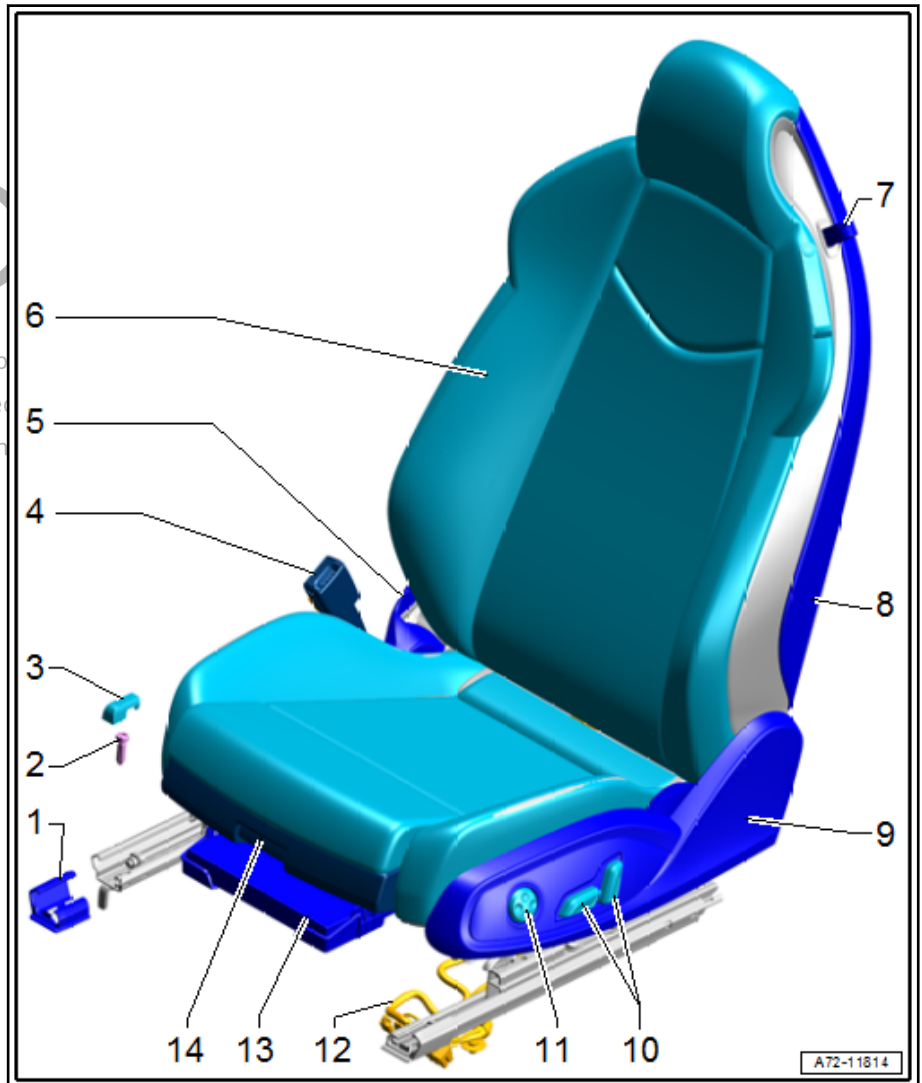
**8 - Backrest cover panel**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 349](#)

**9 - Seat side trim (sill side)**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 365](#)

**10 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit -E470-**





- Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit -E471-
- Depending on version
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 321](#)

#### 11 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
- Version with pneumatic seat (driver side): switch module for driver seat -E663-
- Version with pneumatic seat (front passenger side): switch module for front passenger seat -E664-
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 389](#)

#### 12 - Electrical connector

- Route wiring with protective sleeve
- Removing individual wire ⇒ [page 361](#)

#### 13 - Retainer for Owner's Manual

- Passenger side: storage compartment/fire extinguisher
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.15.5 nd installing retainer for Owner's Manual/bracket for fire extinguisher/storage compartment", page 367](#)

#### 14 - Seat depth adjuster

- For super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 370](#)

## 2.3 Assembly overview - backrest release mechanism and easy entry system

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**1 - Eyelet**

- Attach at pin for backrest release mechanism

**2 - Rivet**

- 2x

**3 - Bowden cable mounting**

- Clip onto outer backrest frame

**4 - Outer backrest frame**

**5 - Mounting for trim**

- For sports seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.17 nd installing backrest release mechanism](#), page 385

**6 - Trim for backrest release mechanism**

- For sports seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 384](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**7 - Trim for backrest release mechanism**

- For super sports seat
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 384](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**8 - Pull strap**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.17 nd installing backrest release mechanism](#), page 385

**9 - Bracket**

- For pull strap
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.17 nd installing backrest release mechanism](#), page 385

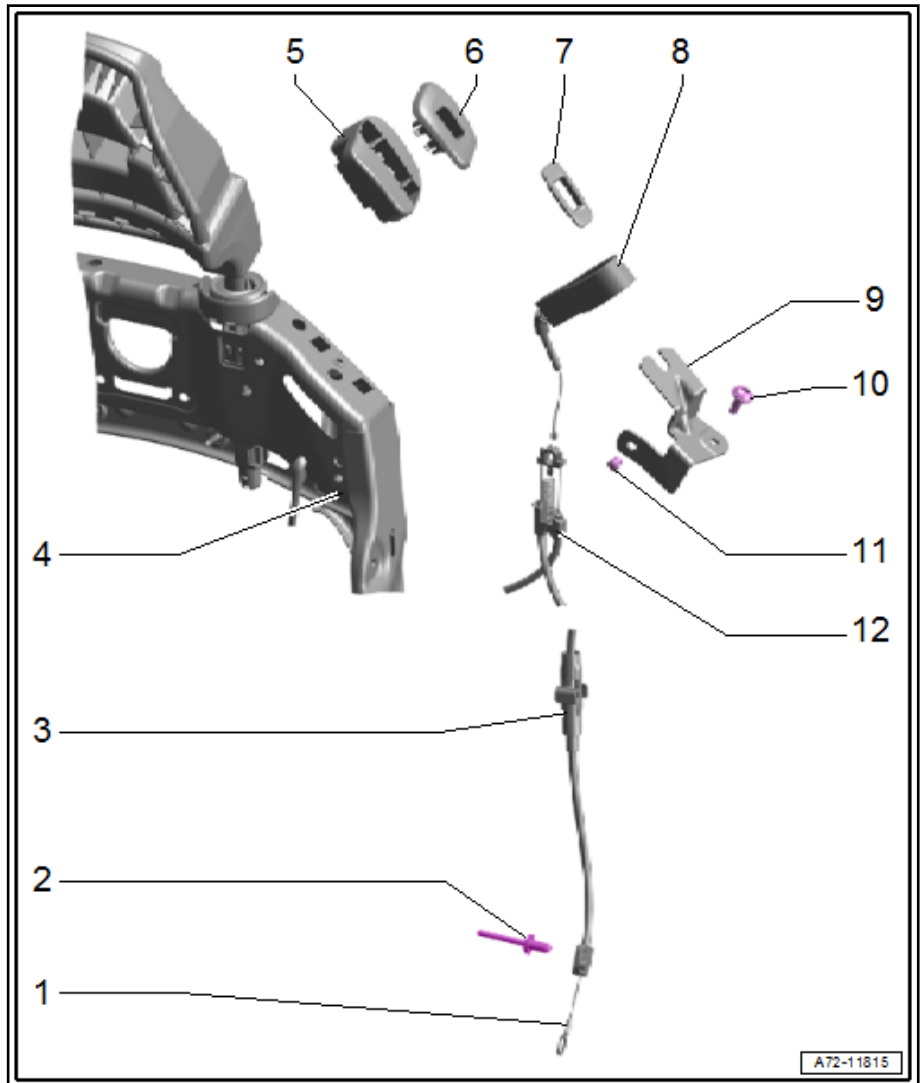
**10 - Bolt**

- 5 Nm

**11 - Fastener**

**12 - Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism**

- One-piece
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 385](#)
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## 2.4 Assembly overview - front seat backrest

⇒ [o2.4.1 verview - front seat backrest", page 316](#)

⇒ [o2.4.2 verview - front seat backrest cover panel", page 318](#)

⇒ [o2.4.3 verview - front backrest adjustment motor", page 320](#)

⇒ [o2.4.4 verview - neck heating", page 320](#)

### 2.4.1 Assembly overview - front seat backrest

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Rivet**

- For lumbar support

**2 - Lumbar support/spring mat**

- Driver side: with driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125-/driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-/front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-
- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 390](#)
- Pneumatic system ⇒ [o4.2 verview - pneumatic system", page 404](#)

**3 - Bolt**

- 2x
- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- 33 Nm

**4 - Upholstery wire**

- 2x

**5 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 5 Nm

**6 - Outer backrest frame**

**7 - Head restraint guide**

- Without release button
- Always fitted on inside of backrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 359](#)

**8 - Head restraint guide**

- With release button
- Always fitted on outside of backrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 359](#)

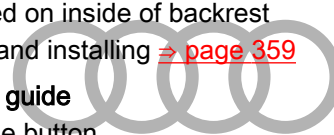
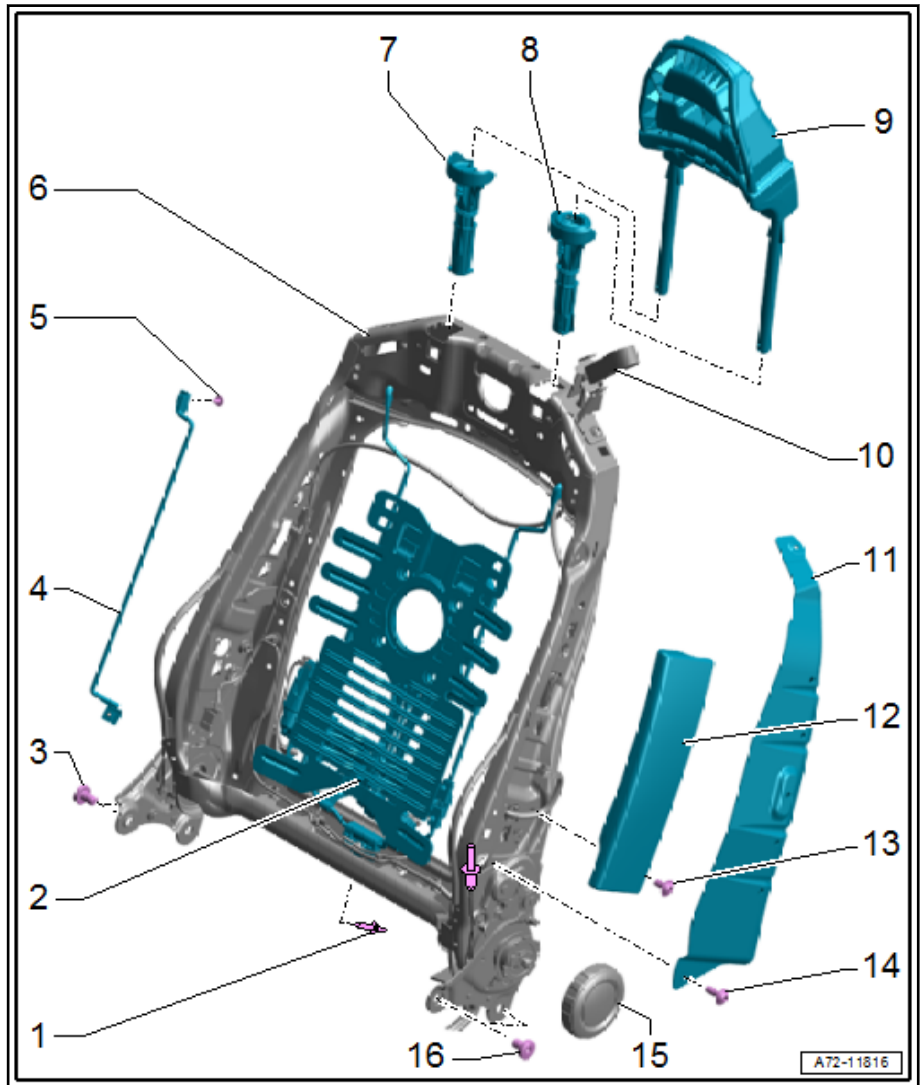
**9 - Head restraint**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 358](#)
- Must be properly locked in head restraint guides

**10 - Backrest release mechanism/Easy Entry system**

- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 314](#)

**11 - Guide plate for side airbag**

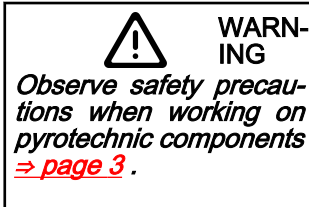


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Super sports seat only
- Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 133](#)

## 12 - Front side airbag



- Assembly overview ⇒ [page 133](#)

## 13 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 5 \(page 134\)](#)

## 14 - Bolt

- Not available separately; repair set ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 134\)](#)

## 15 - Hand wheel

- For backrest adjustment
- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 342](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

## 16 - Bolt

- 2x
- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- 33 Nm

## 2.4.2 Assembly overview - front seat backrest cover panel

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Backrest cover panel (sports seat)**

- Depending on equipment version: Luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 349](#)
- Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press on until it engages audibly

**2 - Backrest cover panel (super sports seat)**

- Depending on equipment version: Luggage net cannot be separated from backrest cover panel
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 351](#)
- Hook in at outer backrest frame (bottom) and press on until it engages audibly

**3 - Side trim**

- Super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.12.3 nd installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat", page 351](#)

**4 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm

**5 - Trim for backrest release mechanism**

**6 - Bolt**

- 5 Nm

**7 - Clip**

**8 - Side bolster**

- Super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 353](#)

**9 - Bolt**

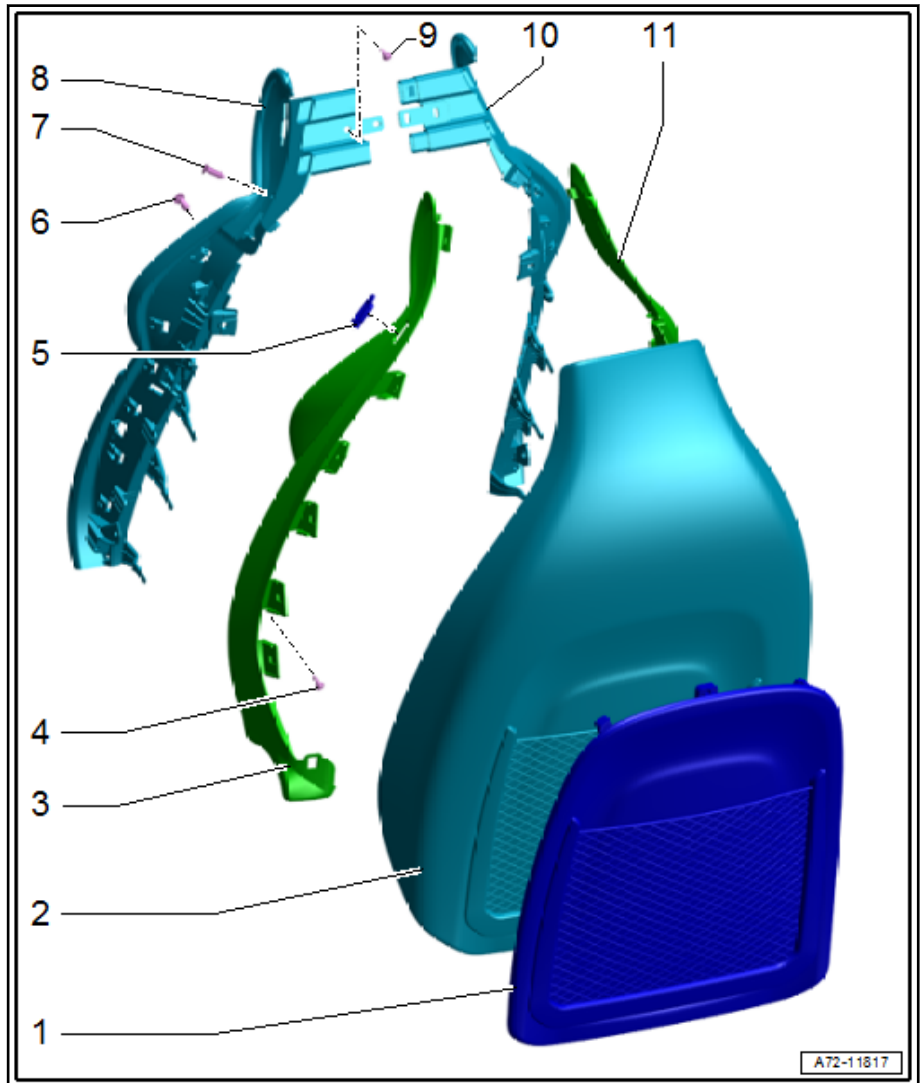
- 5 Nm

**10 - Side bolster**

- Super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 353](#)

**11 - Side trim**

- Super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.12.3 nd installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat", page 351](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 2.4.3 Assembly overview - front backrest adjustment motor

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

#### 1 - Adjusting shaft

#### 2 - Bolt

- 7.5 Nm

#### 3 - Driver seat backrest adjustment motor -V45-

- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest adjustment motor -V46-
- Removing and installing => [page 343](#)

#### 4 - Outer backrest frame

#### 5 - Electrical connector

#### 6 - Electrical connector

#### 7 - Driver seat backrest limit switch -E69-

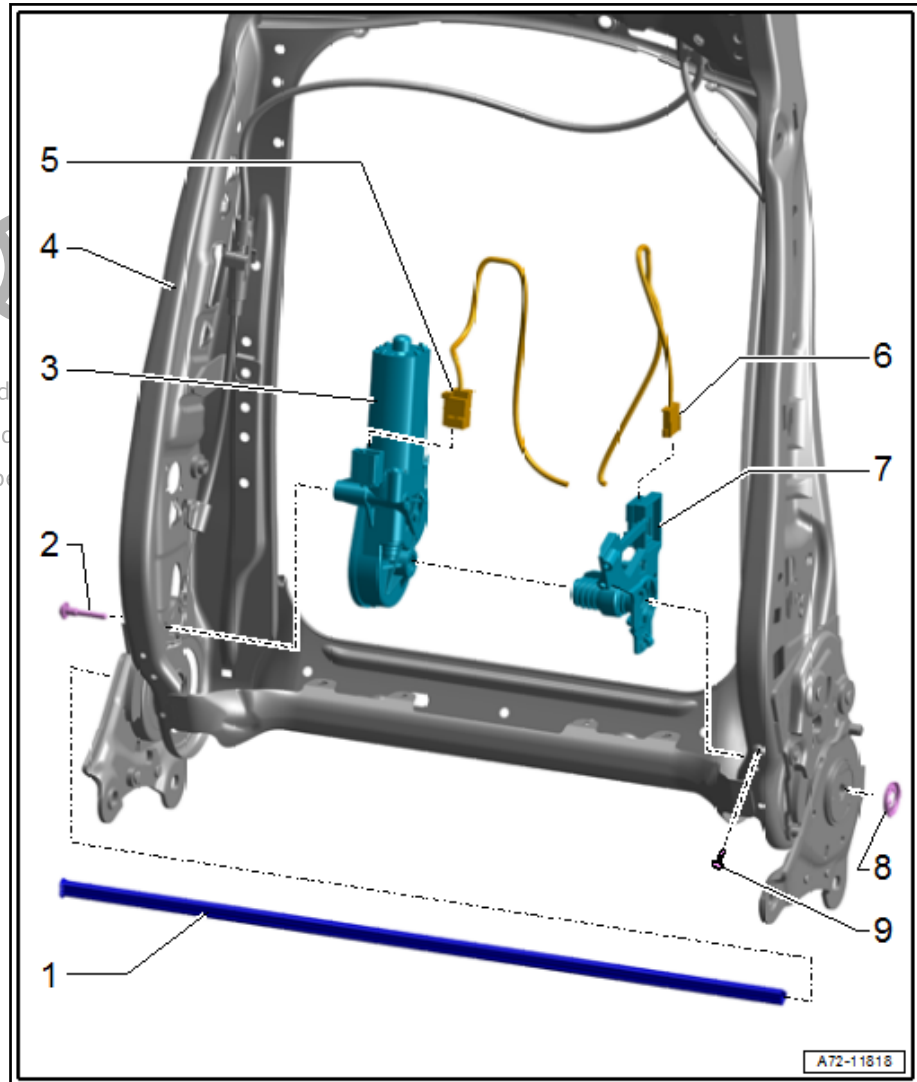
- Passenger side: front passenger seat backrest limit switch -E70-
- Depending on version
- Removing and installing => [page 343](#)

#### 8 - Clamping washer

- Renew after removing
- Press onto adjuster shaft so that there is at least 1.0 mm of clearance

#### 9 - Bolt

- 4 Nm



### 2.4.4 Assembly overview - neck heating

**1 - Neck heating**

- Driver side: blower for left neck heating -V450-
- Passenger side: blower for right neck heating - V451-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 357](#)
- Engage in outer backrest frame

**2 - Vent for neck heating**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.12.6 nd installing blower for neck heating V450/V451", page 357](#)
- Clipped into air duct
- Push on until it engages audibly

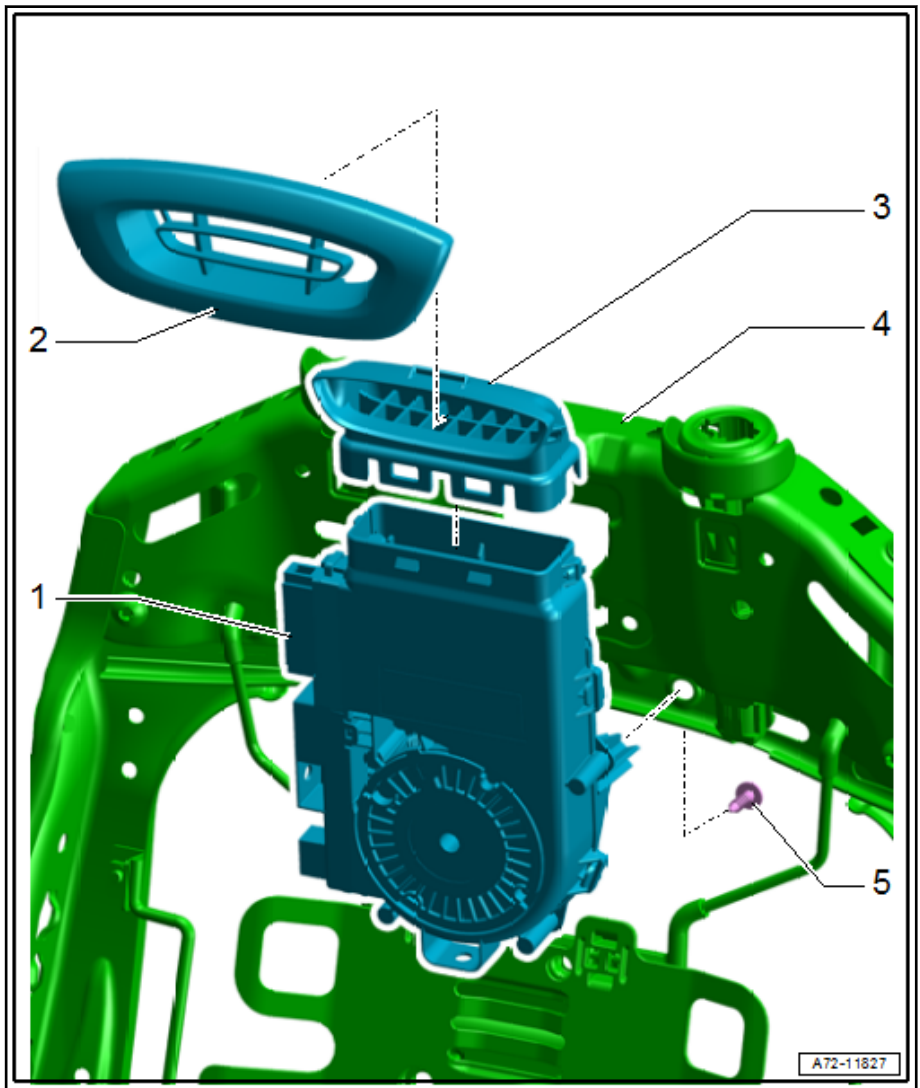
**3 - Air duct**

- Clipped into neck heating
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.12.6 nd installing blower for neck heating V450/V451", page 357](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**4 - Outer backrest frame**

**5 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm



**2.5 Assembly overview - seat pan**

⇒ [o2.5.1 verview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)", page 321](#)

⇒ [o2.5.2 verview - seat pan", page 323](#)

⇒ [o2.5.3 verview - seat pan, storage compartment/fire extinguisher", page 325](#)

⇒ [o2.5.4 verview - seat pan, seat height adjuster", page 325](#)

⇒ [o2.5.5 verview - seat pan, seat rake adjuster", page 326](#)

⇒ [o2.5.6 verview - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster", page 327](#)

**2.5.1 Assembly overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim (sill/tunnel side)**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



**1 - Seat side trim (sill side)**

- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 365](#)

**2 - Driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 389](#)

**3 - Bolt**

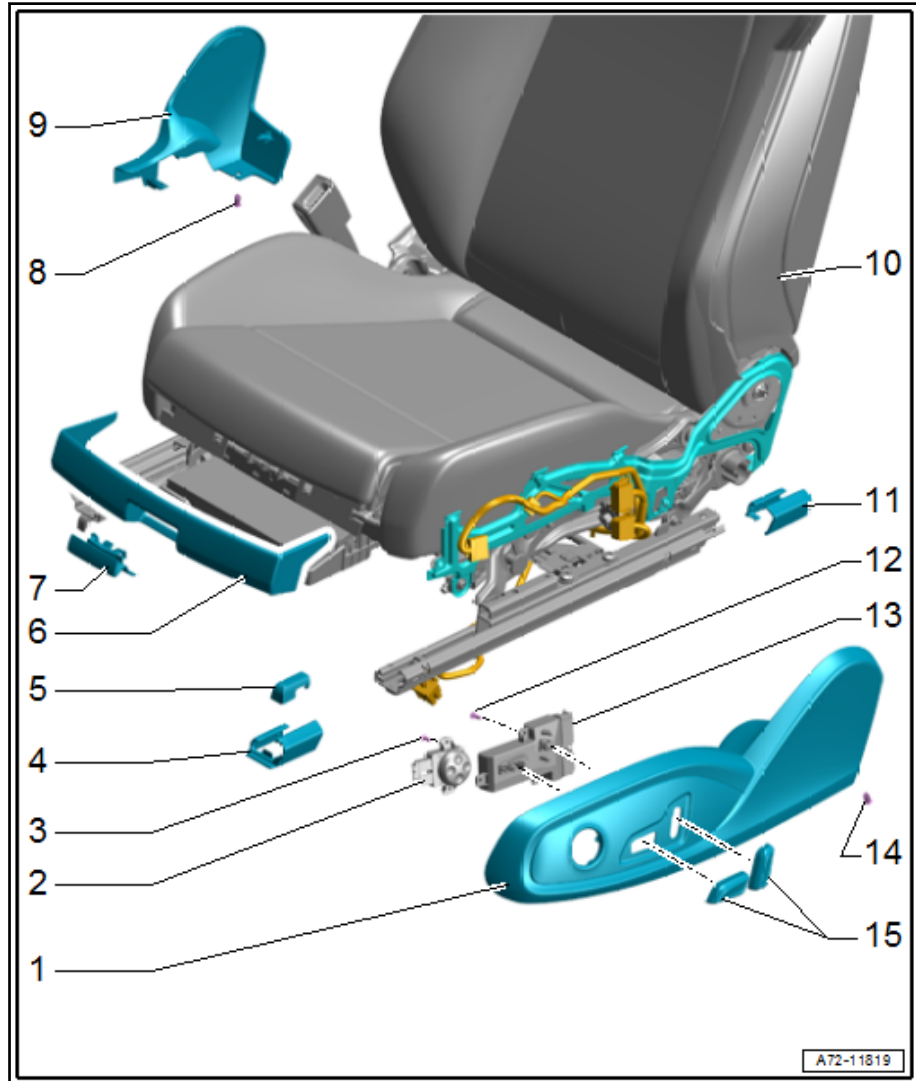
- 2x
- 1.8 Nm

**4 - Cover (front)**

- For seat rail
- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 363](#)
- Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

**5 - Spindle cover**

- For seat rail
- 2x
- Slide onto spindle carefully until it engages audibly

**6 - Trim for seat depth adjuster**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**7 - Grip for seat depth adjuster**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 369](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

**8 - Spreader rivet****9 - Seat side trim (tunnel side)**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 366](#)

**10 - Front seat****11 - Cover (rear)**

- For seat rail
- 2x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 363](#)
- Slide onto seat rail carefully until it engages audibly

**12 - Bolt**

- 3x
- 1.8 Nm

**13 - Driver seat adjustment operating unit -E470-**



- With:
- ◆ Driver seat backrest adjustment switch -E96-
- ◆ Driver seat rake adjustment switch -E222-
- ◆ Driver seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E363-
- ◆ Driver seat height adjustment switch -E364-
  - Passenger side: front passenger seat adjustment operating unit -E471- with:
- ◆ Front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment switch -E64-
- ◆ Front passenger seat backrest adjustment switch -E98-
- ◆ Front passenger seat rake adjustment button -E334-
- ◆ Front passenger seat height adjustment switch -E365-
  - Depending on version
  - Removing and installing ⇒ [page 382](#)

#### 14 - Spreader rivet

#### 15 - Actuator

- For seat adjustment
- Depending on version
- Clipped onto operating unit
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.15.13 nd installing seat adjustment operating unit E470/E471", page 382](#)
- Push on until it engages audibly

## 2.5.2 Assembly overview - seat pan

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.



**1 - Retainer for Owner's Manual**

- Passenger side: storage compartment/fire extinguisher
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 367](#)

**2 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm

**3 - Seat depth adjuster**

- For super sports seat only
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 370](#)

**4 - Nut**

- 4x
- Renew after removing

**5 - Spacer bush**

- 2x

**6 - Bolt**

- 4x
- Renew after removing
- Insert bolt with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- 6.5 Nm

**7 - Upholstery wire**

- 2x

**8 - Fastener****9 - Seat pan**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**10 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm
- Tightening torque for child seat anchor ⇒ [Item 4 \(page 104\)](#)

**11 - Cross-piece**

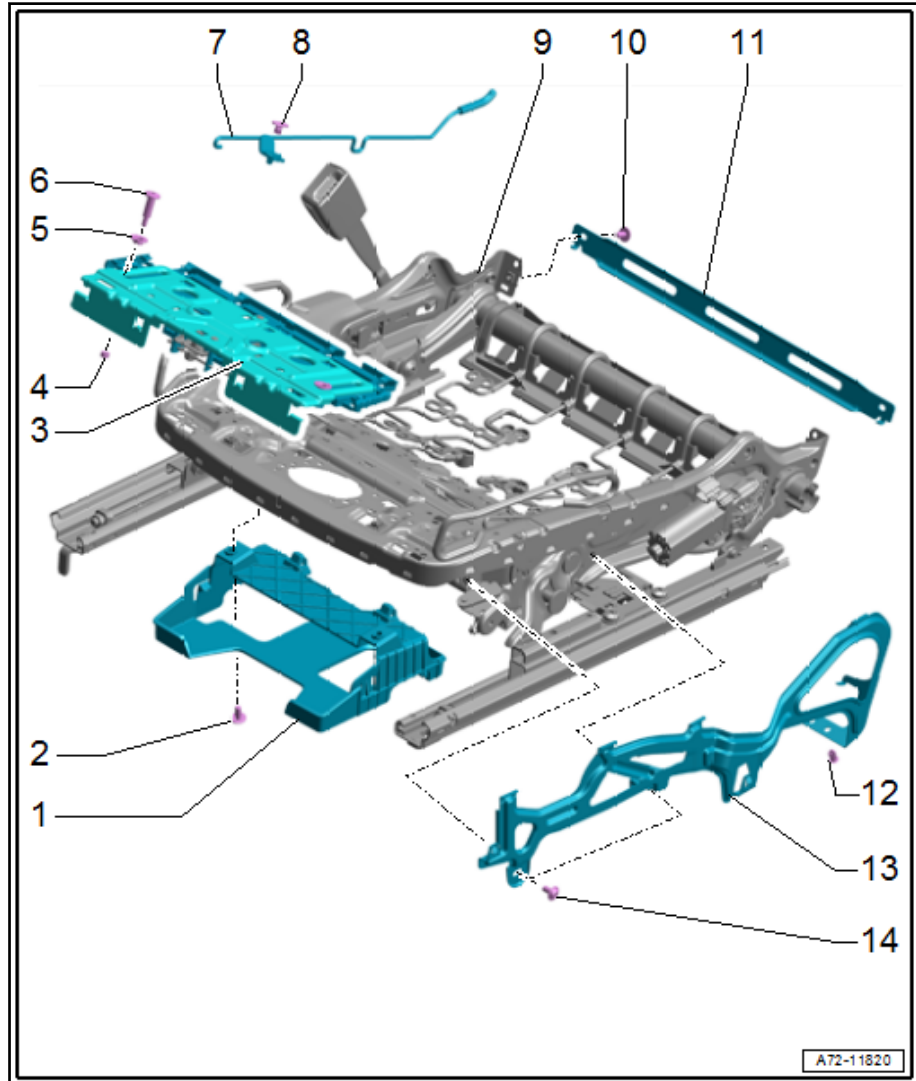
- Passenger side: child seat anchor (equipment version)

**12 - Spreader rivet****13 - Bracket**

- For seat side trim (sill side)
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.15.3 nd installing seat side trim \(sill side\)", page 365](#)

**14 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 2.5.3 Assembly overview - seat pan, storage compartment/fire extinguisher

The overview is shown for a left-hand drive vehicle as an example.

#### 1 - Mounting for fire extinguisher

- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 367](#)

#### 2 - Bracket for fire extinguisher

- Depending on version
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 367](#)

#### 3 - Bolt

- 4x
- 6.5 Nm

#### 4 - Speed nut

- 4x
- Inserted in seat pan
- Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

#### 5 - Speed nut

- 2x
- Inserted in seat pan
- Renew speed nuts if damaged or deformed

#### 6 - Bolt

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm

#### 7 - Storage compartment

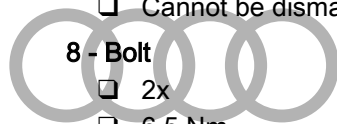
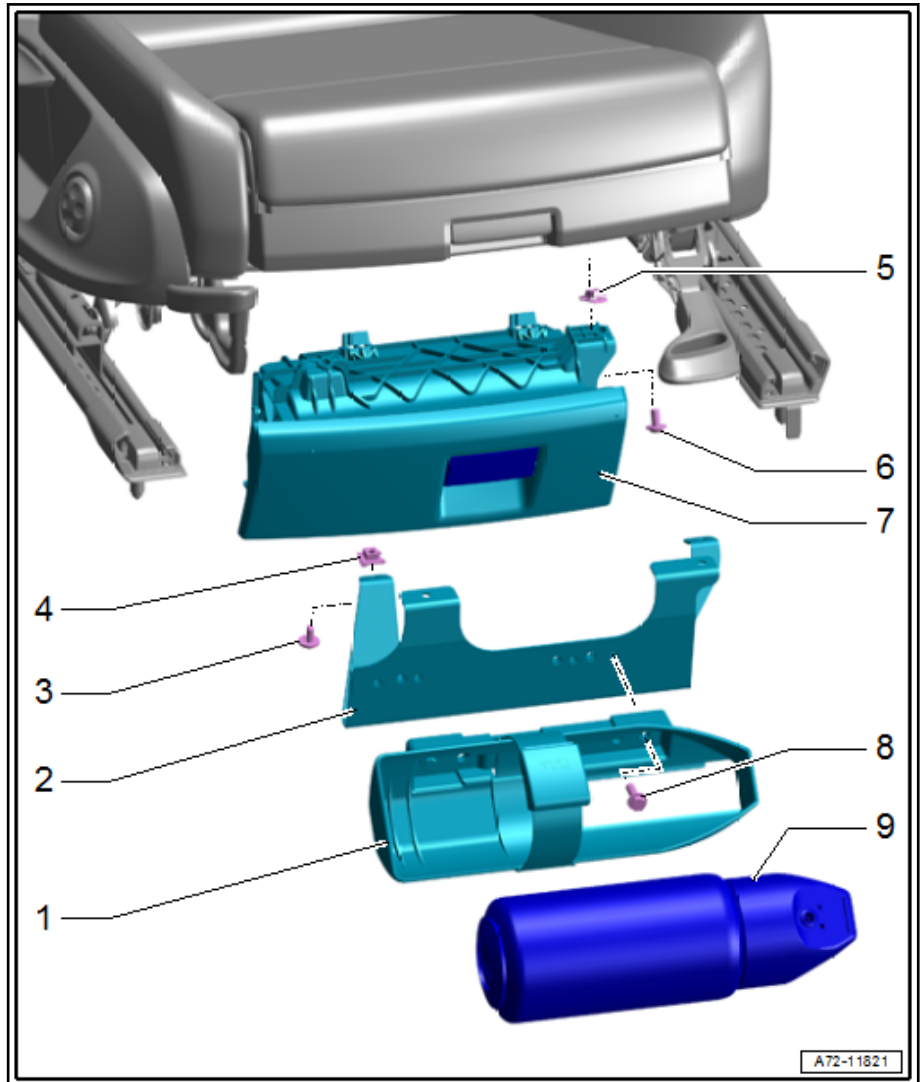
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 367](#)
- Depending on version
- Cannot be dismantled

#### 8 - Bolt

- 2x
- 6.5 Nm

#### 9 - Fire extinguisher

- Depending on version



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 2.5.4 Assembly overview - seat pan, seat height adjuster

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Seat height adjustment lever**

- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.9 nd installing seat height adjuster](#), page 338
- With lug for locking seat height adjuster

**2 - Bolts**

- Note difference to length of bolt -item 3-
- 5 Nm

**3 - Bolts**

- Note difference to length of bolts -item 2-
- 5 Nm

**4 - Seat height adjuster**

- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 338](#)
- Tab must engage in lug on lever

**5 - Driver seat height adjustment motor -V245-**

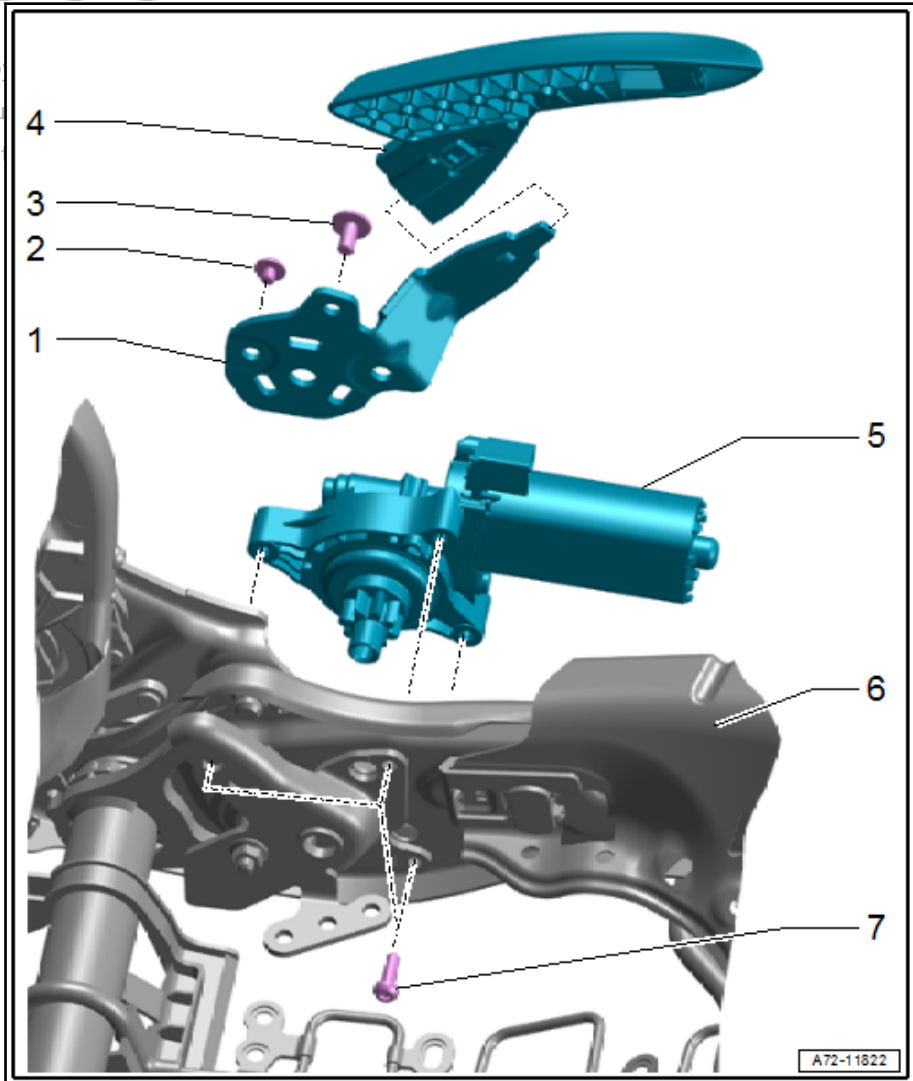
- Passenger side: front passenger seat height adjustment motor - V246-
- Front seat with electric adjustment
- Not available as a separate part; if defective, renew upper seat pan frame ⇒ [a2.15.12 nd installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment](#), page 380

**6 - Seat pan**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**7 - Bolt**

- 3x
- 7.5 Nm



**2.5.5 Assembly overview - seat pan, seat rake adjuster**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

**1 - Bolt**

- 2x
- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- 10 Nm

**2 - Driver seat rake adjustment motor -V243-**

- Passenger side: front passenger seat rake adjustment motor - V244-
- Front seat with electric adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 341](#)

**3 - Bolt**

- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- 20 Nm

**4 - Seat pan**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

**5 - Seat rake adjustment handle**

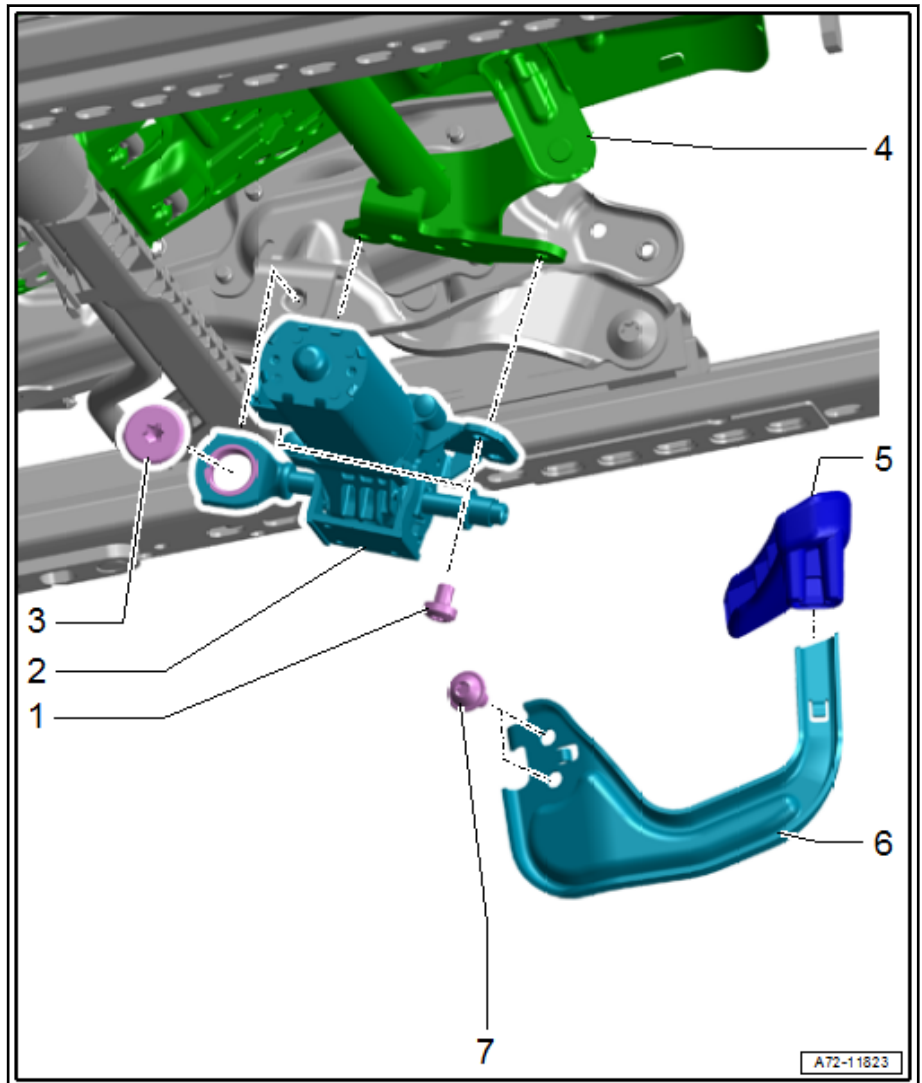
- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 340](#)

**6 - Seat rake adjustment lever**

- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 340](#)
- With lug for locking seat height adjuster

**7 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 5 Nm



**2.5.6 Assembly overview - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster**

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Seat longitudinal adjustment handle**

- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 374](#)

**2 - Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjuster**

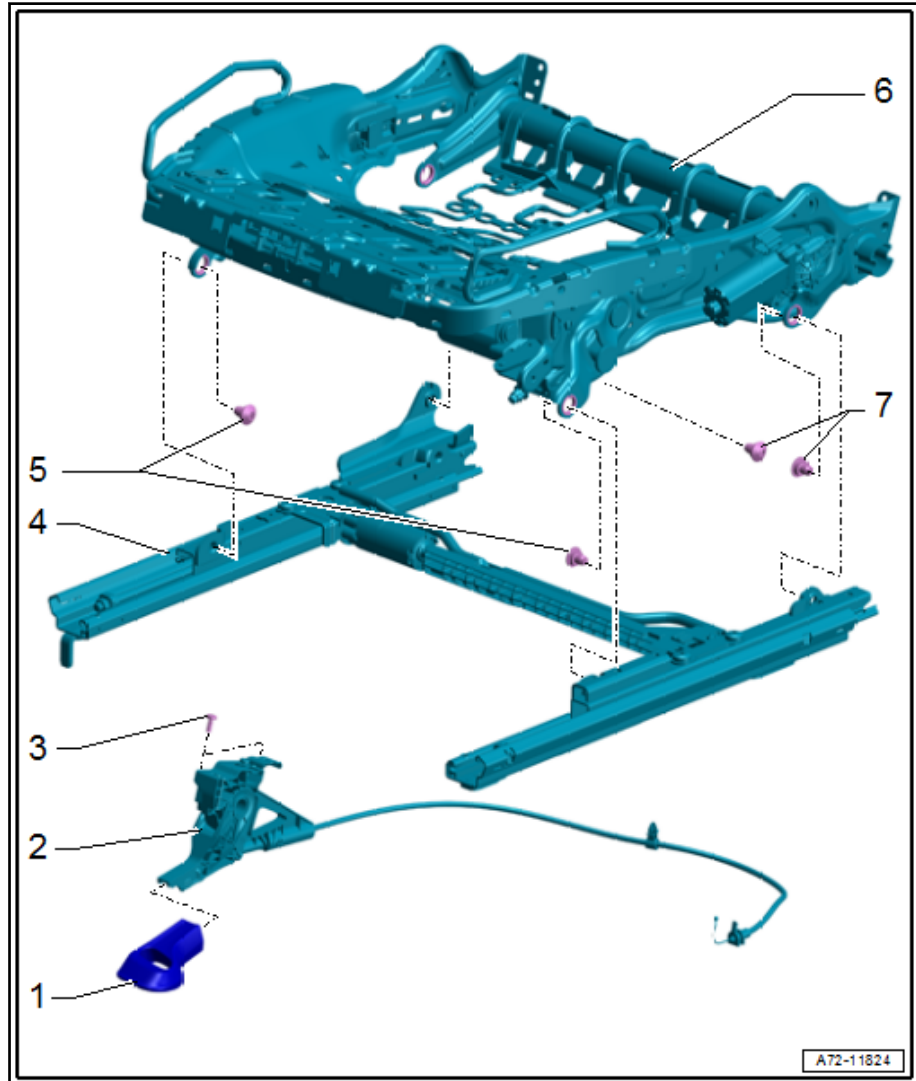
- Combined unit
- Front seat with manual adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 375](#)

**3 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm

**4 - Lower seat pan frame**

- Driver side: with driver seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28-
- Passenger side: with front passenger seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V31-
- Cannot be dismantled; motor and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory
- Front seat with electric adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 380](#)
- When renewing, fit belt buckle in new lower frame

**5 - Bolts**

- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- 22 Nm

**6 - Upper seat pan frame**

- Front seat with electric adjustment
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 378](#)
- When renewing, fit electrical and electronic components and wiring removed earlier in new upper frame

**7 - Bolts**

- Self-locking
- Renew after removing
- Clean threaded hole for bolt using e.g. a thread tap
- 22 Nm



## 2.6 Removing and installing front seat

⇒ [a2.6.1 nd installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment", page 329](#)

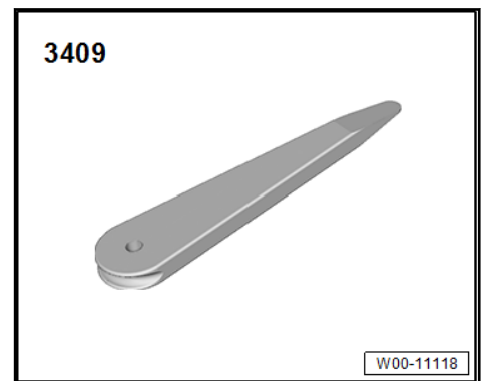
⇒ [f2.6.2 ront seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective", page 333](#)

### 2.6.1 Removing and installing front seat with manual/electric adjustment

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

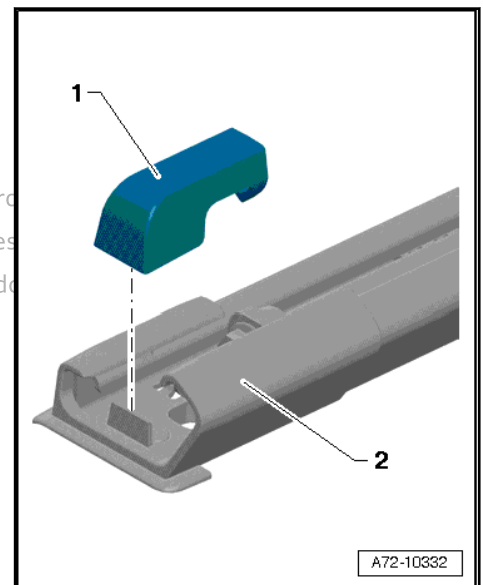


- ◆ Protector -VAS 871 001-

#### Removing



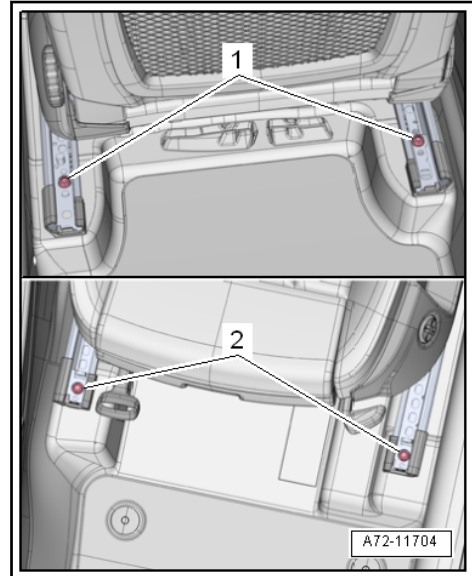
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

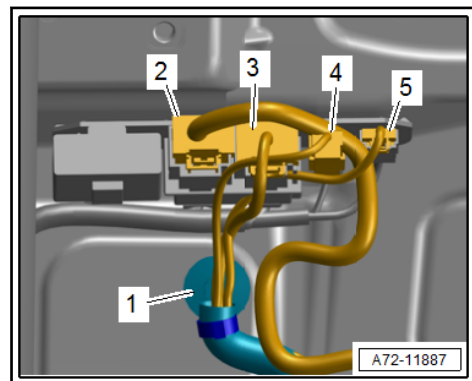
- Using removal wedge -3409-, prise spindle cover (front) -1- off seat rail cover -2- and spindle for seat longitudinal adjustment.
- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Remove bolts -1- from rear of seat rail.



- Move front seat as far back and down as it will go.
- Remove bolts -2- from front of seat rail.
- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire  
⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Audi reserves all rights. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Tilt front seat to rear.
- Remove cover and fold open cut-out in floor covering.



- Unclip cable retainer -1-.

**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release retaining tabs and unplug electrical connectors at coupling station in floor:



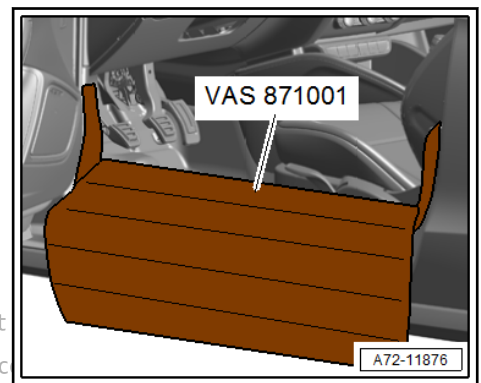
- 2 - Equipment version with seat heating
- 3 - Power supply
- 4 - Side airbag
- 5 - Belt buckle
- Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ [page 335](#) .

**i** Note

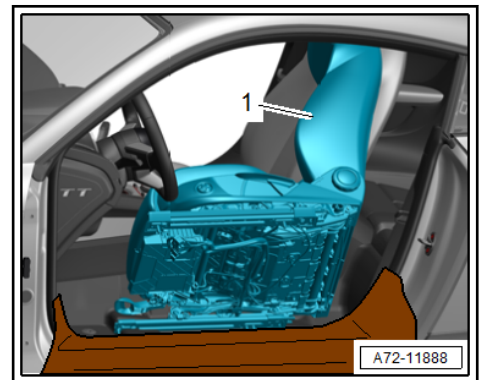
- ◆ *The coupling station is located in the vehicle floor at the side member under the front section of the seat.*
- ◆ *Pin assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations*
- Before lifting out front seat, attach protector -VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel moulding.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Tilt top of front seat -1- towards centre of vehicle.



- Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
- To do so, take hold of front seat at seat rail (bottom) and carefully lift it over sill panel moulding and out of vehicle.

## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

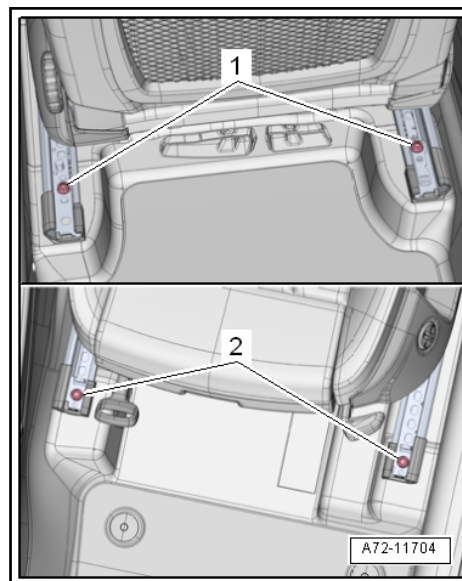
- Install front seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6282- ⇒ [page 335](#).



### Note

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

- Plug in electrical connectors at coupling station connections in floor.
- Align front seat in vehicle and tighten bolts -2- at front of seat rail.



- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Fit and tighten bolts -1- at rear of seat rail.




### WARNING

**The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the content of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

 **WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

 **Note**

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 overview - front seat](#), page 312


## 2.6.2 Removing front seat with electric adjustment if seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Protector -VAS 871 001-

### Checking seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28-/V31-

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.

 **Note**

*To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the electrical/electronic components and wiring before removing the front seat any further.*

- Perform the following checks:
  - ◆ Check fuse ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.



- ◆ Check voltage at coupling station and perform Fault Finding if necessary ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- ◆ Check voltage at seat longitudinal adjustment motor ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- If fuse is defective, it must be renewed ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Repair or renew wire if there is no voltage at coupling station ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- If seat longitudinal adjustment motor is defective, lower seat pan frame must be renewed ⇒ [page 380](#)

**Removing if seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28-/V31- is defective**

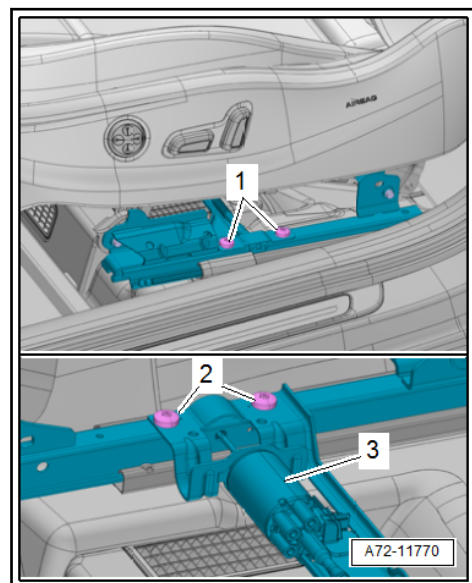
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



**WARNING**

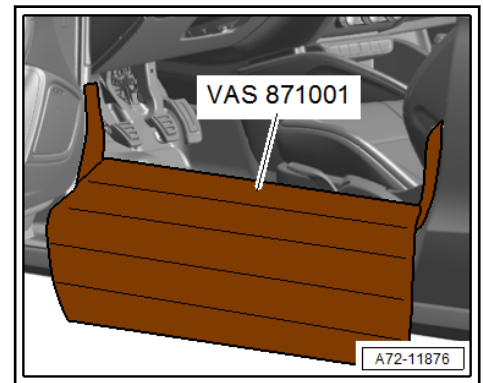
*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- With ignition switched on, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.
- Unplug electrical connectors from coupling station in floor and plug in airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connector for side airbag ⇒ [page 335](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.
- Unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.

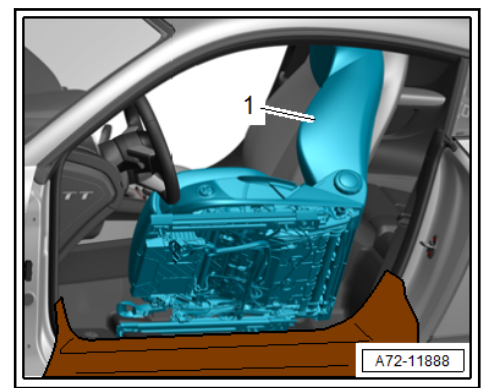


- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and remove defective seat longitudinal adjustment motor -3- with bracket.
- Push front seat towards front/rear and unscrew accessible bolts for seat rails at console.

- Before lifting out front seat, attach protector -VAS 871 001- as shown in illustration to protect sill panel moulding.



- Tilt top of front seat -1- towards centre of vehicle.

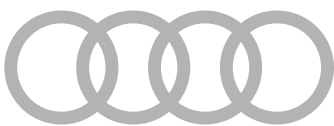
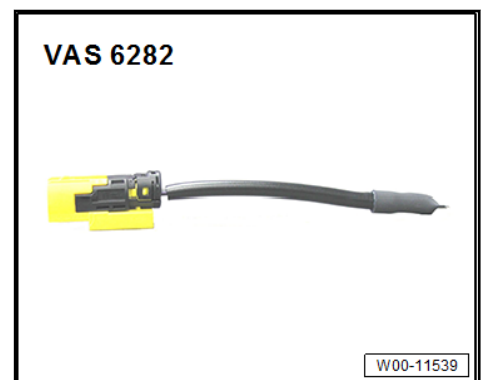


- Lift front seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.
- To do so, take hold of front seat at seat rail (bottom) and carefully lift it over sill panel moulding and out of vehicle.
- Renew lower seat pan frame with seat longitudinal adjustment motor => [page 380](#) .

## 2.7 Connecting and disconnecting airbag adapter

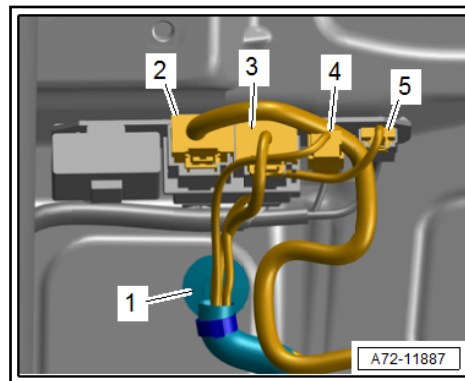
### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag adapter -VAS 6282-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Unplugging airbag connector



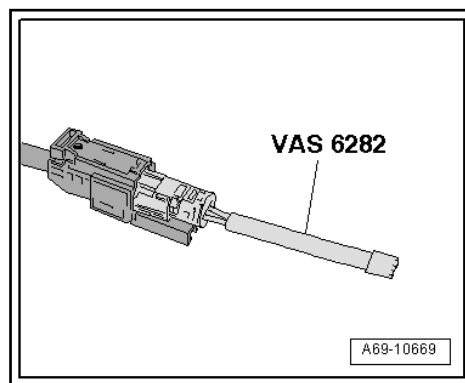
- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Remove cover and fold open cut-out in floor covering.
- Unclip cable retainer -1-.



### WARNING

- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 3.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Release retaining tab and unplug electrical connector -4- for side airbag at coupling station.
- 2 - Equipment version with seat heating  
3 - Power supply  
5 - Belt buckle
- Plug in connector of airbag adapter -VAS 6282- at electrical connection for side airbag.




### Caution

**Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6282- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.**

 Note

*Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.*

Plugging in airbag connector


 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Plug in airbag connectors in reverse order; note the following:


 Note

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

 **WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

 **WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

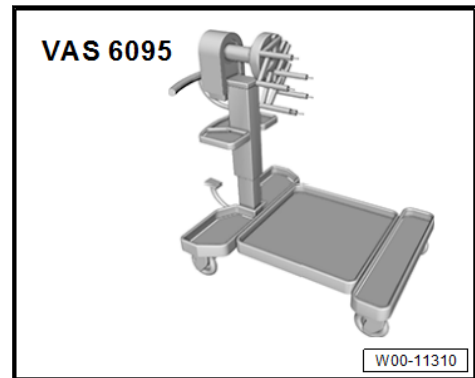
 Note

*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

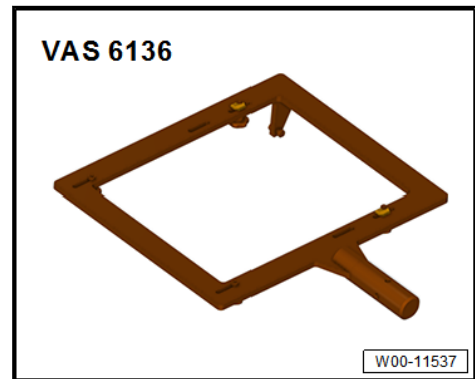
## 2.8 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- ◆ Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



### Procedure

- Front seat removed from vehicle
- Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-.
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-.

## 2.9 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.



### Note

*Only the seat height adjuster (handle) can be removed and installed.*

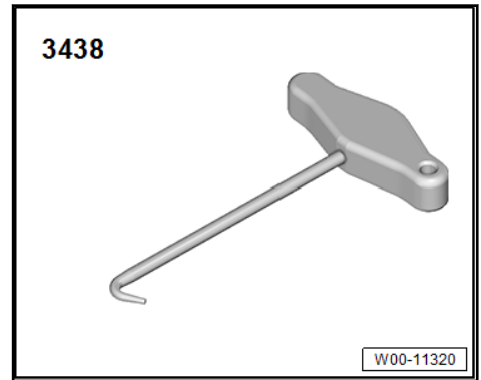
### Special tools and workshop equipment required



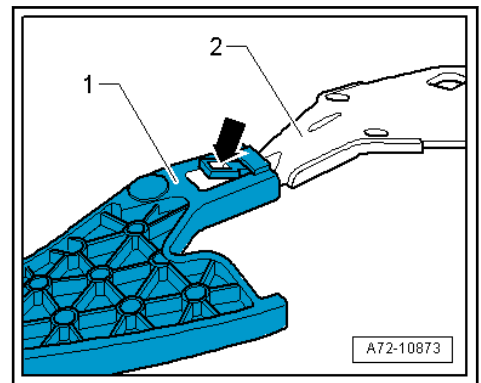
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Hook -3438-



Removing



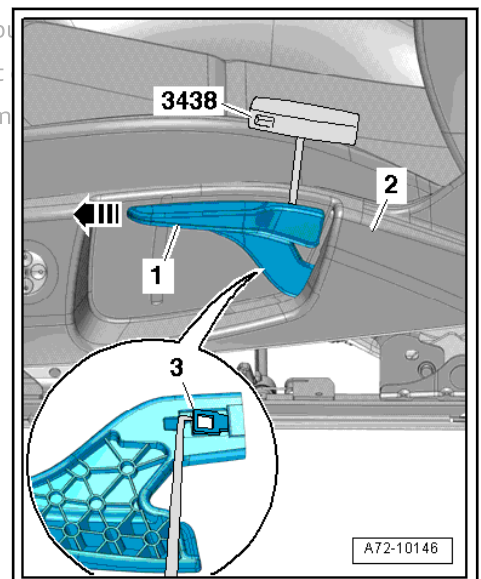
**Caution**

*Risk of irreparable damage to seat height adjuster if it is not removed correctly.*

- ◆ *Remove seat height adjuster -1- as described; do NOT knock it off lever -2-.*
- ◆ *Renew seat height adjuster if lug -arrow- is damaged*

- Pull up seat height adjuster -1- slightly and hold in this position.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



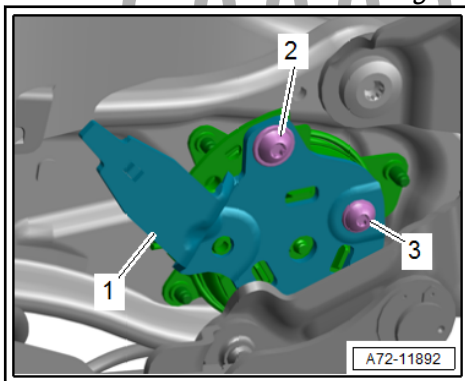


- Pull seat height adjuster as far as possible off front seat.
- Insert hook -3438- between seat height adjuster and seat side trim -2-.
- Release tab -3- with hook -3438- and at the same time pull seat height adjuster off lever in direction of -arrow-.
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .



**Note**

*Bolt -2- and bolt -3- have different lengths.*



g for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not  
AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability  
of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove bolts -2, 3-.
- Detach seat height adjustment lever -1-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.4 verview - seat pan, seat height adjuster](#), [page 325](#)**

## 2.10 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

⇒ [a2.10.1 nd installing seat rake adjustment handle/lever](#), [page 340](#)

⇒ [a2.10.2 nd installing seat rake adjustment unit](#), [page 341](#)

### 2.10.1 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment handle/lever

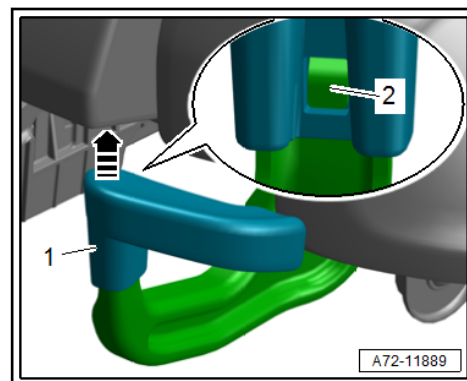
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.



**Note**

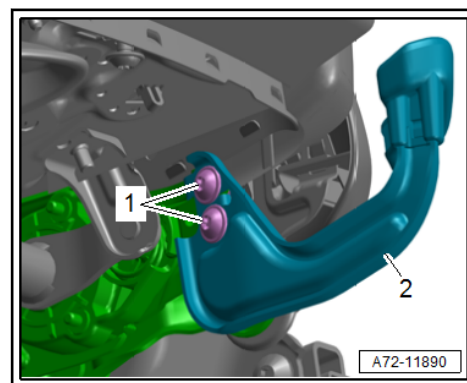
*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*

### Removing seat rake adjustment handle:



- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
- Press retaining hook -2- as far as stop with a small flat-bladed screwdriver and at the same time pull seat rake adjustment handle -1- off lever in direction of -arrow-.

### Removing seat rake adjustment lever:



- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
- Remove bolts -1- and detach seat rake adjustment lever -2-.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.5 verview - seat pan, seat rake adjuster](#), [page 326](#)**

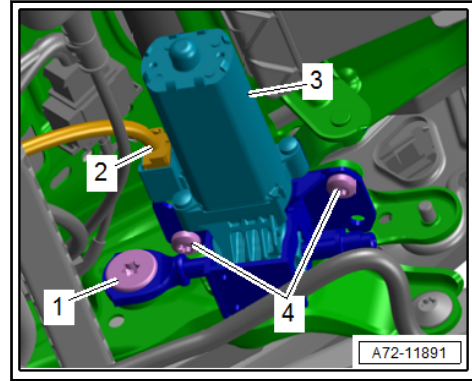
## 2.10.2 Removing and installing seat rake adjustment unit

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing

- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Unbolt front seat and tilt to rear ⇒ [page 329](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. ⇒ [page 367](#) by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Caution**

*Risk of damage to bush in pivot point (bolted connection -1- between adjustment spindle and seat pan).*

- ◆ *The bush cannot be renewed using workshop equipment.*
- ◆ *The relevant components must be renewed if the bush is damaged.*

- Unscrew bolt -1- for adjustment spindle of seat rake adjustment motor.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at seat rake adjustment motor.
- Remove bolts -4- and detach seat rake adjustment motor -3-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.5 verview - seat pan, seat rake adjuster](#), page 326**

## 2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjustment unit

⇒ [a2.11.1 nd installing backrest adjuster knob](#), page 342

⇒ [a2.11.2 nd installing backrest adjustment motor V45/V46](#), page 343

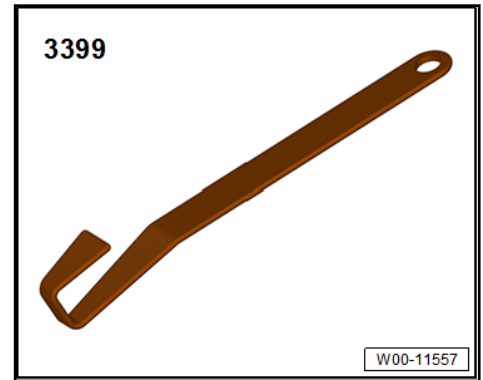
### 2.11.1 Removing and installing backrest adjuster knob

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

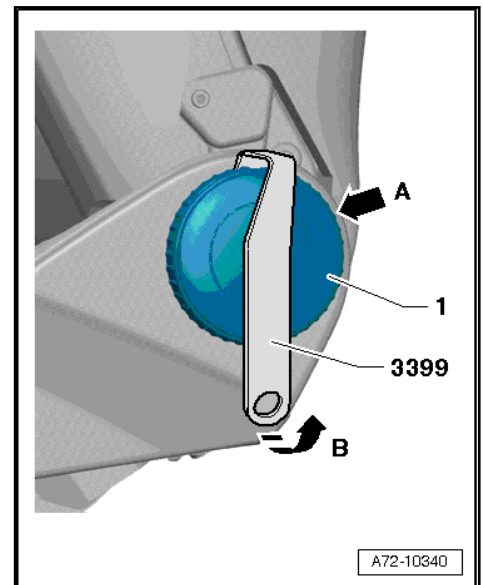
**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ◆ Assembly tool -3399-



## Removing



- Move front seat as far forwards and upwards as it will go.
- Turn backrest adjuster knob -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.
- Hook assembly tool -3399- into detent and prise off adjuster knob -arrow B-.
- Turn backrest adjuster knob a further 120 ° and repeat procedure.
- Detach backrest adjuster knob.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ o2.4.1 verview o front seat backrest, page 316**

## 2.11.2 Removing and installing backrest adjustment motor -V45-/-V46-

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

## Removing

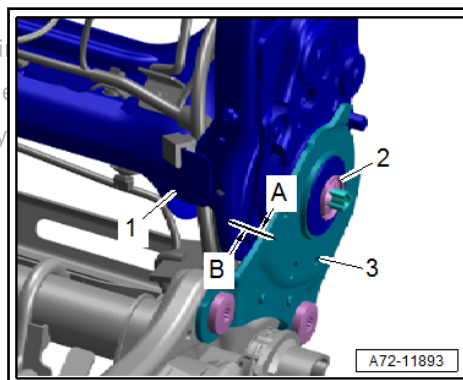


### WARNING

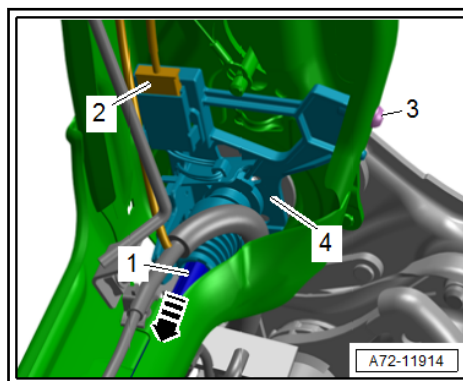
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling airbag units (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Detach padding from outer backrest frame in area of backrest fitting ⇒ [page 433](#) .
- Mark angular position of backrest fittings (left and right) on front seat as follows:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



- Use a waterproof felt-tip pen to make mark -arrow B- on outer backrest frame -1- directly at front edge -arrow A- of fitting -3-.
- Remove clamping washer -2- from adjuster shaft.
- Pull adjuster shaft -1- out of outer backrest frame in direction of -arrow-.

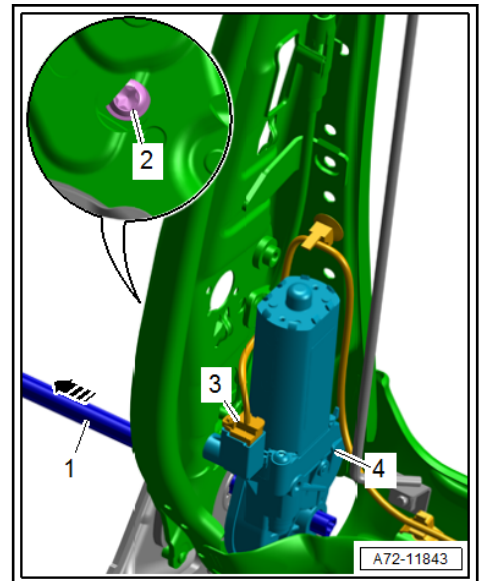


### Seat with backrest limit switch:

- Unplug electrical connector -2-.

- Unscrew bolt -3- and detach backrest limit switch -4-.

All seats (continued):



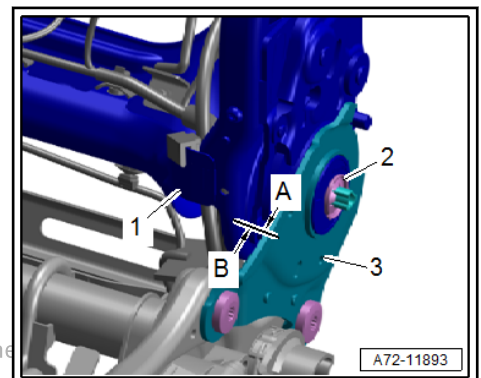
- Pull adjuster shaft -1- out of outer backrest frame -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- at backrest adjustment motor.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach backrest adjustment motor -4-.

Installing

**! WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => page 3 .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat => page 329 .*

- Check position of outer backrest frame -1- and fitting -3- on left and right side of backrest.

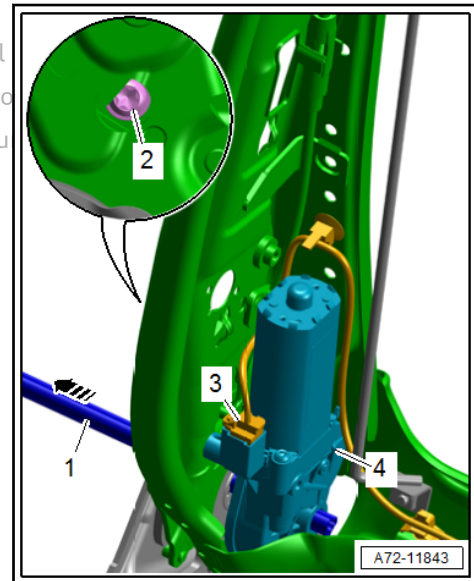


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- The outer backrest frame must be in the position marked before removal (on left and right side) -arrows A and B-.

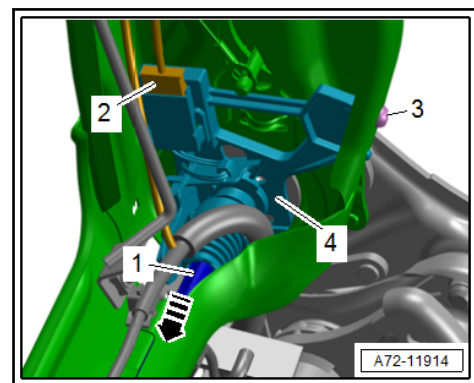
- If the outer backrest frame is not in the correct position (on both sides), make adjustments as required.
- Position backrest adjustment motor -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not with respect to the correctness of information in this docu



- It must still be possible to move the backrest adjustment motor.
- First slide adjuster shaft through fitting (tunnel side) as far as mounting in backrest adjustment motor.
- Check that profiles of inserted adjuster shaft and mounting in backrest adjustment motor are in line.
- If this is not the case, connect an external 12 V power supply to backrest adjustment motor and rotate mounting until profiles of adjuster shaft and mounting are in line.
- Push adjuster shaft -1- through mounting in backrest adjustment motor as far as backrest limit switch (sill side) -arrow-.
- Tighten bolt -2- for backrest adjustment motor.

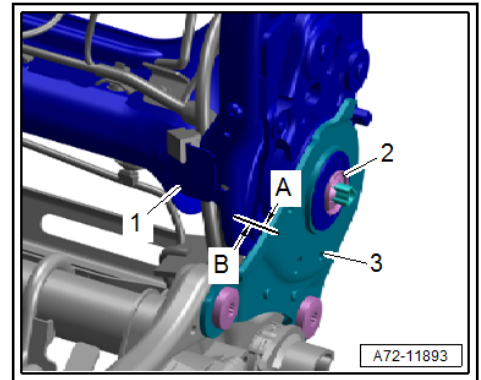
#### Seat with backrest limit switch:



- Position backrest limit switch -4-.
- Push adjuster shaft -1- through mounting in backrest adjustment limit switch as far as stop (sill side) -arrow-.
- Tighten bolt -3- for backrest limit switch.
- Plug in electrical connector -2-.



All seats (continued):



- Press new clamping washer -2- onto adjuster shaft -1- so that there is at least 1.0 mm of clearance.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.3 verview - front backrest adjustment motor](#), page 320

## 2.12 Removing and installing front seat backrest

⇒ [a2.12.1 nd installing front seat backrest](#), page 347

⇒ [a2.12.2 nd installing backrest cover panel - sports seat](#), page 349

⇒ [a2.12.3 nd installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat](#), page 351

⇒ [a2.12.4 nd installing side bolster](#), page 353


⇒ [a2.12.5 nd installing spring mat](#), page 355

⇒ [a2.12.6 nd installing blower for neck heating V450/V451](#), page 357

### 2.12.1 Removing and installing front seat backrest

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

Removing

 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

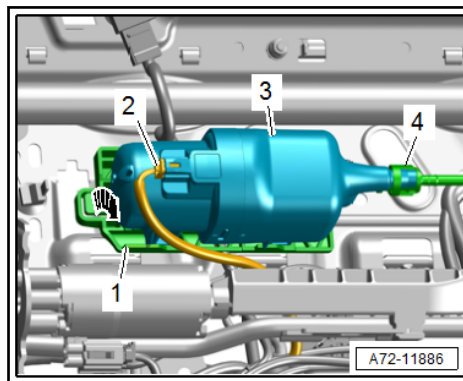
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).
- Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#).

- Remove seat side trim (sill side) and bracket ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move disconnected wiring harnesses clear ⇒ [page 361](#) .

 **Note**

*There is a continuous wiring harness between the coupling station and the side airbag.*

- Depending on equipment version: Press release ring and disconnect pneumatic line -4- from compressor.

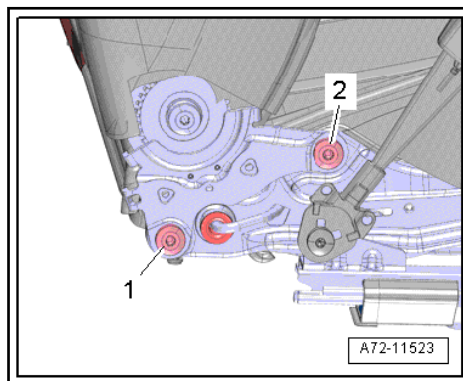


- Move pneumatic line clear.

 **Note**

*Disregard -items 1, 2, 3-*.

- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- (left and right) from backrest fitting.



- Detach backrest from seat pan. To do so, carefully pull electrical wiring harness for side airbag and, depending on equipment version, all other wiring harnesses going to backrest out of seat pan.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4 overview - front seat backrest](#), [page 316](#)

## 2.12.2 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - sports seat

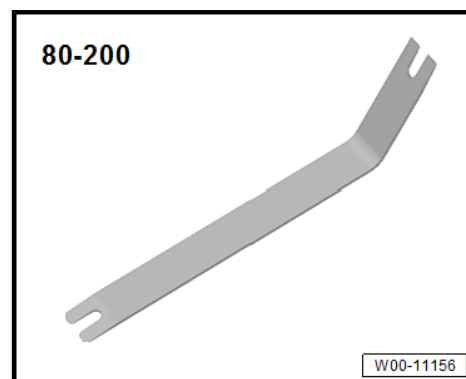


### Note

*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat installed.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-

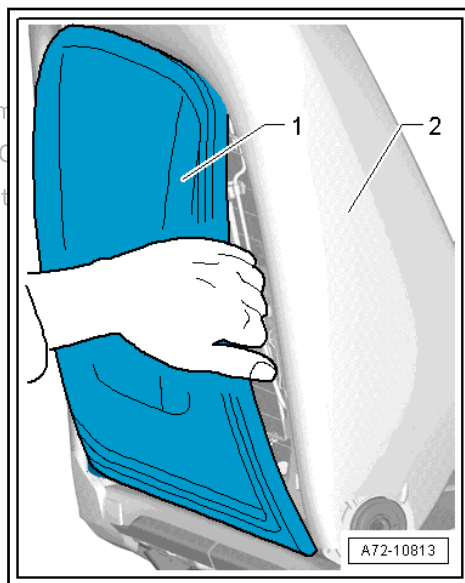


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Move front seat as far forwards and down as possible and fold backrest down.



### WARNING

*Risk of injury from burr on backrest cover panel.*

- ◆ *Wear protective gloves.*

- Reach behind right side of backrest cover panel -1- (as shown in illustration) and pull cover panel off outer backrest frame towards right side.



### Note

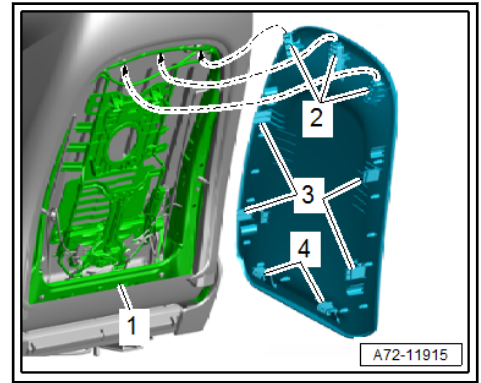
*If it is difficult to detach, release side retaining hooks with removal lever -80-200-.*

- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Pull off backrest cover panel further and bend it until retaining hooks (top) have disengaged from outer backrest frame.
- Lift backrest cover panel off backrest -2-.

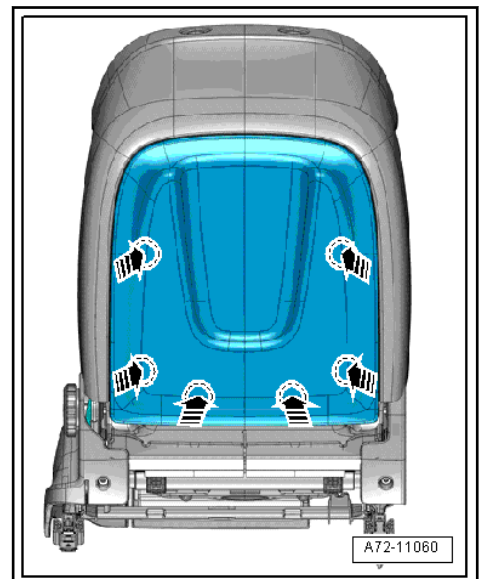
## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert retaining hooks -2- of backrest cover panel in top of outer backrest frame -1-.



- Swivel backrest cover panel down and engage retaining tabs at sides -3- and at bottom -4-.
- Make sure that side retaining tabs engage properly with outer backrest frame and that retaining hooks (bottom) are properly fitted over outer backrest frame.
- Press backrest cover panel forcefully towards backrest in areas marked by -arrows- until retaining tabs and hooks engage audibly.



- Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.
- It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel (bottom) off.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.2 verview - front seat backrest cover panel](#)", page 318**

### 2.12.3 Removing and installing backrest cover panel - super sports seat

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

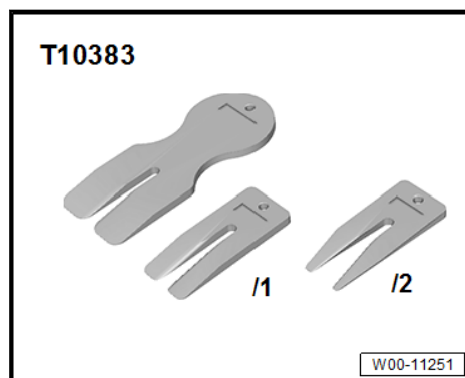


*Removal and installation can be carried out with the front seat*

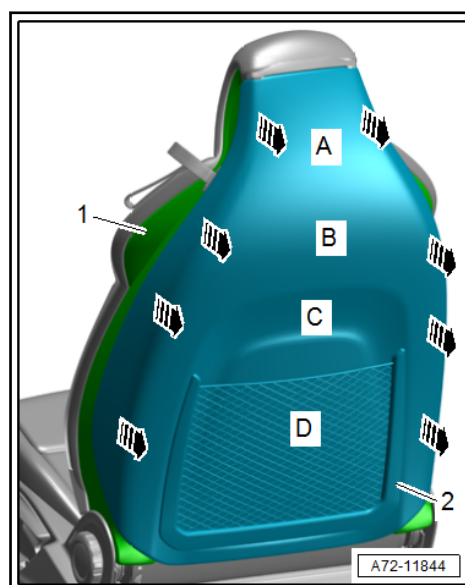
*installed* copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedges -T10383-



### Removing



- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .



#### Caution

*Risk of damage to side trim.*

- ◆ *Counterhold side trim when removing and installing as it can be damaged quite easily.*

- Starting at top, unclip backrest cover panel -2- from side trim -1- -arrows A ... D-; to do so, pull backrest cover panel and at the same time counterhold side trim.



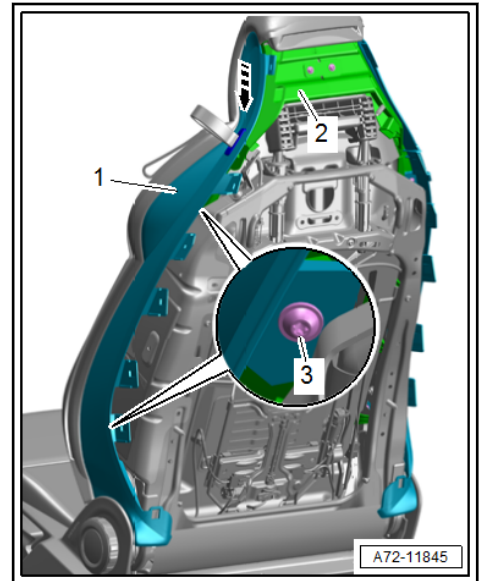
#### Note



*If it is difficult to detach, release fasteners with wedge -T10383-.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Removing side trim:



- Unscrew bolts -3- with commercially available ball-end Torx screwdriver.

### Note

*If bolts -3- cannot be unscrewed, loosen guide plate for side airbag ⇒ [page 134](#).*

- Pull side trim -1- downwards off side bolster -2- -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

- Check whether backrest cover panel is properly engaged.
- It should not be possible to pull backrest cover panel off at sides, bottom and top.

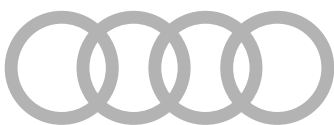
The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.2 verview - front seat backrest cover panel](#)", [page 318](#)**

## 2.12.4 Removing and installing side bolster

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753B-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Drill bit, Ø 6 mm
- ◆ Safety goggles

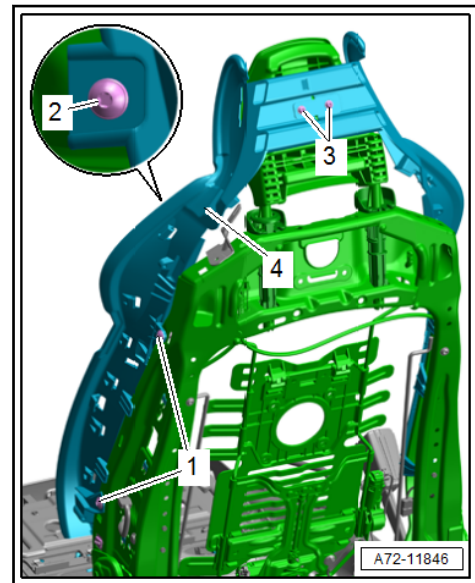
### Removing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ [page 351](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 438](#) .
- Equipment version with pneumatic seat: Remove air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster ⇒ [page 415](#) .
- Remove bolts -2, 3-



#### WARNING

#### **Risk of eye injuries.**

- ◆ **Put on safety goggles.**

- Drill out rivets -1-
- Disengage side bolster -4- from outer backrest frame, pull apart at top and detach.



## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.2 overview - front seat backrest cover panel](#)", [page 318](#)

## 2.12.5 Removing and installing spring mat

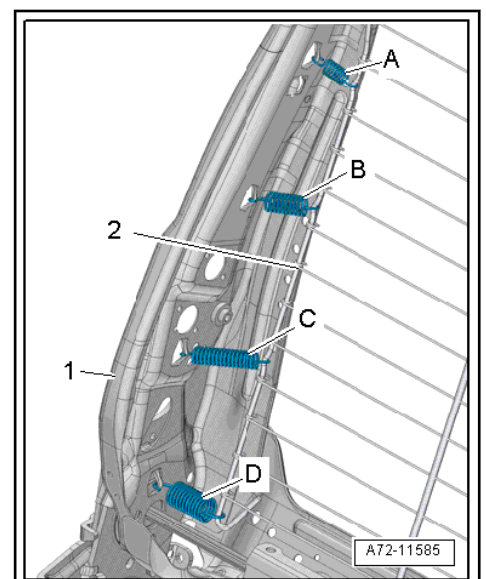
### Removing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#) .
- Disengage extension springs -A ... D- at outer backrest frame -1-.



**Note**

You can also leave the extension springs -A ... D- attached to the outer backrest frame -1- and disengage the spring mat -2- directly at the extension springs.

- Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.
- Pull spring mat out of openings in outer backrest frame.

**Installing****WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Attach tension springs as shown in illustration.

**Note**

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.

**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**i** Note

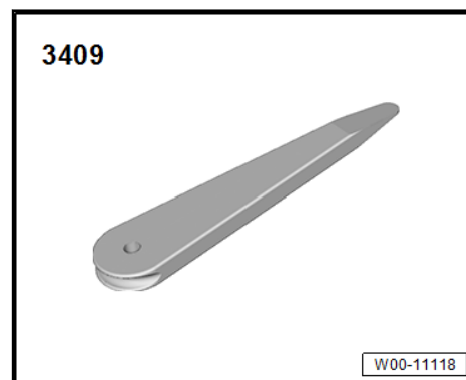
*If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.1 overview - front seat backrest](#), page 316

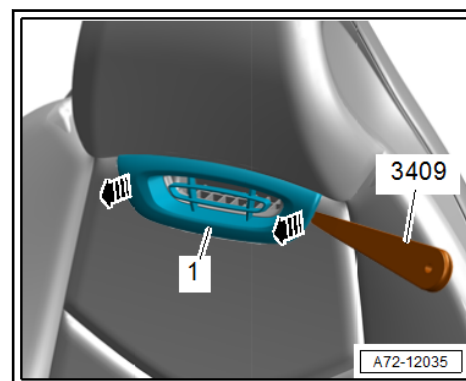
## 2.12.6 Removing and installing blower for neck heating -V450-/-V451-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

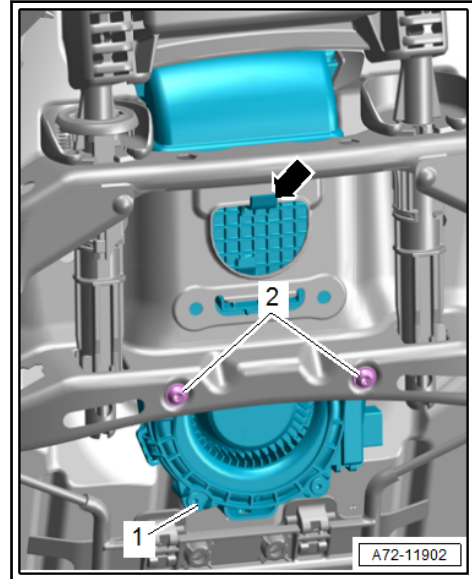


### Removing



- Unclip neck heating vent -1- using removal wedge -3409- -arrows- and detach.
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 351](#) .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove bolts -2-.
- Disengage blower -1- for neck heating from outer backrest frame -arrow- and remove downwards.
- To do so, push padding away and pull blower for neck heating with air duct downwards between padding and outer backrest frame.
- Press release catches and unplug electrical connectors.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.4 verview - neck heating](#), page 320

## 2.13 Removing and installing head restraint

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

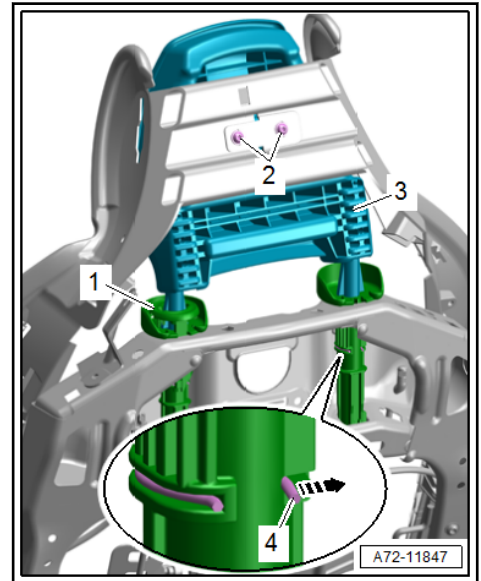
### Removing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).
- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ [page 351](#).
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#).
- Unscrew bolts -2- and pull side bolsters apart slightly at top.



- Working alternately on both head restraint guides, pull head restraint out of fastener.
- Press down release button -1- at head restraint guide and at the same time pull head restraint out of fastener.
- Press locking spring -4- at head restraint guide in direction of -arrow- and at the same time pull head restraint out of fastener.
- Pull head restraint -3- out of head restraint guides and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.1 verview - front seat backrest](#), [page 316](#)

## 2.14 Removing and installing head restraint guide

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing

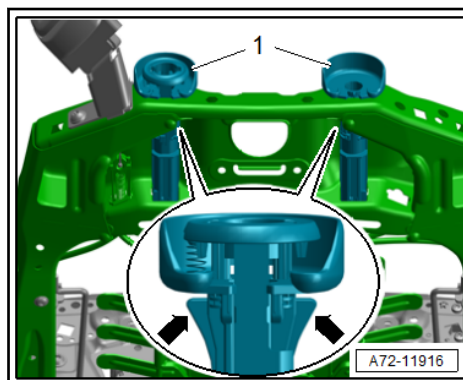


#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).
- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ [page 351](#).
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#).

- Super sports seat: Remove head restraint ⇒ [page 358](#) .
- Press retaining tabs inwards -arrows- and at the same time pull head restraint guides -1- out of outer backrest frame.



### Installing



#### Note

*The head restraint guide can only be installed in one position.*



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.1 overview - front seat backrest](#), page 316

## 2.15 Dismantling and assembling seat pan

⇒ [w2.15.1 iring at front seat](#), page 361

⇒ [a2.15.2 nd installing seat rail cover](#), page 363

⇒ [a2.15.3 nd installing seat side trim \(sill side\)](#), page 365

⇒ [a2.15.4 nd installing seat side trim \(tunnel side\)](#), page 366

⇒ [a2.15.5 nd installing retainer for Owner's Manual/bracket for fire extinguisher/storage compartment](#), page 367

⇒ [a2.15.6 nd installing trim/grip for seat depth adjuster](#), page 369

⇒ [a2.15.7 nd installing seat depth adjuster](#), page 370

⇒ [a2.15.8 nd installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle](#), page 374

⇒ [a2.15.9 nd installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment](#), page 375

⇒ [s2.15.10 eat pan frame - front seat with manual adjustment](#), page 376

⇒ [a2.15.11 nd installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment](#), page 378

⇒ [a2.15.12 nd installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment](#), page 380

⇒ [a2.15.13 nd installing seat adjustment operating unit E470/E471](#), page 382

### 2.15.1 Routing wiring at front seat

Removing individual wire



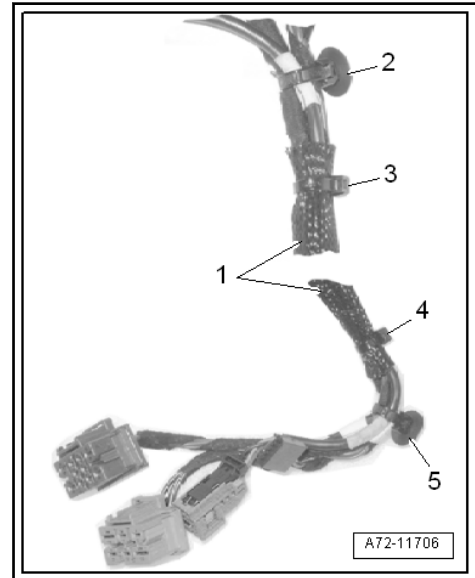
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.
- Cut through cable retainers -2 and 5- and cable ties -3 and 4-.



**Note**

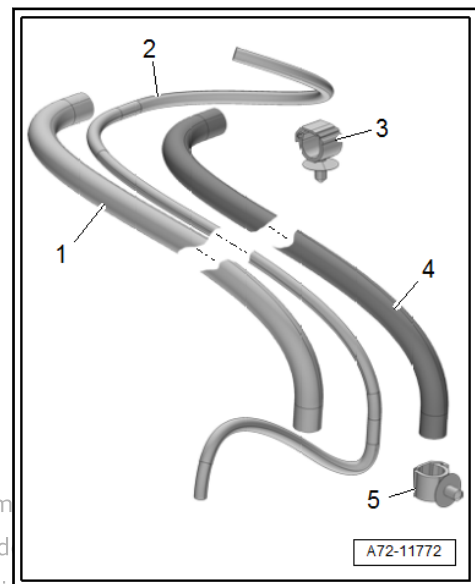
To renew a defective wire or side airbag refer to ⇒ *Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses, or ⇒ [page 134](#).*

- Pull individual wire out of protective sleeve -1-.

**Modular wire routing:**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Remove retainer (rear) for wire routing from seat pan with a screwdriver.
- Open cable retainers -3, 5- for corrugated tube and remove.
- Remove wiring -2- from corrugated tube -1, 4-.



**i** Note

To renew a defective wire or side airbag refer to ⇒ *Electrical system; General information; Rep. gr. 97; Repairing wiring harnesses and connectors; Repairing wiring harnesses, or ⇒ [page 134](#)*.

- Cut through cable tie and remove individual wire.

**Installing individual wires**

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#)*.
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#)*.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Take care not to twist any wires when bunching and inserting the individual wires.

**i** Note

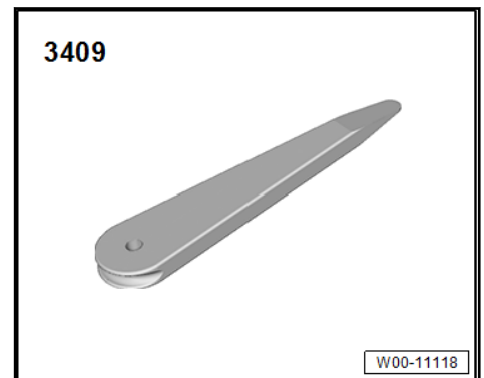
- ◆ *Re-attach all cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips at the same locations when installing.*
- ◆ *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.2 overview - front seat](#), [page 312](#)

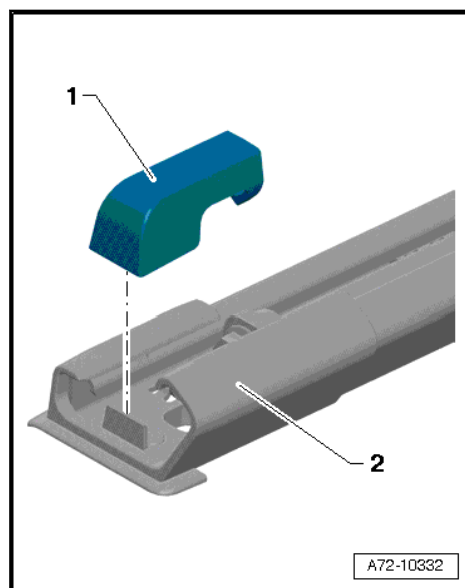
### 2.15.2 Removing and installing seat rail cover

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



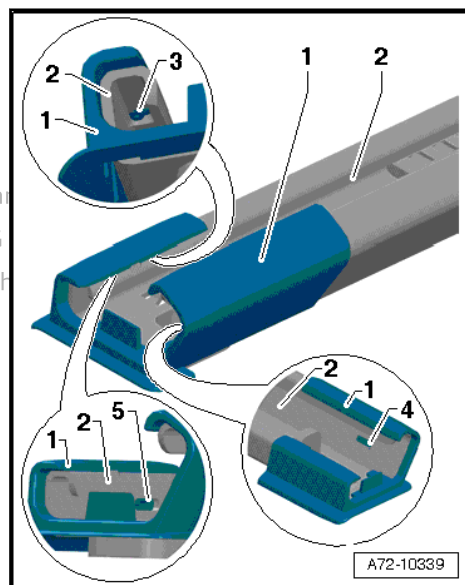
## Removing



- Front: Using removal wedge -3409-, prise spindle cover -1- off seat rail cover -2- and spindle for seat longitudinal adjustment.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



### Caution

*Risk of damaging seat rail cover*

- ◆ *Proceed very carefully when removing and installing.*

- Pull cover -1- off seat rail -2-; to do so, carefully release retaining tabs -3, 4, 5- at seat rail using a screwdriver.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.1 overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)](#), page 321

## 2.15.3 Removing and installing seat side trim (sill side)

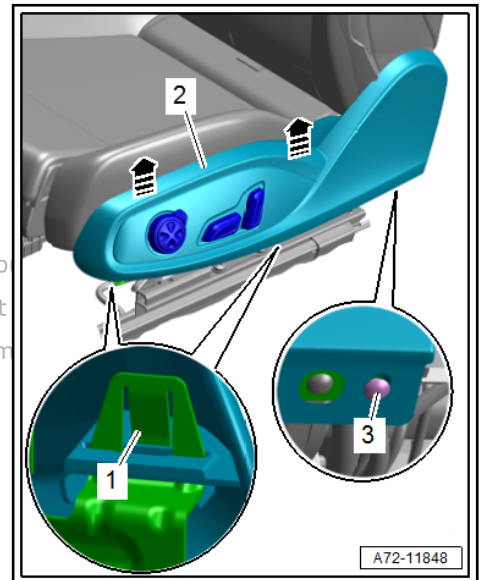
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing

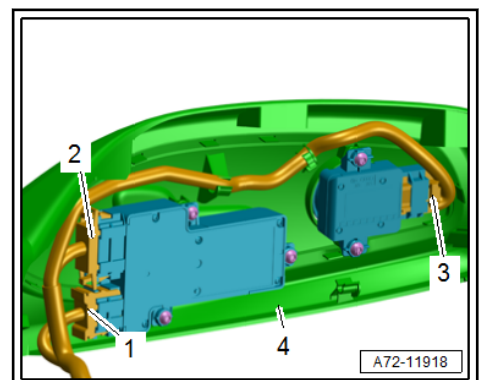
- Move front seat as far upwards as it will go.
- Front seat with manual adjustment: Remove backrest adjuster knob ⇒ [page 342](#) .
- Front seat with manual adjustment: Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
- Remove spreader rivet -3- on seat side trim (sill side).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Release retaining hooks -1- using a screwdriver.
- Pull seat side trim -2- off brackets -arrows-.
- Disengage seat side trim (sill side) at rear of backrest fitting and at seat pan.
- Depending on equipment version: Press release mechanism and unplug electrical connectors.

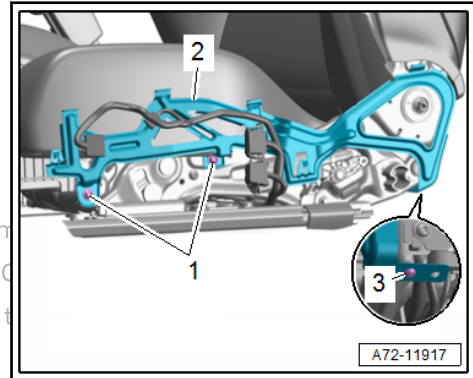




- 1, 2 - Seat adjustment operating unit -E470-/-E471-
- 3 - Lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-/-E177-
- Move wiring harness clear and detach seat side trim -4-.
- Remove spreader rivet -3- and bolts -1- to remove bracket -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.1 verview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)](#), page 321 , ⇒ [o2.5.2 verview - seat pan](#)", page 323**

## 2.15.4 Removing and installing seat side trim (tunnel side)

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

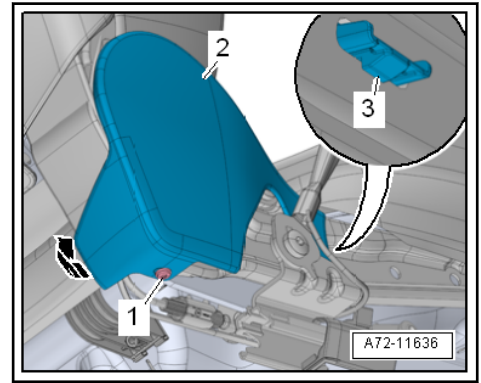
### Removing



#### WARNING


- ◆ **Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.**

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .



- Remove spreader rivet -1- on seat side trim (tunnel side)
- Disengage seat side trim -2- at front from seat pan; to do so, release retaining tab -3- and pull seat side trim outwards.
- Disengage seat side trim (tunnel side) from backrest fitting -arrow- and detach.

### Installing

 **WARNING**

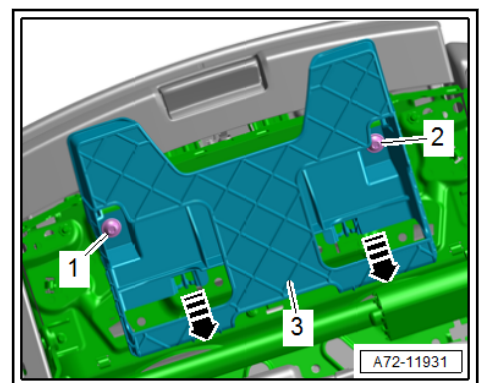
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.1 overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)](#), [page 321](#)

## 2.15.5 Removing and installing retainer for Owner's Manual/bracket for fire extinguisher/storage compartment

### Removing



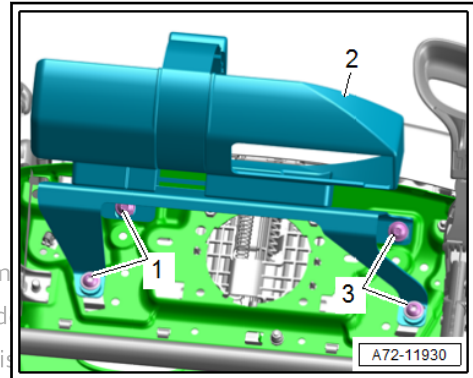
- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.

**Removing retainer for Owner's Manual:**

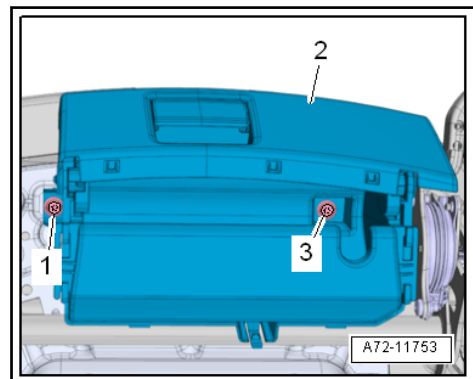
- Remove bolts -1, 2-.
- Push retainer -3- for Owner's Manual towards rear -arrows- and disengage fastener for retainer at upper seat pan frame.
- Detach retainer from upper seat pan frame.

**Removing bracket for fire extinguisher.**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG disclaims any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Take fire extinguisher out of bracket.
- Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Detach bracket -2- for fire extinguisher from upper seat pan frame.

**Removing storage compartment:**

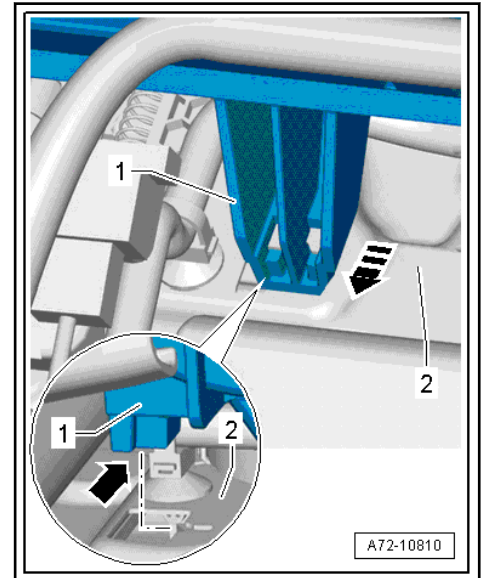
- Front seat with electric adjustment: Adjust seat rake to centre position.

**Caution**

*Be careful when handling customer property in the storage compartment.*

- ◆ *Store objects from the storage compartment in a sealable plastic bag.*

- Take any objects out of storage compartment -2-.
- Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Push storage compartment -1- towards rear in direction of -arrow- and disengage catch -bottom arrow- of storage compartment from upper frame of seat pan -2-.



- Detach storage compartment from upper seat pan frame.
- Depending on equipment version: Unclip seat occupied recognition control unit -J706-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o2.5.3 overview - seat pan, storage compartment/fire extinguisher](#), page 325

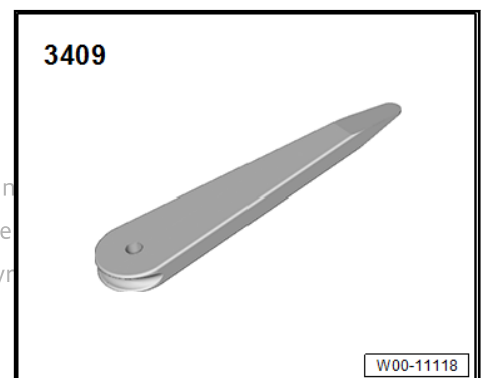
### 2.15.6 Removing and installing trim/grip for seat depth adjuster

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

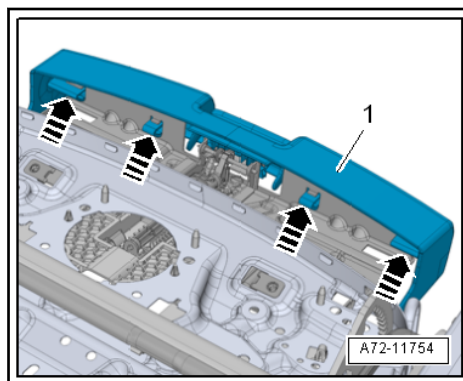
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



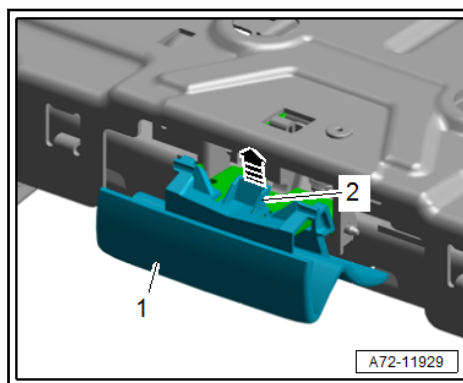
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy



## Removing



- Move front seat as far back and upwards as it will go.
- Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.
- Squeeze retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using pliers or release them using removal wedge -3409-.
- Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.
- Release fastener -2- upwards -arrow- and pull grip -1- for seat depth adjuster off grip mounting.



## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.1 overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)](#)", page 321**

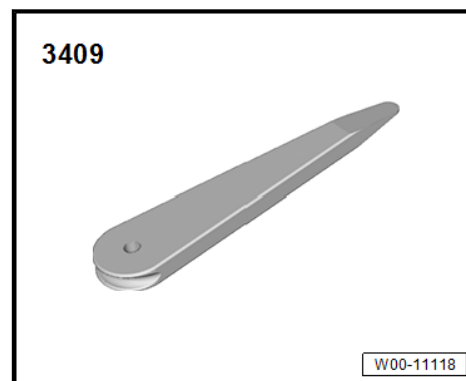
### 2.15.7 Removing and installing seat depth adjuster

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



◆ Removal wedge -3409-



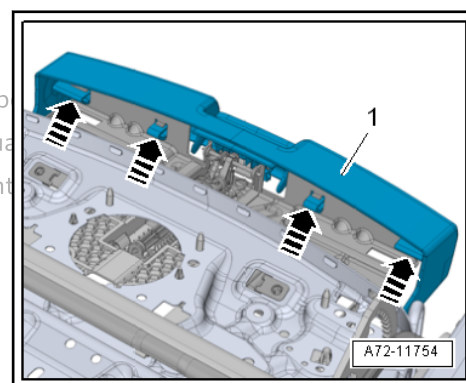
Removing

**! WARNING**

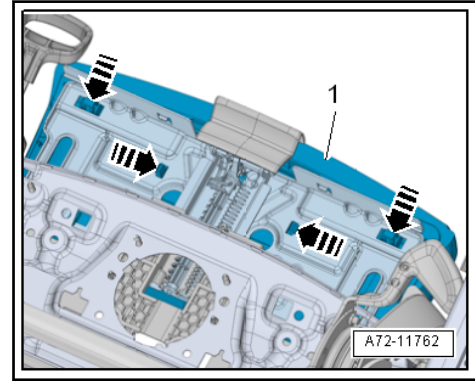
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for heated seat extension.
- Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.

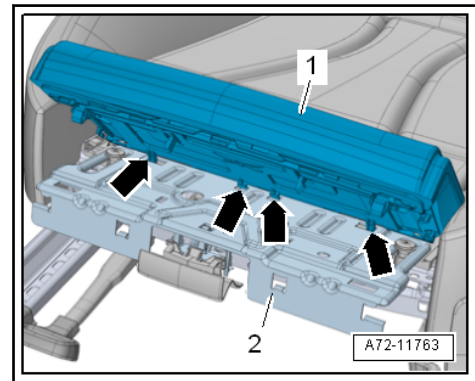
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Squeeze retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using pliers or release them using removal wedge -3409-.
- Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.
- Release retaining tabs -arrows- on mounting bracket at seat depth adjuster using removal wedge -3409-.

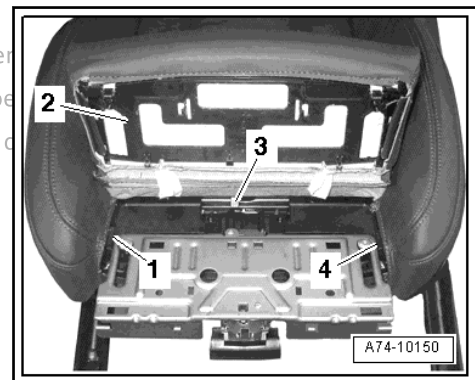


- At the same time pull off mounting bracket -1- upwards with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster.
- Disengage lugs -arrows- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.



- Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards and towards front).
- Place mounting bracket -2- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster on front seat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



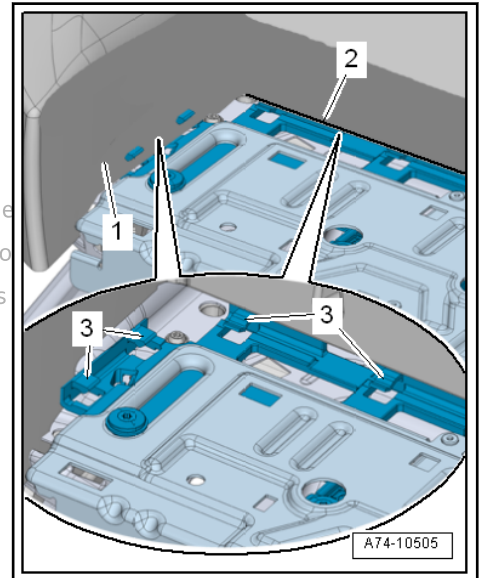
**Note**

*For greater clarity the lower seat pan frame is not shown in the illustration.*

- Remove seat cover -1, 4- on sides and fastening strip -3- of seat cover from seat depth adjustment unit.
- To do so, disengage seat cover -1- from retaining tabs -3- at sides.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this manual.

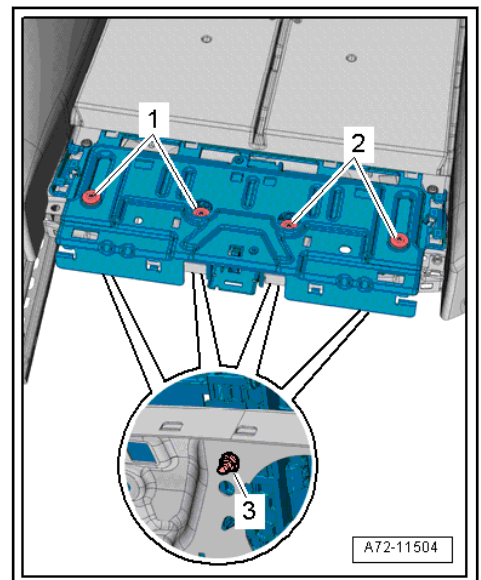


**Caution**

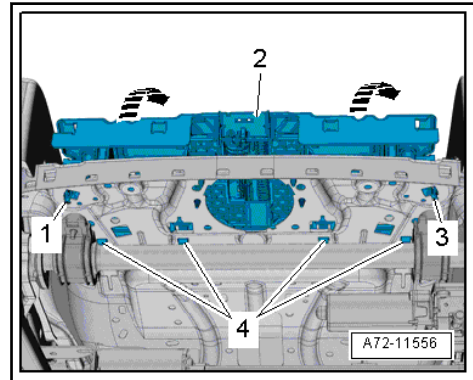
*Risk of damage to retaining tabs.*

◆ *Proceed very carefully when unclipping and clipping in.*

- Unclip fastening strip -2- from retaining tabs -3-.
- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and nuts -3- at seat depth adjuster.



- Unclip retaining tabs -1 and 3- using removal wedge -3409-.



- Pull seat depth adjuster -2- off seat pan at an angle (upwards towards front) -arrows-.
- At the same time disengage lugs -4- from seat pan.
- Detach seat depth adjuster from front seat.

**Installing**

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components => [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat => [page 329](#).*

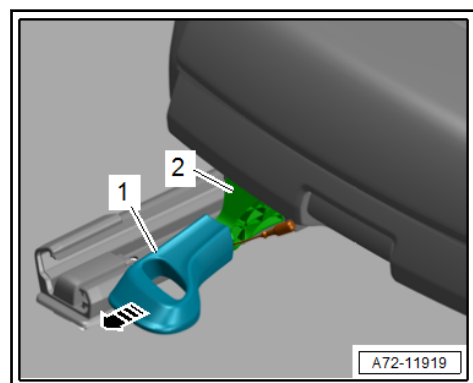
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o2.5.2 overview - seat pan](#)", [page 323](#)

### 2.15.8 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Removing**



- Move front seat as far back and up as possible.
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment => [page 367](#)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- To release handle, insert flat-bladed screwdriver between handle -1- and handle mounting -2-.
- At the same time, pull seat longitudinal adjustment handle off handle mounting in direction of -arrow-.

### Installing


Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.6 overview - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster](#), [page 327](#)**

## 2.15.9 Removing and installing Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment

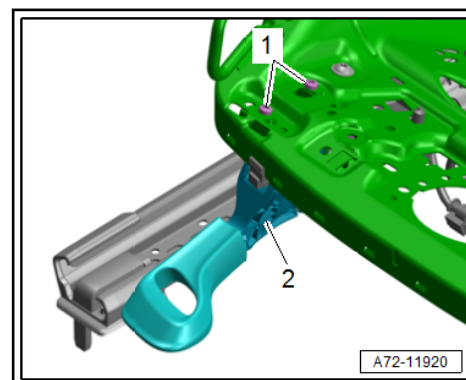
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Removing

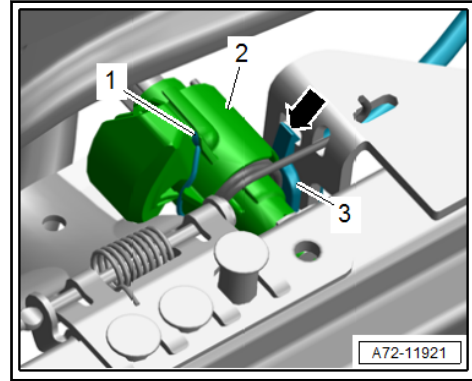
 **WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#).
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#).
- Sports seat: Remove seat pan cover and padding around bolted connection ⇒ [page 427](#).
- Super sports seat: Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ [page 370](#).
- Remove bolts -1-.



- Detach Bowden cable -2- for seat longitudinal adjustment from seat pan.
- Unclip Bowden cable for seat depth adjustment from seat pan at bottom.



- Release retaining hook -arrow- and disengage support bracket -3- for Bowden cable from bracket on seat pan.
- Disengage Bowden cable -1- at release lever -2- for seat longitudinal adjustment and detach.

### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not guaranteed or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.6 overview - seat pan, seat longitudinal adjuster](#), [page 327](#)

### 2.15.10 Renewing seat pan frame - front seat with manual adjustment



#### Note

*On front seats with manual adjustment, bottom part of seat should not be separated from top part of seat (seat pan).*

### Removing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



**Caution**

*Move front seat to top position if possible. This reduces the spring force when removing and installing the seat height adjustment unit.*

- Move front seat as far towards front as it will go and to highest position; then lower it by one stroke of the lever.
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 347](#) .
- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ [page 427](#) .



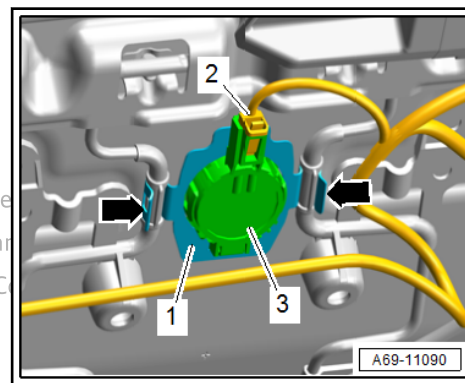
**Note**

*Remove wiring and components and install them in new seat pan.*

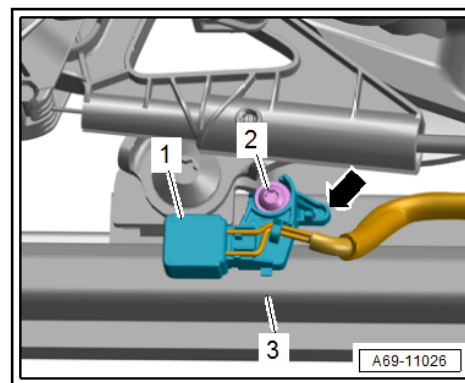
- Front passenger seat: Unplug electrical connector -2-, unclip mounting -1- from seat pan -arrows- and detach it together with seat occupied sensor -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



- Unscrew bolt -2- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.



- Remove front belt buckle ⇒ [page 102](#) .
- Remove seat height adjustment lever ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove Bowden cable for seat longitudinal adjustment ⇒ [page 375](#) .
- Remove cover for seat rail ⇒ [page 363](#) .





– Equipment version with storage compartment: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .

– Super sports seat: Remove seat rake adjustment handle/lever ⇒ [page 340](#) .

– Super sports seat: Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ [page 370](#) .

– Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from seat pan.

### Installing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

– Install all components and wires in new seat pan.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5 overview - seat pan](#) , [page 321](#)

## 2.15.11 Removing and installing upper seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

### Removing



#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.

– Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 347](#) .

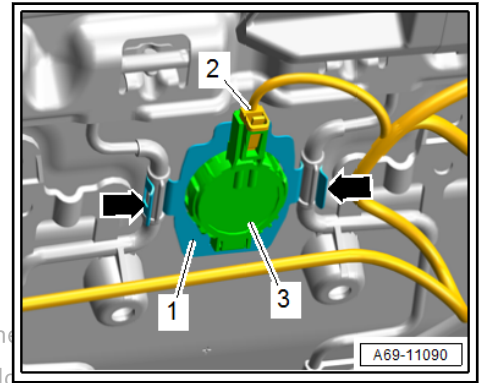
– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ [page 427](#) .

– Front passenger seat: Unplug electrical connector -2-, unclip mounting -1- from seat pan -arrows- and detach it together with seat occupied sensor -3-.

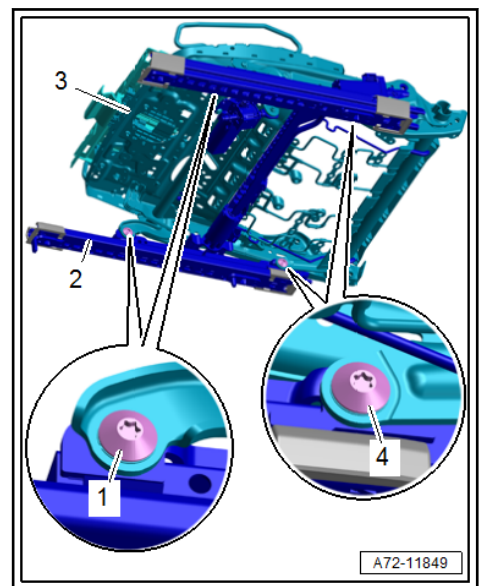




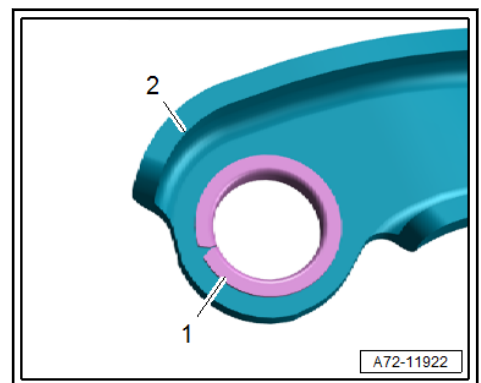
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability for errors or inaccuracies in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Detach electrical wiring harnesses and individual wires from upper seat pan frame.
- Remove bolts -1- at front of seat pan frame.



- Support upper seat pan frame on seat repair stand -VAS 6136- with a suitable block of wood.
- Remove bolts -4- at rear of seat pan frame.
- Detach upper frame -3- from lower frame -2-.



**Caution**

*Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).*

- ◆ *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- ◆ *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

- Remove seat depth adjuster ⇒ [page 370](#) .
- Remove seat rake adjustment motor -V243-/V244- ⇒ [page 341](#) .
- Front seat with pneumatic system: Remove compressor for pneumatic system ⇒ [page 419](#) .

**Installing****WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5 verview - seat pan", page 321](#)

## 2.15.12 Removing and installing lower seat pan frame - front seat with electric adjustment

Seat longitudinal adjustment motor -V28-/V31- and lower seat pan frame are pre-set at factory; both components can only be renewed as a complete unit.

**Removing****WARNING**

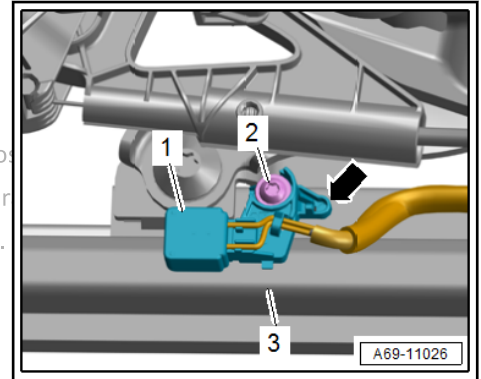
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- If possible, move front seat to topmost position in order to minimise pre-tension of torsion bar.
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .

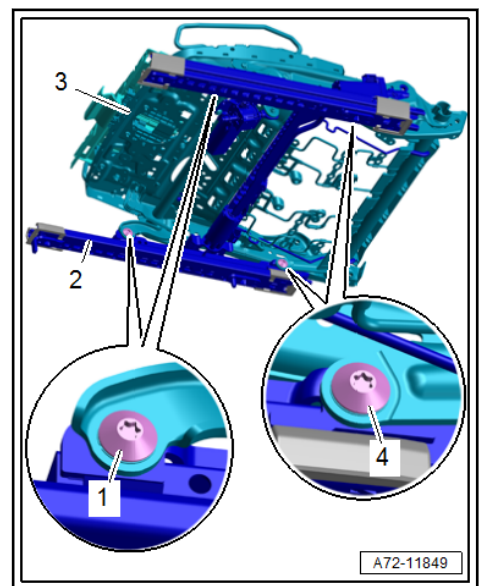
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- => [page 338](#) .
- Remove cover for seat rail => [page 363](#) .
- Unscrew bolt -2- and unclip and disengage seat position sensor -1- from lower seat pan frame -3- -arrow-.



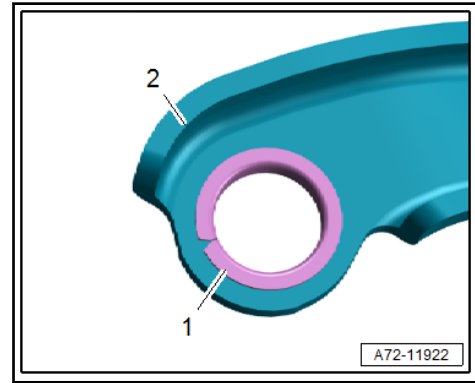
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove front belt buckle => [page 102](#) .
- Unplug electrical connector at seat longitudinal adjustment motor.



- Remove bolts -1- at front of seat pan frame.
- Support upper seat pan frame on seat repair stand -VAS 6136- with a suitable block of wood.
- Remove bolts -4- at rear of seat pan frame.
- Detach upper frame -3- from lower frame -2-.



### Caution

**Risk of damage to bushes -1- in pivot points -2- (bolted connection between upper and lower frame).**

- ◆ *The bushes cannot be renewed with the equipment available to workshops.*
- ◆ *The relevant components must be renewed if the bushes are damaged.*

### Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

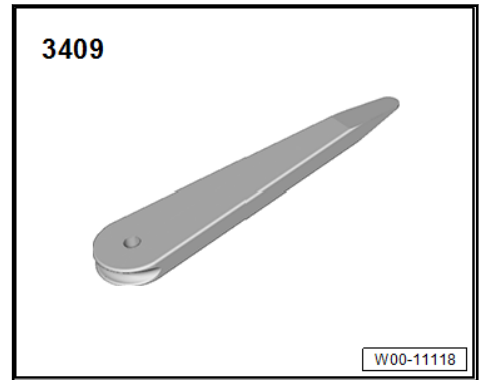
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5 overview - seat pan](#), [page 321](#)

## 2.15.13 Removing and installing seat adjustment operating unit -E470-/-E471-

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

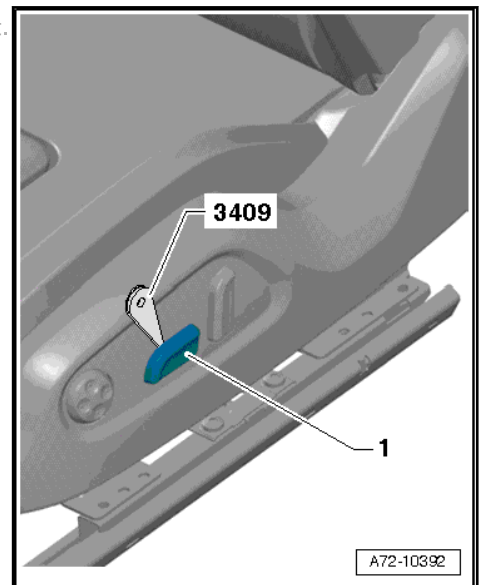
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Removal wedge -3409-

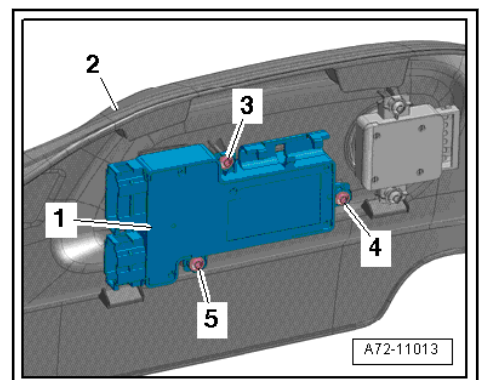


**Removing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Carefully prise seat adjustment actuator -1- off fastener using removal wedge -3409-.
- Repeat procedure with backrest adjustment actuator.
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) => [page 365](#) .
- Remove bolts -3 ... 5-.



- Detach operating unit -1- from seat side trim (sill side) -2-.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. => [o2.5.1 overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)", page 321](#)

## 2.16 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism

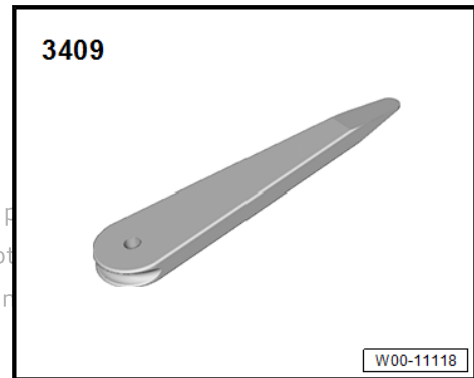
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

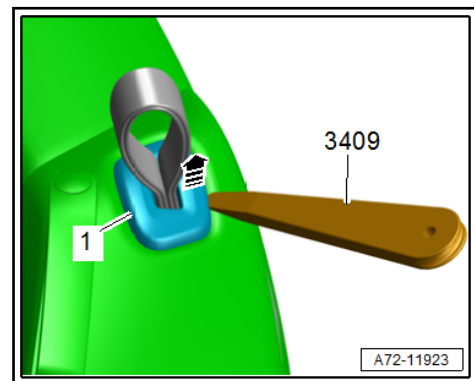
- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



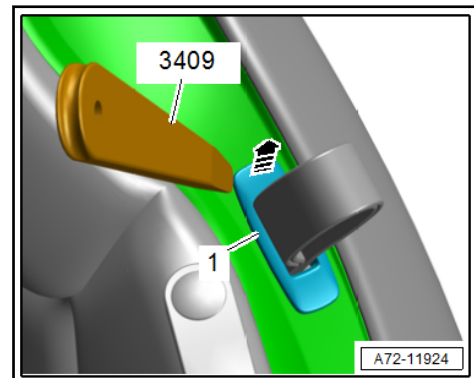
### Removing



### Sports seat:

- Working alternately on both sides, unclip trim -1- for backrest release mechanism with removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.
- Thread out pull strap and detach trim.

### Super sports seat:



- Starting at top, unclip trim -1- for backrest release mechanism -arrow- using removal wedge -3409-.

- Pull trim off upwards, guide at pull strap and detach.

### Installing

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.3 verview - backrest release mechanism and easy entry system](#), page 314**

## 2.17 Removing and installing backrest release mechanism

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.



### Note

*The Bowden cables (left and right) cannot be renewed separately.*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers - V.A.G 1753B



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Safety goggles

### Removing

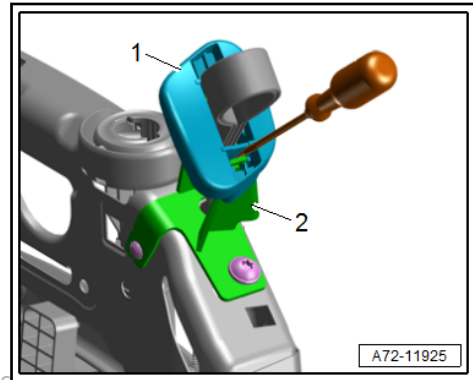


### WARNING

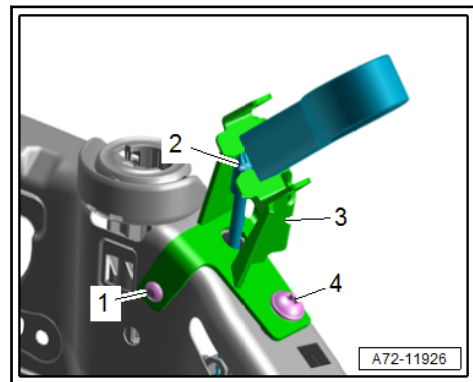
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove trim for backrest release mechanism ⇒ [page 384](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#) .

**Sports seat:**

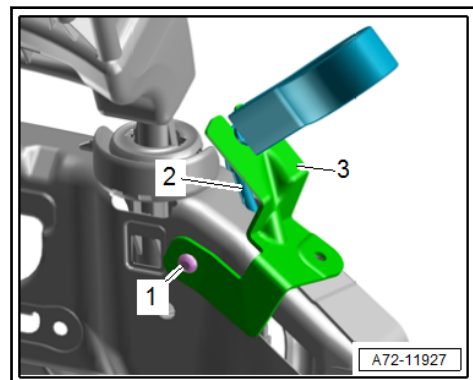


- Remove mounting -1- for trim for backrest release mechanism.
- To do so, release mounting from bracket -2- at retaining tabs with a screwdriver.
- Thread out pull strap and detach mounting.
- Disengage support bracket -2- from bracket, disengage pull strap from Bowden cable and detach.



- Remove spreader rivet -1- and bolt -4- and remove bracket -3- for backrest release mechanism.

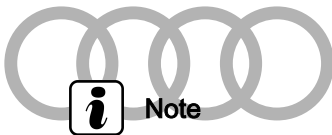
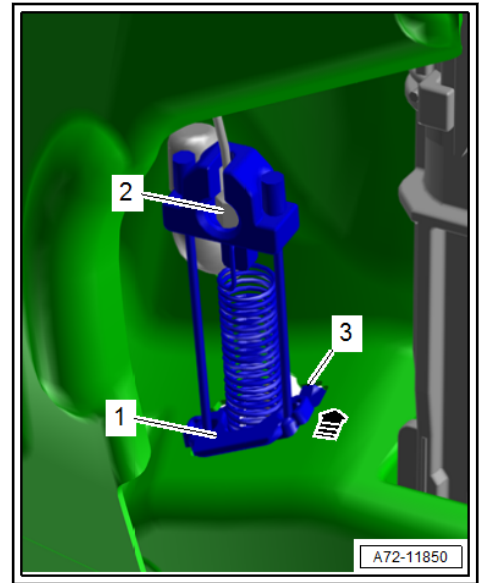
**Super sports seat:**



- Disengage support bracket -2- from bracket, disengage pull strap from Bowden cable and detach.
- Remove spreader rivet -1- and remove bracket -3- for backrest release mechanism.



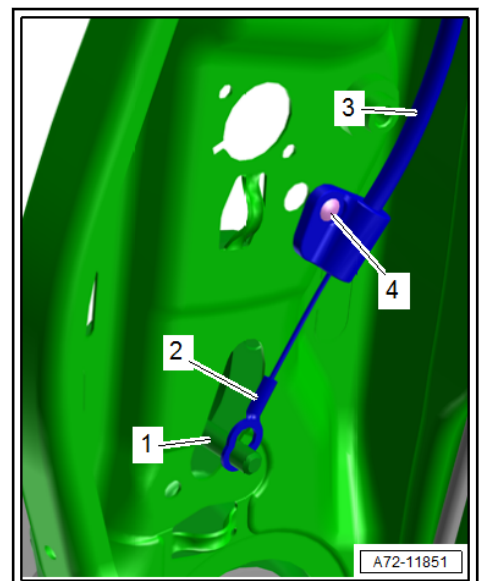
All seat versions (continued):



*It is not necessary to remove the spring mat, lumbar support or lumbar support air cushion when removing and installing the Bowden cables.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior authorisation by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Disengage Bowden cable -2- for pull strap.
- Unclip Bowden cable support bracket -1- from outer backrest frame.
- Alternately press down retaining tabs -3- on both sides with a screwdriver and at the same time push Bowden cable forwards in direction of -arrow-.
- Guide out Bowden cable downwards through opening for support in outer backrest frame.
- Use pliers to disengage eyelet -2- from pin -1- for backrest release mechanism.





**WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries.*

- ◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

- Drill out rivet -4- and detach bracket from outer backrest frame.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Cut through cable ties and take Bowden cables -3- out of outer backrest frame.

**Installing**



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



**Note**

*Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*



**WARNING**

*The ignition must be switched on when re-connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. When re-connecting the battery, there must not be anyone inside the vehicle.*

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the express written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG does not warrant or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery.



**WARNING**

*Risk of injury due to incorrectly repaired pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbags or belt tensioners) being triggered inadvertently when switching on the ignition.*

- ◆ *If the ignition is not switched on after the battery has been reconnected (indicator lamps in instrument cluster off), the ignition (key/button) must only be switched on when you are sitting in the driver seat with the seat in the rearmost position.*

**i** Note

If the airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the event memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

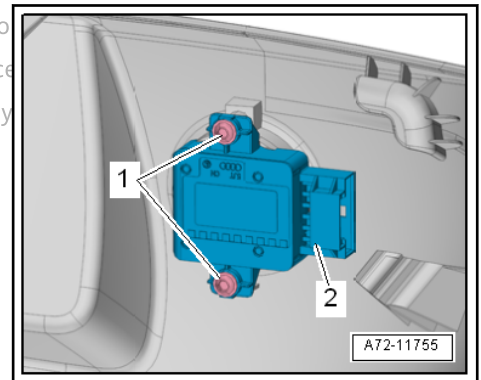
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.3 overview - backrest release mechanism and easy entry system](#), page 314

## 2.18 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-/-E177-

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

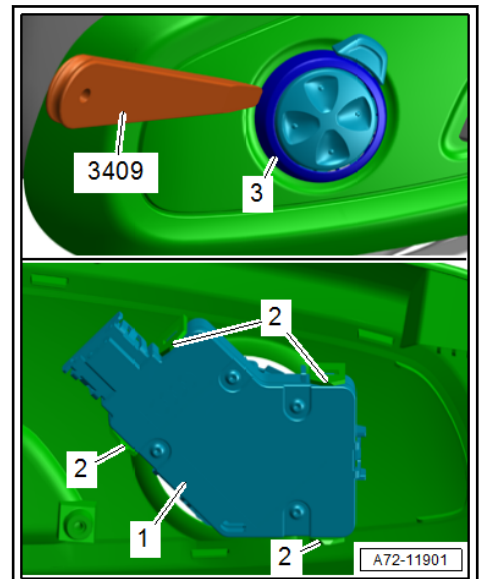
### Removing (version 1)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG



- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Unscrew bolts -1- and detach switch -2-.

### Removing (version 2)



- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Carefully unclip trim -3- from switch using removal wedge -3409-.
- Release fasteners -2-, disengage switch -1- from trim and detach.



## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.1 overview - seat pan, seat trim/seat side trim \(sill/tunnel side\)](#)", [page 321](#)

## 2.19 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment motor -V125-/-V126-/-V129-/-V130-

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753B-



- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Safety goggles

### Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



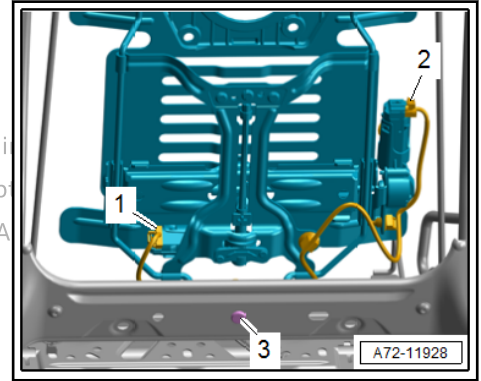
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*


- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#) .
- Unplug electrical connectors -1 and 2- at longitudinal and height adjustment motors of lumbar support.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG



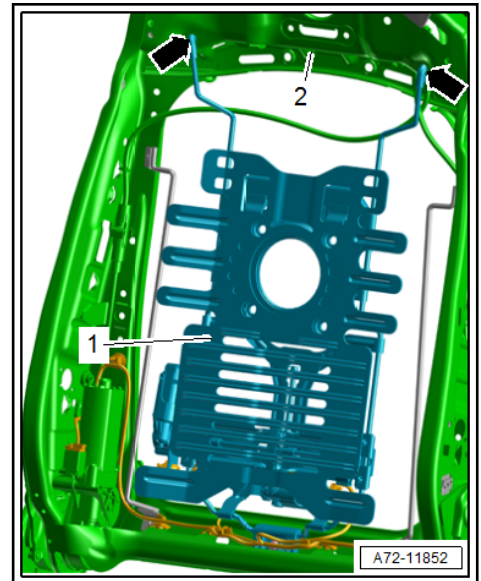
- Cut through cable ties and move wiring harness clear at lumbar support.

 **WARNING**

*Risk of eye injuries.*

◆ *Put on safety goggles.*

- Drill out rivet -3-.
- Cut through cable ties for Bowden cable for backrest release mechanism at lumbar support.



- Swivel lumbar support -1- out of outer backrest frame at bottom (towards front), disengage from top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows- and detach.

**Installing**

- Engage lumbar support -1- at top of outer backrest frame -2- -arrows-, swivel to rear at bottom and insert in outer backrest frame.
- Rivet lumbar support to outer backrest frame.



**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.4.1 overview - front seat backrest", page 316](#)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

### 3 Rear seats

- ⇒ [o3.1 verview - bench seat/individual seats", page 393](#)
- ⇒ [o3.2 verview - rear seat backrest", page 393](#)
- ⇒ [a3.3 nd installing bench seat/individual seats", page 395](#)
- ⇒ [a3.4 nd installing rear seat backrest", page 397](#)
- ⇒ [a3.5 nd installing trim for locking mechanism", page 400](#)
- ⇒ [a3.6 nd installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest", page 400](#)

#### 3.1 Assembly overview - bench seat/individual seats

##### 1 - Rear bench seat

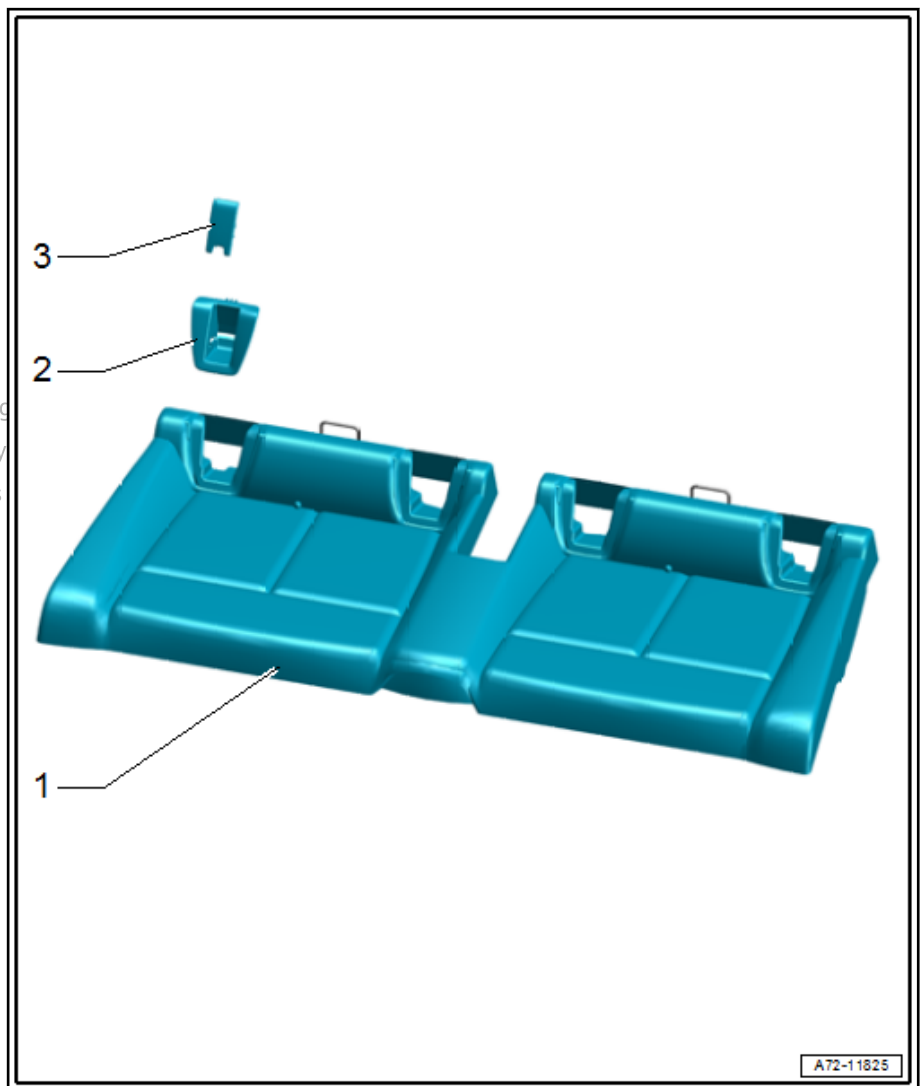
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 395](#)
- Seat frame must engage correctly in mountings

##### 2 - Guide

- For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 106](#)
- Must be seated firmly in anchor

##### 3 - Cover

- For ISOFIX child seat anchor
- 4x
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.1 nd installing guide for child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat", page 106](#)
- Must be seated firmly in anchor



#### 3.2 Assembly overview - rear seat backrest



**1 - Bowden cable**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 400](#)

**2 - Backrest frame**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 398](#)

**3 - Cover**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a3.4.1 nd installing rear seat backrest", page 397](#)
- ❑ Clipped into backrest frame

**4 - Nut**

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 45 Nm

**5 - Inner filler piece**

- ❑ For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a3.4.2 nd installing backrest pan/backrest frame", page 398](#)

**6 - Backrest pan**

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 398](#)

**7 - Cover**

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.2 nd installing ISOFIX child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat backrest", page 107](#)

- ❑ Can only be installed in one position

**8 - Bolt**

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ [Item 6 \(page 105\)](#)

**9 - Child seat anchor**

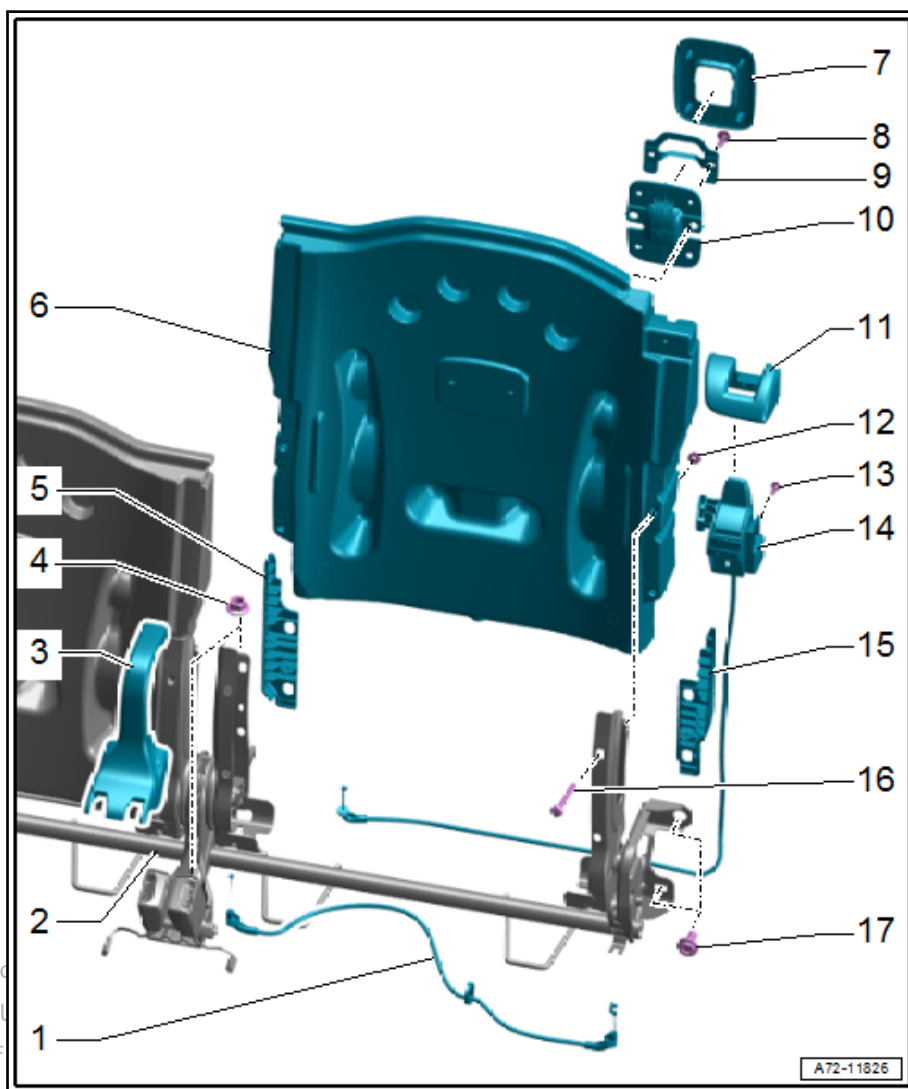
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 107](#)

**10 - Cover**

- ❑ For child seat anchor
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a2.4.2 nd installing ISOFIX child seat anchor \(rear\) - rear seat backrest", page 107](#)
- ❑ Renew cover if damaged
- ❑ Push on until it engages audibly
- ❑ Can only be installed in one position

**11 - Trim**

- ❑ For locking mechanism
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [page 400](#)
- ❑ Engage in locking mechanism and press on until it engages audibly





**12 - Nut**

- 4x
- 6.6 Nm

**13 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 3.5 Nm

**14 - Locking mechanism**

- For rear seat backrest
- Removing and installing => [page 400](#)

**15 - Outer filler piece**

- For correct version, refer to => Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing => [a3.4.2 nd installing backrest pan/backrest frame", page 398](#)

**16 - Bolt**

- 4x

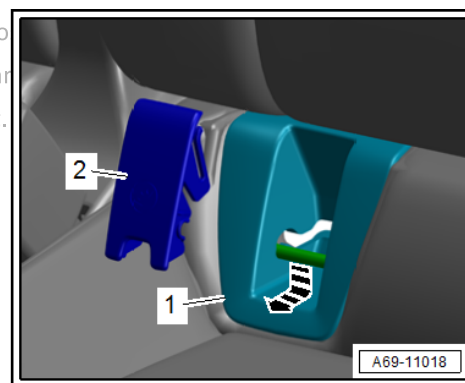
**17 - Bolt**

- 2x
- 32 Nm

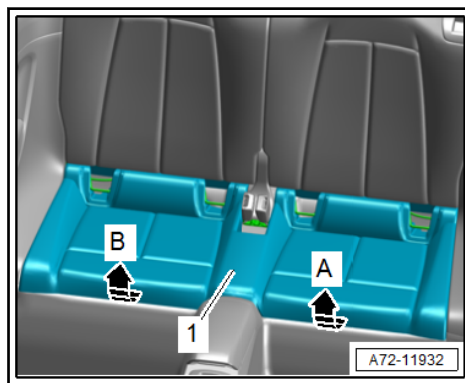
### 3.3 Removing and installing bench seat/individual seats

**Removing**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

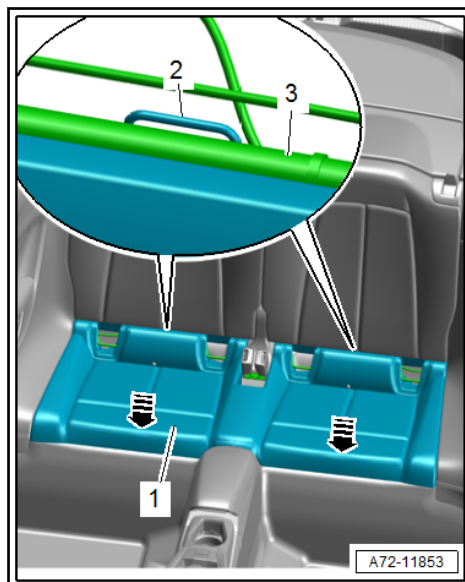


- Move front seats as far forwards as they will go.
- Unclip cover -2- for child seat anchor from anchor and detach.
- Press guide -1- for child seat anchor downwards into recess and disengage from anchor -arrow-.
- Reach underneath bench seat frame -1- on one side with both hands.



- Using both hands, pull bench seat firmly and abruptly upwards -arrow A- to disengage frame for bench seat from mounting.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side of bench seat -arrow B-.
- Disengage bench seat from backrest frame and take it out of vehicle.

### Installing



Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Insert bench seat -1- and engage seat frame -2- in backrest frame -3-.
- Press rear bench seat downwards into mountings -arrows- until it engages audibly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.1 overview - bench seat/individual seats](#), page 393

### 3.4 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

⇒ [a3.4.1 nd installing rear seat backrest](#), page 397

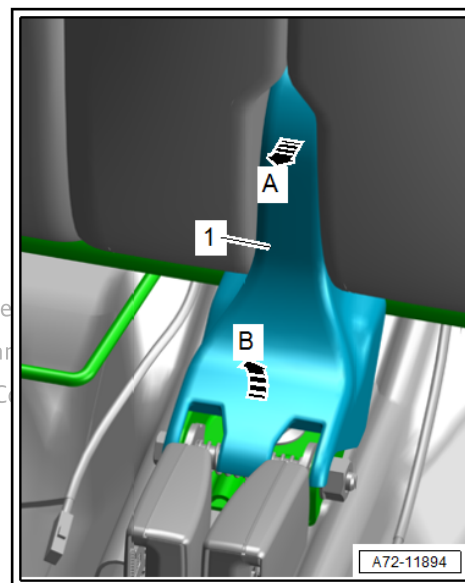
⇒ [a3.4.2 nd installing backrest pan/backrest frame](#), page 398

#### 3.4.1 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

##### Removing



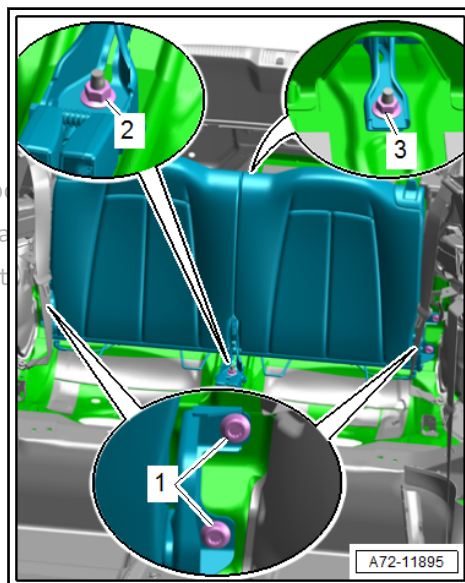
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



- Remove luggage compartment floor.
- Remove mounting for vehicle tool kit.
- Remove bench seat/individual seats ⇒ [page 395](#) .
- Remove side trim panels ⇒ [page 258](#) .
- Starting at top, pull cover -1- off centre mount -arrows A and B- and detach.
- Unplug belt switch connectors.
- Unscrew bolts -1- (left and right) for backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



- Remove nuts -2 and 3- for backrest frame.
- Disengage backrest frame from stud and take it out of vehicle.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

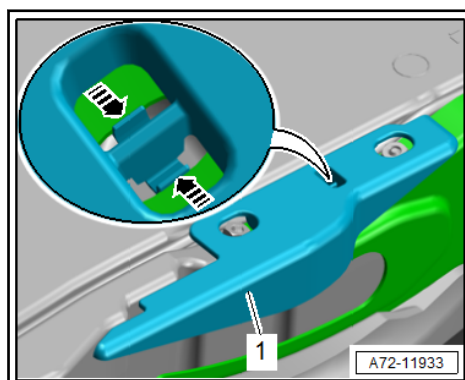
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.2 overview - rear seat backrest](#), [page 393](#)

### 3.4.2 Removing and installing backrest pan/ backrest frame

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

#### Removing

- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 397](#) .
- Detach padding from rear seat backrest in area of backrest fitting ⇒ [page 447](#) .

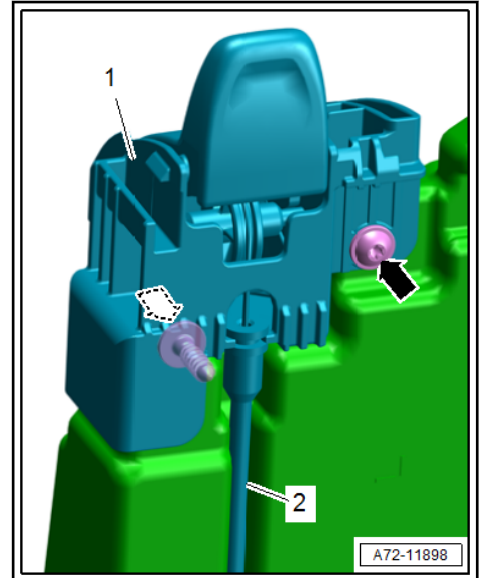


#### Caution

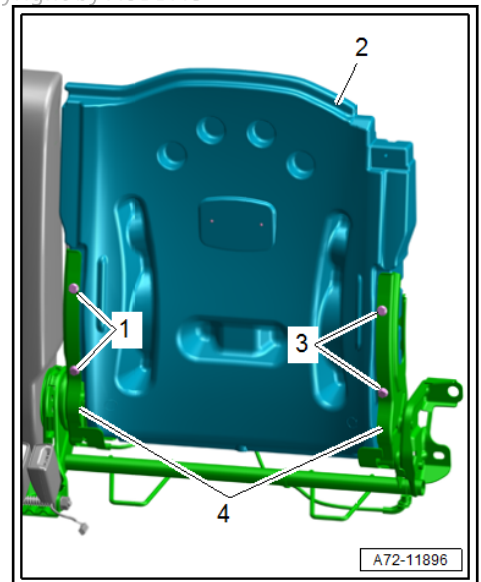
*Risk of damage to filler piece.*

◆ *Proceed very carefully when unclipping and clipping in.*

- Remove filler piece -1-; to do so, insert a small flat-bladed screwdriver into opening and disengage retaining tabs -arrows-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.



- Detach locking mechanism -1- and Bowden cable -2- from backrest pan.
  - Remove bolts -1, 3-.
- Copyright by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Pull backrest pan -2- upwards out of backrest fitting -4- and detach.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

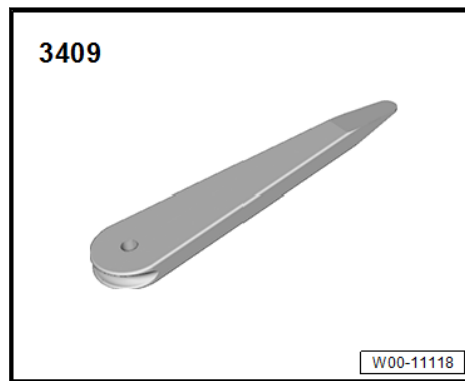
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.2 verview - rear seat backrest", page 393](#)

### 3.5 Removing and installing trim for locking mechanism

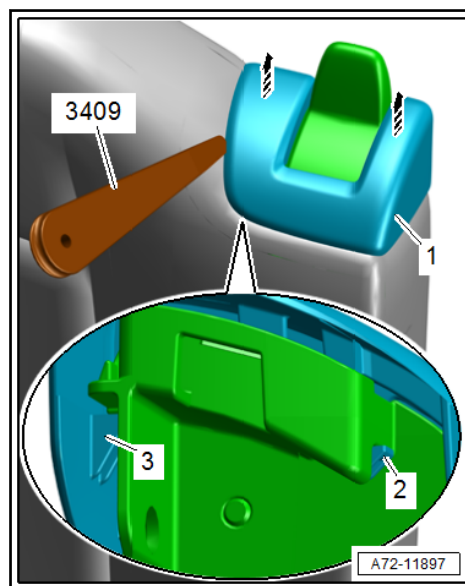
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



#### Removing



- Working alternately on both sides, unclip fasteners -2, 3- of trim -1- for locking mechanism with removal wedge -3409- -arrows-.
- At the same time pull trim upwards off locking mechanism and detach.

#### Installing

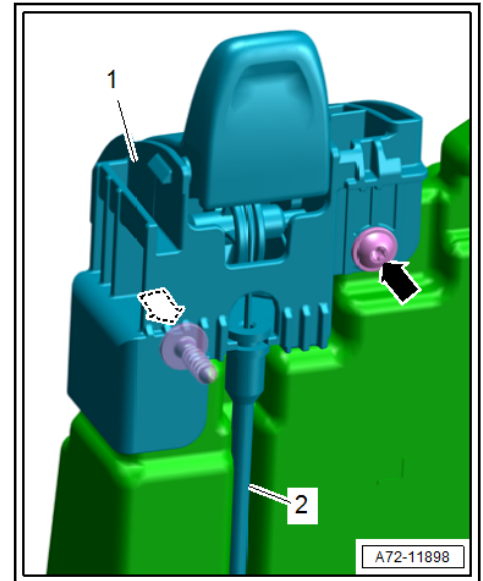
Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.2 verview - rear seat backrest", page 393](#)

### 3.6 Removing and installing locking mechanism for rear seat backrest

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

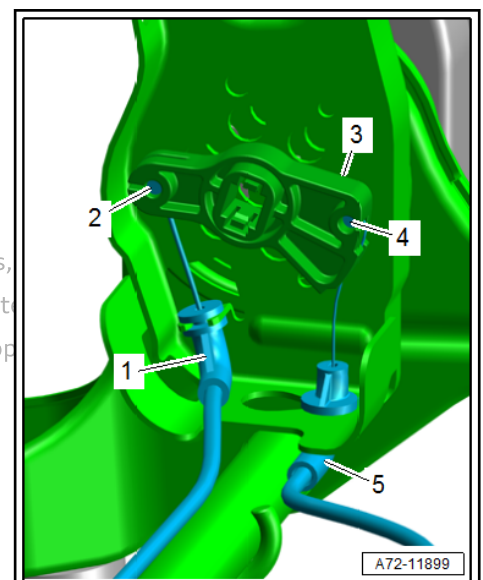
## Removing



- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 397](#) .
- Remove trim for locking mechanism ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Remove padding from rear seat backrest in area of locking mechanism ⇒ [page 447](#) .
- Remove backrest pan ⇒ [page 398](#) .
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach locking mechanism -1- and Bowden cable -2- from backrest pan.
- Unclip Bowden cable support bracket -1- from bracket on backrest pan.



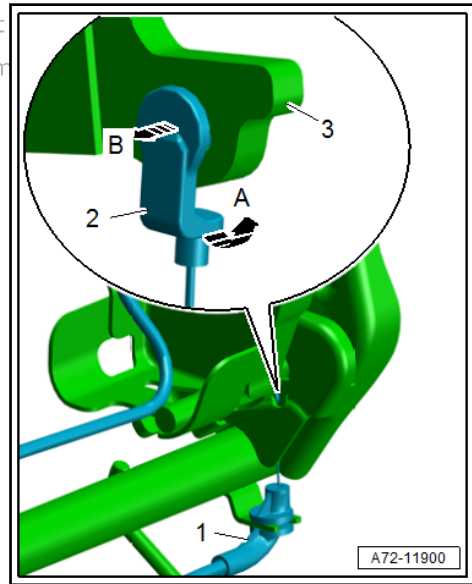
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop



- Disengage Bowden cable end piece -2- from support -3- and detach Bowden cable.
- Unclip Bowden cable support bracket -5- from bracket on backrest pan.
- Disengage Bowden cable end piece -4- from support -3- and move Bowden cable clear.

- Unclip Bowden cable support bracket -1- from bracket on backrest pan

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Disengage Bowden cable end piece -2- from lever -3-; to do so, turn end piece in direction of -arrow A- and detach -arrow B-.
- Cut open cable tie(s) and detach Bowden cable.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o3.2 verview - rear seat backrest", page 393](#)**

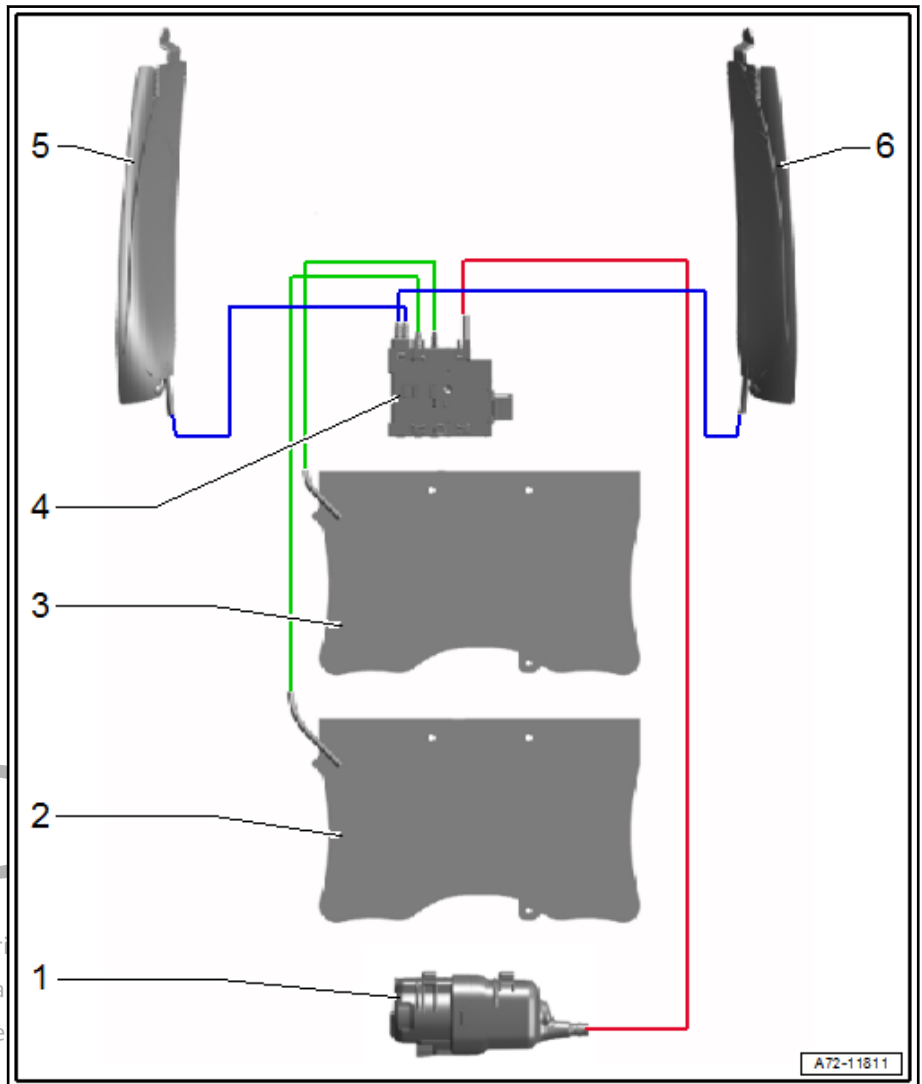


## 4 Front seat pneumatic system

- ⇒ [d4.1 iagram - pneumatic system", page 403](#)
- ⇒ [o4.2 verview - pneumatic system", page 404](#)
- ⇒ [p4.3 neumatic system", page 405](#)
- ⇒ [a4.4 nd connecting pneumatic lines", page 412](#)
- ⇒ [p4.5 neumatic lines", page 414](#)
- ⇒ [a4.6 nd installing air cushion for lumbar support", page 414](#)
- ⇒ [a4.7 nd installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster", page 415](#)
- ⇒ [a4.8 nd installing control unit for front multicontour seat J872/ J873", page 417](#)
- ⇒ [a4.9 nd installing compressor for multicontour seat V439/ V440", page 419](#)

### 4.1 Connection diagram - pneumatic system

- 1 - Compressor for multicontour driver seat -V439-**
  - ❑ Passenger side: compressor for multicontour front passenger seat - V440-
- 2 - Air cushion (bottom)**
  - ❑ For lumbar support
- 3 - Air cushion (top)**
  - ❑ For lumbar support
- 4 - Control unit for driver multicontour seat -J873-**
  - ❑ Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multicontour seat - J872-
- 5 - Air cushion (right-side)**
  - ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster
- 6 - Air cushion (left-side)**
  - ❑ For backrest bolster adjuster



Protected by copyright  
 permitted unless a  
 with respect to the

A72-11811

## 4.2 Assembly overview - pneumatic system

The assembly overview here applies to the left side of the vehicle.

### 1 - Pneumatic line

- Press release ring to detach from compressor
- Connecting ⇒ [page 412](#)

### 2 - O-ring

- Renew after removing

### 3 - Compressor for multicontour driver seat -V439-

- Passenger side: compressor for multicontour front passenger seat -V440-
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 419](#)

### 4 - Bracket

- For compressor for multicontour seat

### 5 - Bolt

- 2x
- 2.5 Nm

### 6 - Clip

- Renew after removing

### 7 - Air cushion

- For backrest bolster adjuster
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 415](#)

### 8 - Clip

- Renew after removing

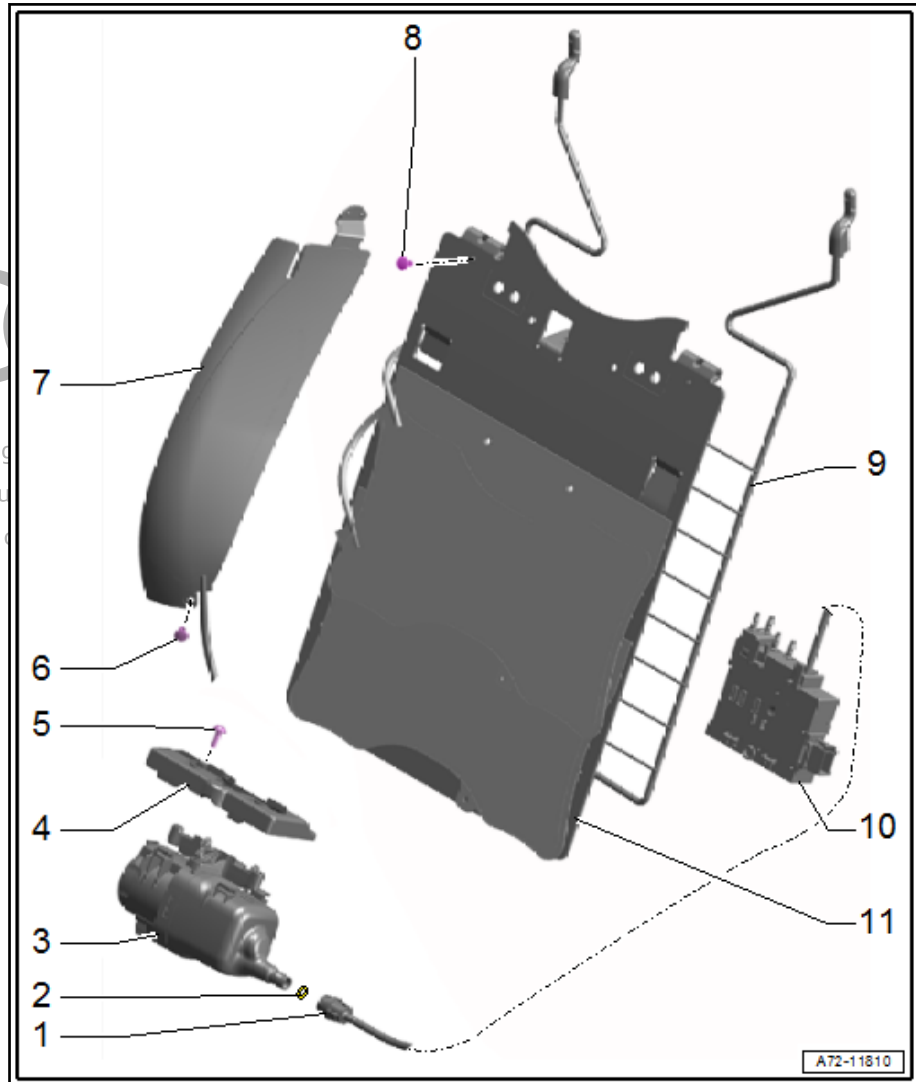
### 9 - Spring mat

### 10 - Control unit for driver multicontour seat -J873-

- Passenger side: control unit for front passenger multicontour seat -J872-
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 415](#)

### 11 - Air cushion

- For lumbar support
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 414](#)



## 4.3 Checking pneumatic system

⇒ [f4.3.1 or leak test for lumbar support air cushions](#), page 405

⇒ [f4.3.2 or leak test for compressor V439/V440 and pressure line](#), page 407

⇒ [f4.3.3 or leak test for backrest bolster adjuster](#), page 409

### 4.3.1 Preparation for leak test for lumbar support air cushions



#### Note

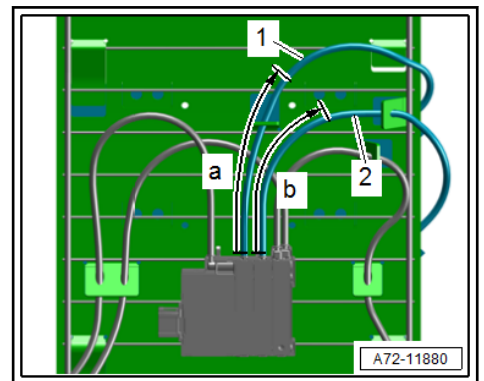
- ◆ *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to replace the defective lumbar support air cushion with the pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- ◆ *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the seat, are described in the following.*
- ◆ *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ [page 403](#)*

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ◆ Pneumatic repair set -VAS 6618 A-

#### Procedure

- Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ [page 349](#)
- Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.
- Sever pneumatic lines to relevant air cushion of lumbar support at the following point ⇒ [page 412](#) :



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

1 - Pneumatic line to air cushion (top)

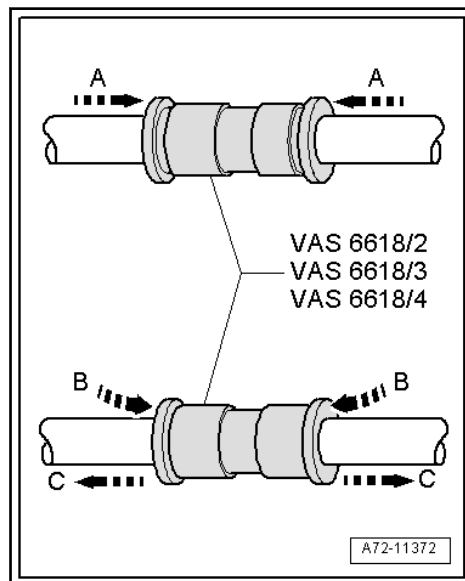
◆ -a- = 100 mm

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 - Pneumatic line to air cushion (bottom)

◆ -b- = 100 mm

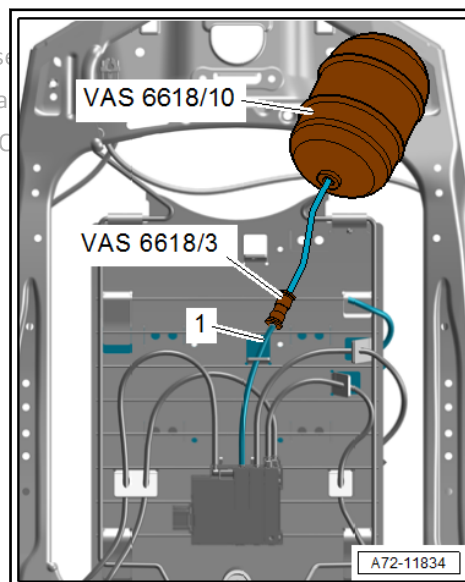
- To connect pneumatic lines, attach connecting sleeves from -VAS 6618- to pneumatic lines.



**i** Note

- ◆ To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/2- from both sides -arrows A-.
- ◆ To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.
- Connect pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10- to line -1- going to lumbar support air cushion.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



**i** Note

The illustration shows the pneumatic line to the lumbar support air cushion (top) as an example.

- Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test => [page 412](#).

### 4.3.2 Preparation for leak test for compressor -V439-/-V440- and pressure line

**Note**

- ◆ If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ *Vehicle diagnostic tester*.
- ◆ The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the seat, are described in the following.
- ◆ Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ [page 403](#)

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ◆ Turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A-

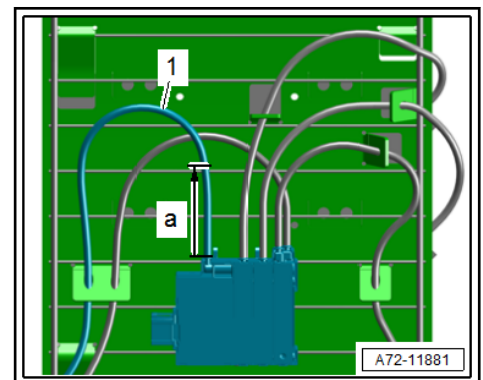


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



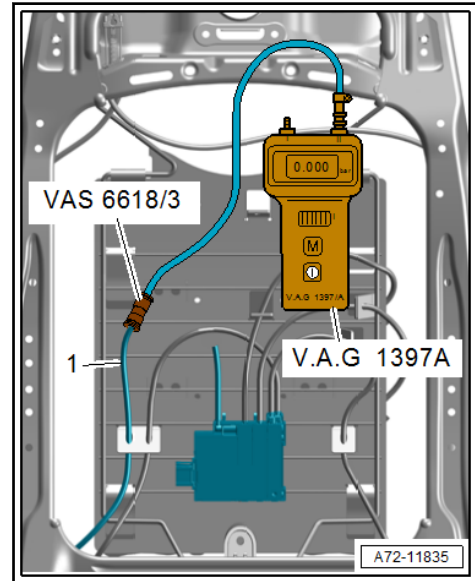
- ◆ Pneumatic repair set -VAS 6618 A-

**Procedure**



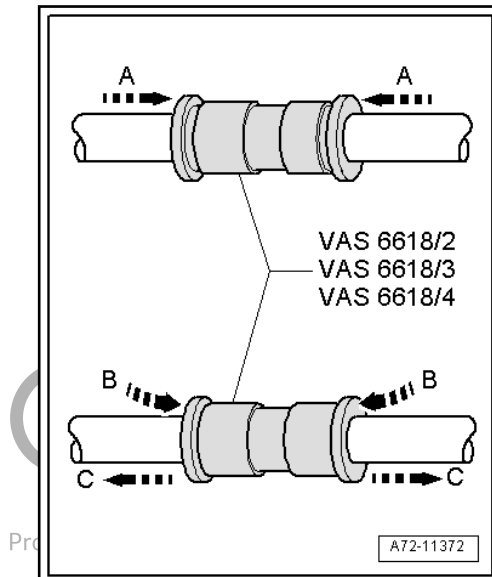
In one of the test steps in the "Guided Fault Finding" routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line from compressor -V439-/-V440-.

- Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ [page 349](#)
- Sever pneumatic line -1- to compressor -V439-/-V440- at the following point ⇒ [page 412](#) :
- ◆ -a- = 80 mm
- Connect turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- from compressor using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618-.



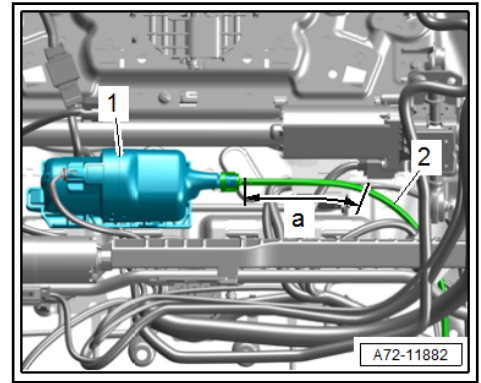
**i** Note

To connect pneumatic lines, insert lines in connecting sleeves -VAS 6618/3- from both sides -arrows A-.

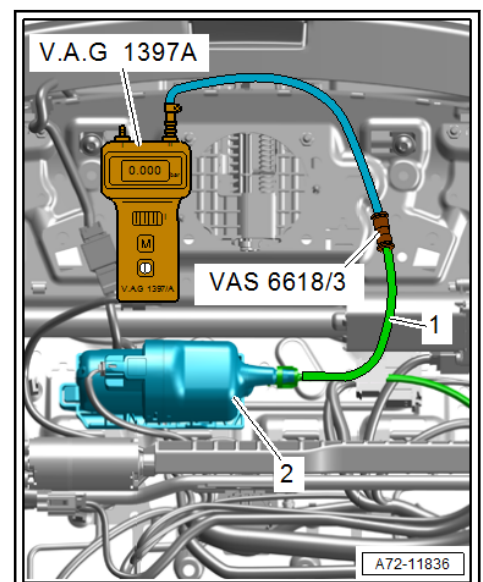


To disconnect pneumatic lines, press release rings -arrows B- and at the same time disconnect lines -arrows C-.

In one of the test steps in the "Guided Fault Finding" routine, you will be prompted to connect the turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A- directly to the compressor.



- Front seat in vehicle unbolted and tilted towards front with electrical connectors plugged in ⇒ [page 329](#)
- Sever pneumatic line -2- from compressor -1- at the following point ⇒ [page 412](#) :
- ◆ -a- = 50 mm
- Connect turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A- to pneumatic line -1- of compressor -2- using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618-



- Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test ⇒ [page 412](#) .

### 4.3.3 Preparation for leak test for backrest bolster adjuster



#### Note

- ◆ *If there is a corresponding entry in the event memory, the "Guided Fault Finding" routine prompts the user to perform a leak test ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.*
- ◆ *The preparations for this leak test, which have to be performed directly at the front seat, are described in the following.*
- ◆ *Connection diagram with allocation of pneumatic lines to air cushions ⇒ [page 403](#)*

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ◆ Turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A-

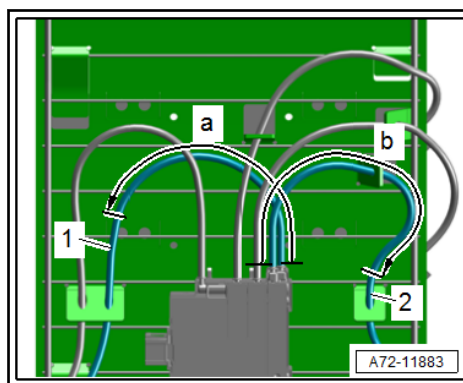


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- ◆ Pneumatic repair set -VAS 6618 A-

### Procedure



- Backrest cover panel removed ⇒ [page 349](#)
- Before severing pneumatic lines, mark allocation of lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen.
- Sever pneumatic line -1- to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) ⇒ [page 412](#) at the following point:
  - ◆ -a- = 200 mm

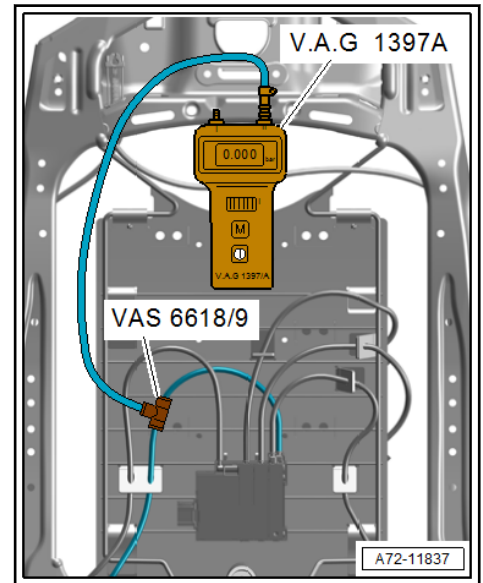


### Note

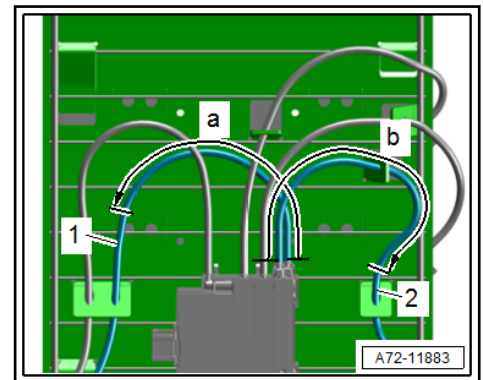
*Ignore -items 2 and b-.*

- Join up turbocharger tester -V.A.G 1397A- in pneumatic line leading to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) using hose sections and adapters from -VAS 6618-.





In another of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to connect the pneumatic line for the backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) and the pneumatic line for the backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) and to connect both pneumatic lines to the pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10-.



– Sever pneumatic line -2- to air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) at the following point:

◆ -b- = 200 mm

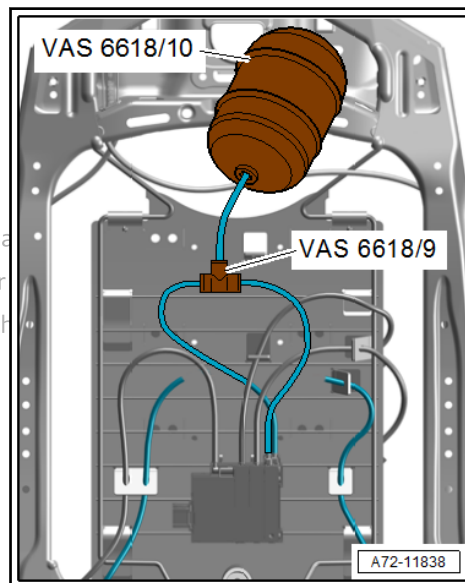
**i** Note

*Ignore -items 1 and a-.*

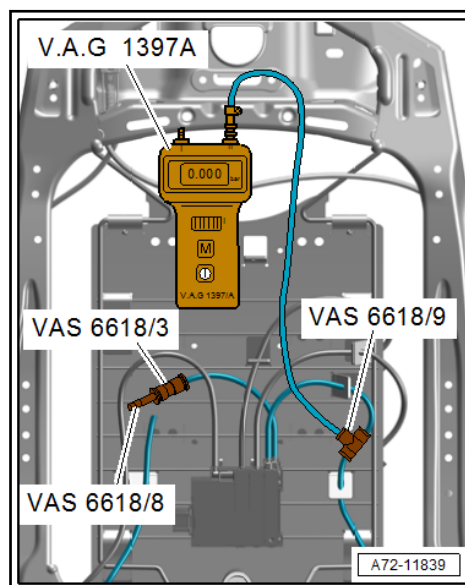
– Connect left and right pneumatic lines for backrest bolster adjuster together and to pressure expansion tank -VAS 6618/10-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or warrant the accuracy or completeness with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2021 Audi AG



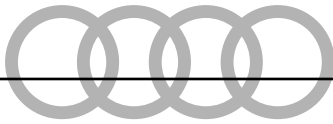
In another of the test steps in the “Guided Fault Finding” routine, you will be prompted to close off the pneumatic line for the backrest bolster adjuster (left-side) and to join up the turbo-charger tester -V.A.G 1397A- to the pneumatic line leading to the air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster (right-side) using hose sections and adapters.



– Connect pneumatic lines after completing leak test => [page 412](#) .

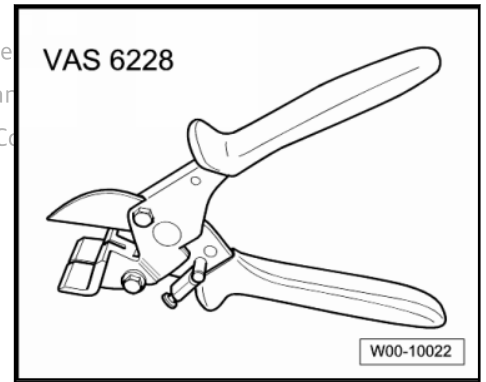
#### 4.4 Severing and connecting pneumatic lines

Special tools and workshop equipment required



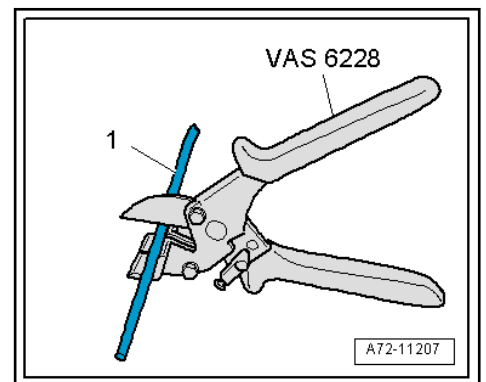
◆ Cutting pliers -VAS 6228-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2021



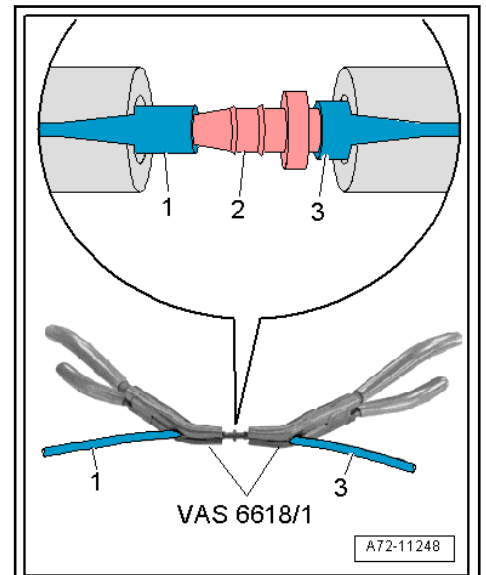
◆ Pliers -VAS 6618/1- (2x)

Severing pneumatic line



- Apply cutting pliers -VAS 6228- at right angle and cut through pneumatic line -1-.

Connecting pneumatic line



- Slide pneumatic lines -1- and -3- onto line connector -2- from both sides using pliers -VAS 6618/1-; for line connector, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

## 4.5 Servicing pneumatic lines

- ◆ A repair set containing pneumatic lines and line connectors is available for repairing pneumatic lines ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- ◆ Pneumatic lines must not be detached directly at the components. Always separate and connect pneumatic lines as described in this manual.
- ◆ Genuine replacement parts are supplied with short line sections which are connected to the pneumatic lines with line connectors.
- ◆ Protect pneumatic lines and line connectors against contamination.
- ◆ It is NOT permissible to heat pneumatic lines when connecting them to the line connectors.
- ◆ It is NOT permissible to use lubricant when connecting the pneumatic lines to the line connectors.
- ◆ After the repair, the serviced pneumatic line should be just as long as the line was previously (tolerance: ± 10 mm).
- ◆ Contamination at the joints can lead to leaks. Therefore it is important to make sure that the pneumatic system and test instruments are clean when performing tests.

## 4.6 Removing and installing air cushion for lumbar support

### Removing



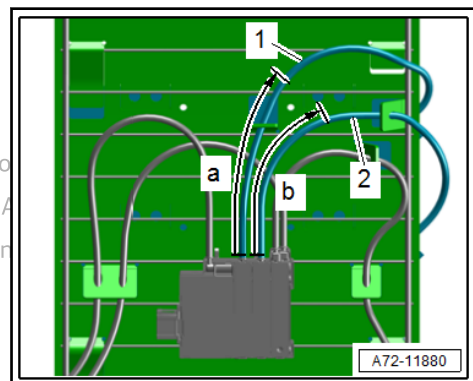
#### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 438](#).
- Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.
- Sever pneumatic lines -1, 2- to air cushion at the following point ⇒ [page 412](#).

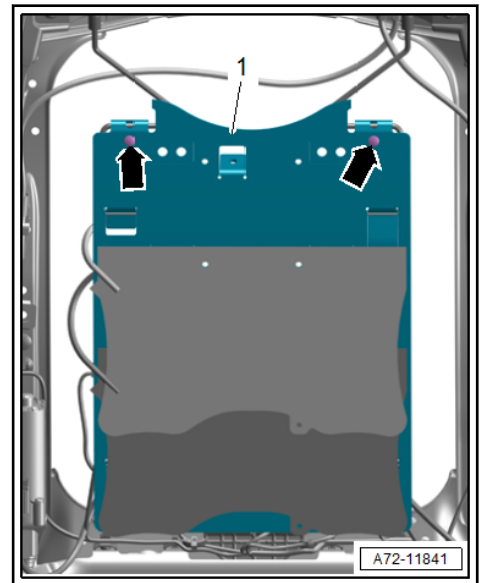


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not responsible with respect to the correctness of information in this manual.



not  
ty

- ◆ -a- = 100 mm
- ◆ -b- = 100 mm
- Pull off clips -arrows-.



- Pull pneumatic lines out of mounting lugs on carrier -1- for air cushion and disengage carrier from spring mat.

#### Installing

- Cut off pneumatic lines of new air cushion using old air cushion as a guide.
- Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ [page 412](#) .

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.2 verview - pneumatic system", page 404](#)

## 4.7 Removing and installing air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

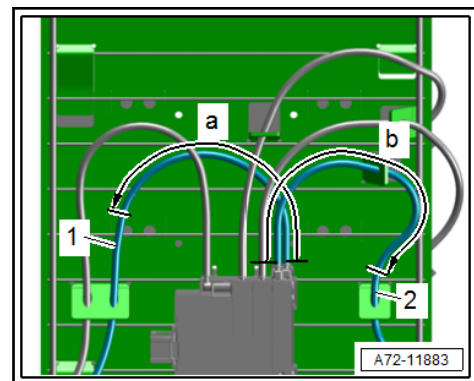
## Removing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

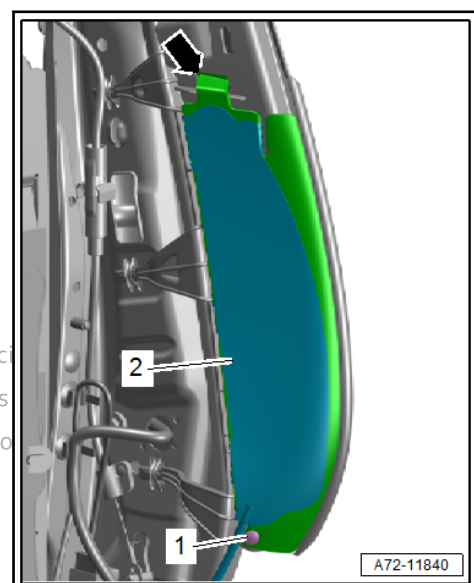
- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 438](#) .
- Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.
- Sever pneumatic lines -1 and 2- at the following locations ⇒ [page 412](#) :



- ◆ -a- = 200 mm
- ◆ -b- = 200 mm
- Detach clip -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Swivel air cushion for backrest bolster adjuster -2- upwards and pull it out of connector -arrow-.

## Installing

- Cut off pneumatic lines of new air cushion using old air cushion as a guide.
- Connect pneumatic lines ⇒ [page 412](#) .

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.2 overview - pneumatic system](#)", [page 404](#)

## 4.8 Removing and installing control unit for front multicontour seat -J872-/-J873-

### Removing

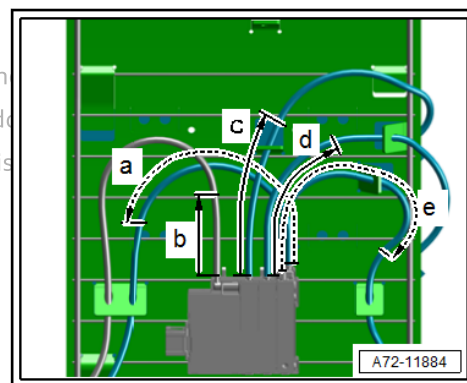
**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 349](#) .
- Mark pneumatic lines with a waterproof felt-tip pen at cutting point for re-installation.
- Sever pneumatic lines at the following locations ⇒ [page 412](#) :

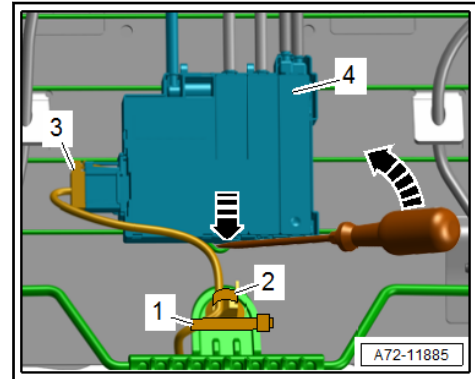


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- ◆ -a- = 200 mm
- ◆ -b- = 50 mm

- ◆ -c- = 100 mm
- ◆ -d- = 100 mm
- ◆ -e- = 200 mm
- Cut open cable tie -2- and detach cable clip -2-.



- Press release tab and unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Using a screwdriver, lever retaining piece on spring mat downwards -arrows- and detach control unit for multicontour seat -4-.

### Installing

- After connecting pneumatic lines, press them on again and then pull lines to check that plug-in connectors are engaged properly.



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.2 verview - pneumatic system](#), [page 404](#)

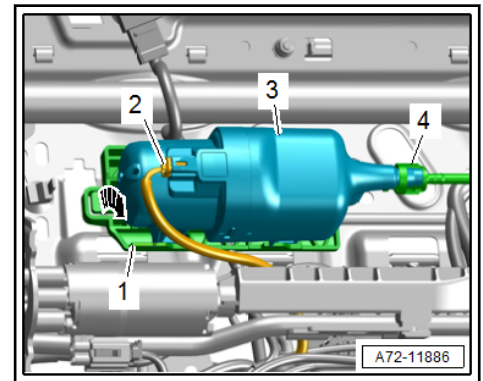
## 4.9 Removing and installing compressor for multicontour seat -V439-/-V440-

### Removing

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Press release ring and disconnect pneumatic line -4- from compressor.



- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Press release button -arrow-.
- Slide compressor -3- for multicontour seat to the side off bracket -1-.

### Installing

**i Note**

*Check O-ring for pneumatic lines and renew if damaged.*

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*



The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o4.2 overview - pneumatic system", page 404](#)**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## 74 – Seat - padding, covers

### 1 Covers and padding on front seats

- ⇒ [o1.1 verview - seat pan cover and padding", page 421](#)
- ⇒ [o1.2 verview - backrest cover and padding", page 424](#)
- ⇒ [o1.3 verview - seat heater elements", page 425](#)
- ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding", page 427](#)
- ⇒ [a1.5 nd installing backrest cover and padding", page 433](#)
- ⇒ [s1.6 eat pan cover and padding", page 442](#)
- ⇒ [b1.7 ackrest cover and padding", page 443](#)
- ⇒ [a1.8 nd installing seat heater element Z6/Z8", page 444](#)
- ⇒ [a1.9 nd installing backrest heater element Z7/Z9", page 445](#)

#### 1.1 Assembly overview - seat pan cover and padding

- ⇒ [o1.1.1 verview - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat", page 421](#)
- ⇒ [o1.1.2 verview - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat", page 422](#)

##### 1.1.1 Assembly overview - seat pan cover and padding, sports seat



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Seat pan****2 - Seat padding**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 427](#)
- Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 442](#)

**3 - Seat bolster padding**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding", page 427](#)

**4 - Piping**

- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

**5 - Seat cover**

- Equipment versions:

## ◆ Fabric

## ◆ Leather

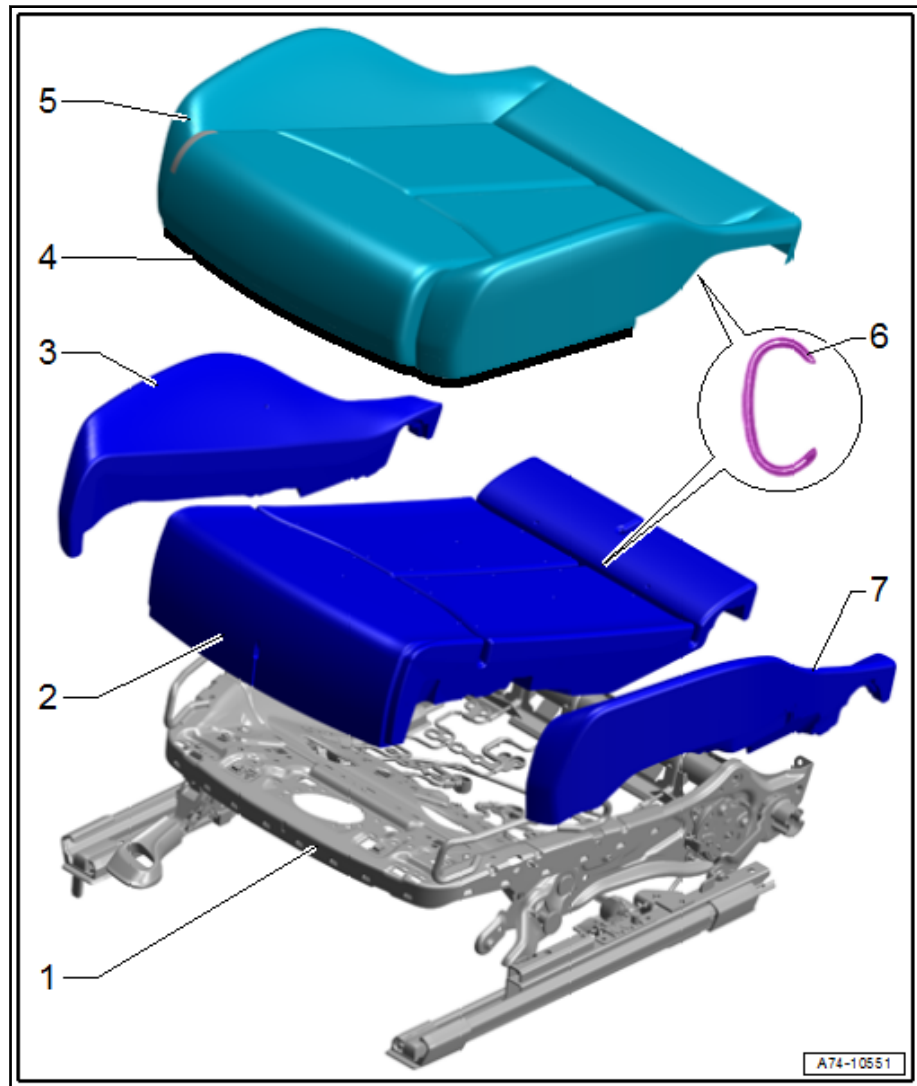
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 427](#)
- Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 442](#)
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

**6 - Upholstery clip**

- For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

**7 - Seat bolster padding**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding", page 427](#)

**1.1.2 Assembly overview - seat pan cover and padding, super sports seat**

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**1 - Seat pan**

**2 - Seat padding**

- For seat depth adjuster
- Removing and installing ⇒ [page 431](#)

**3 - Seat bolster padding**

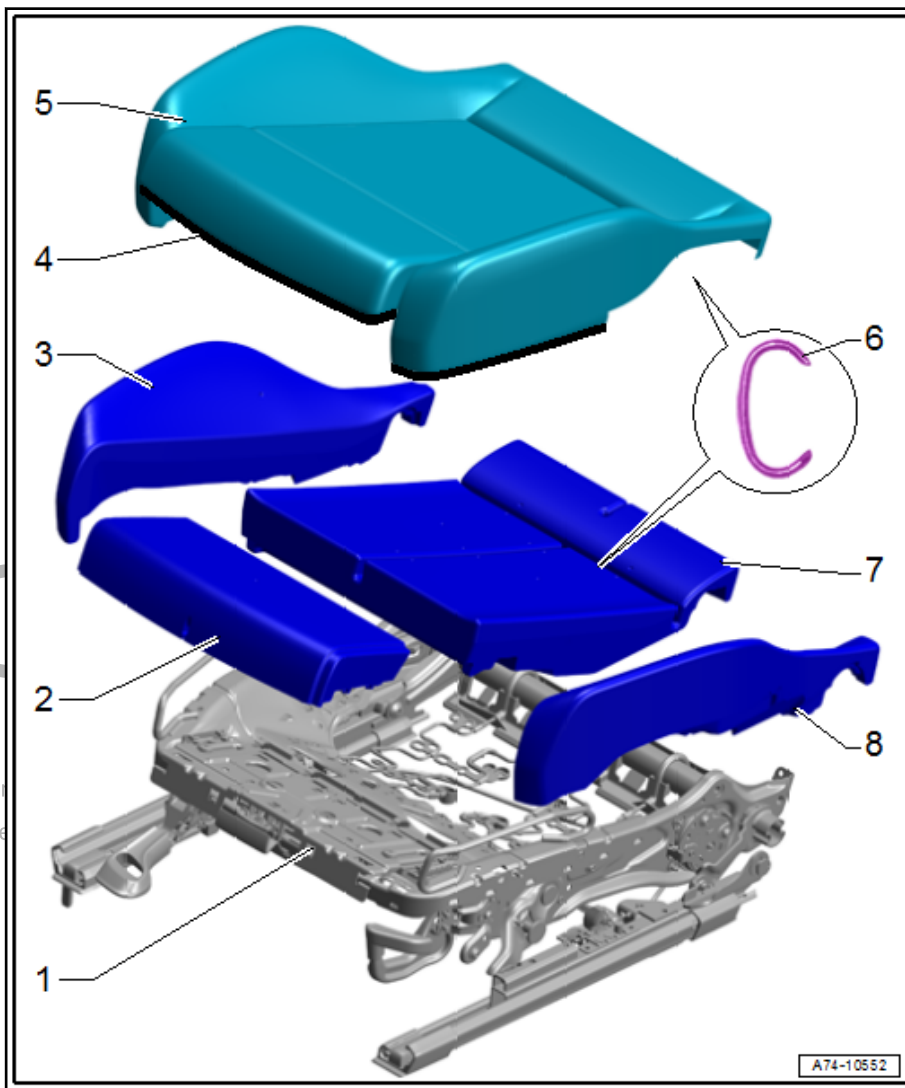
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 427](#)

**4 - Piping**

- Stitched to seat cover
- For engaging seat cover at upper seat pan frame
- Make sure piping is seated correctly in seat pan

**5 - Seat cover**

- Equipment versions:
- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 427](#)
- Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 442](#)
- After installing, make sure there are no creases



**6 - Upholstery clip**

- For attaching seat cover to seat padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

**7 - Seat padding**

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)
- Removing and installing seat cover with padding ⇒ [page 427](#)
- Separating seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 442](#)

**8 - Seat bolster padding**

- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding”, page 427](#)

## 1.2 Assembly overview - backrest cover and padding

⇒ [01.2.1 overview - backrest cover and padding, sports seat](#), page 424

⇒ [01.2.2 overview - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat](#), page 424

### 1.2.1 Assembly overview - backrest cover and padding, sports seat

#### 1 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching cover to padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

#### 2 - Backrest cover

- Equipment versions:

##### ◆ Fabric

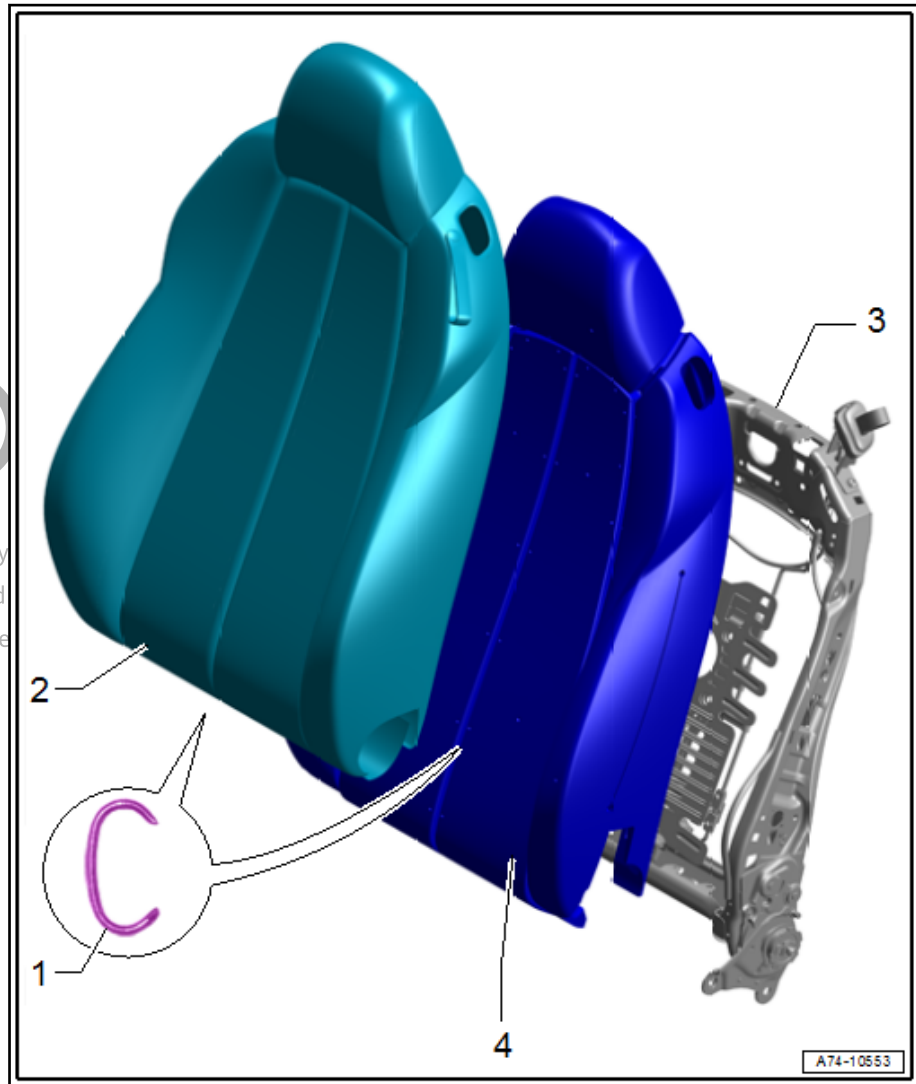
##### ◆ Leather

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 433](#)
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 443](#)
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

#### 3 - Outer backrest frame

#### 4 - Padding

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ [Electronic parts catalogue](#)
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 433](#)
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 443](#)



### 1.2.2 Assembly overview - backrest cover and padding, super sports seat

### 1 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching cover to padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

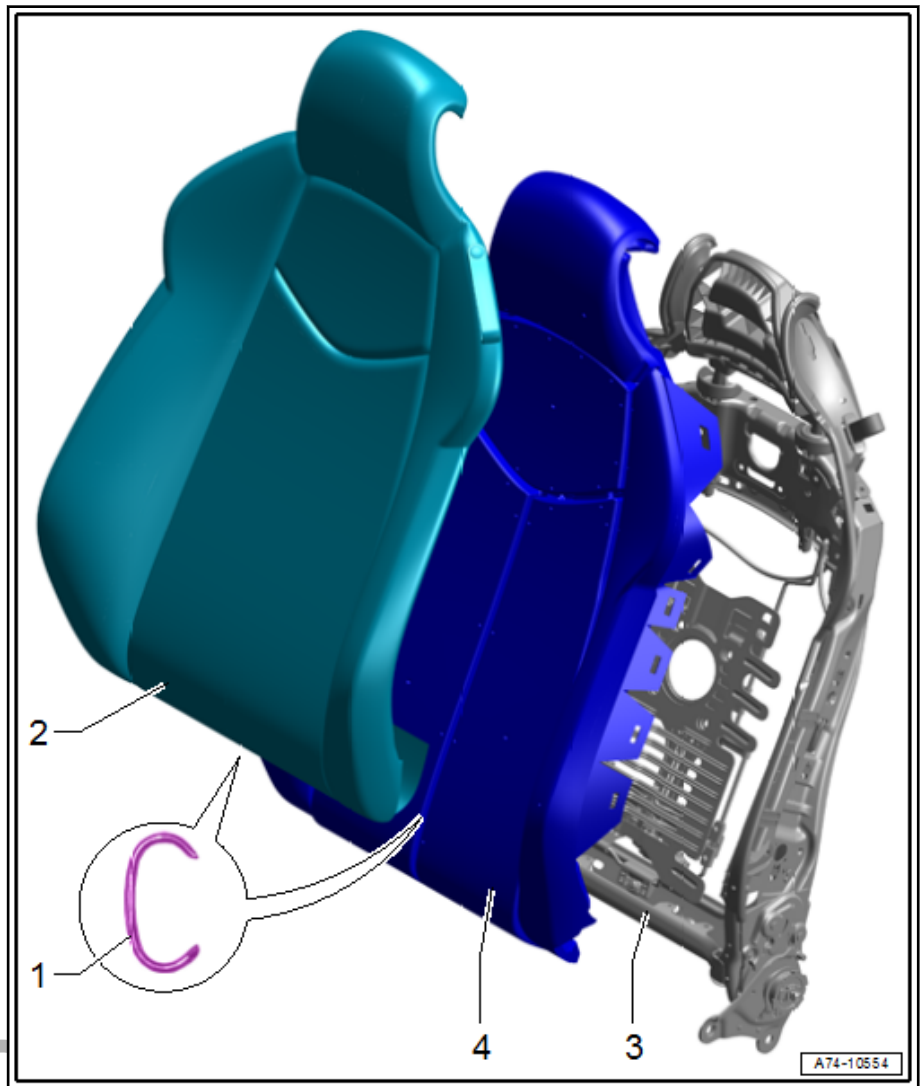
### 2 - Backrest cover

- Equipment versions:
  - ◆ Fabric
  - ◆ Leather
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 438](#)
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 443](#)
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

### 3 - Outer backrest frame

### 4 - Padding

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 438](#)
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 443](#)



## 1.3 Assembly overview - seat heater elements

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ [01.3.1 overview - seat heater elements, sports seat](#), page 425

⇒ [01.3.2 overview - seat heater elements, super sports seat](#), page 426

### 1.3.1 Assembly overview - seat heater elements, sports seat





**1 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat -Z6-**

- Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat -Z8-
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Renewing ⇒ [page 444](#)

**2 - Seat padding**

- When renewing, bond on new heater element ⇒ [page 444](#)

**3 - Left bolster heater for driver seat -Z76-/right bolster heater for driver seat -Z77-**

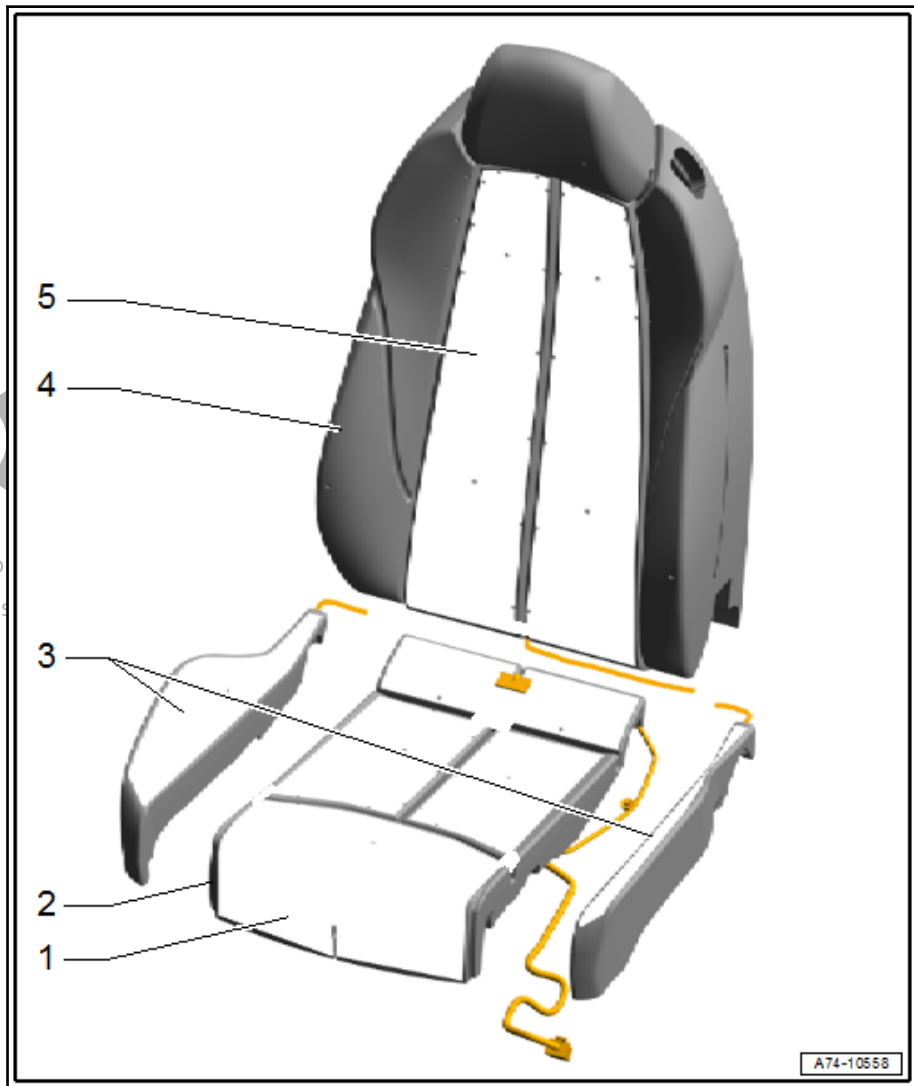
- Passenger side: left bolster heater for front passenger seat -Z80-/right bolster heater for driver seat -Z81-
- Heater element bonded onto seat bolster padding
- Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding](#)", [page 427](#)

**4 - Backrest padding**

- When renewing, bond on new heater element ⇒ [page 445](#)

**5 - Heated backrest for driver seat -Z7-**

- Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat -Z9-
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- Renewing ⇒ [page 445](#)



**1.3.2 Assembly overview - seat heater elements, super sports seat**



**1 - Heated seat extension for driver seat -Z37-**

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat extension for front passenger seat -Z38-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4.2 nd installing seat padding for seat depth adjuster](#), page 431

**2 - Left bolster heater for driver seat -Z76-/right bolster heater for driver seat -Z77-**

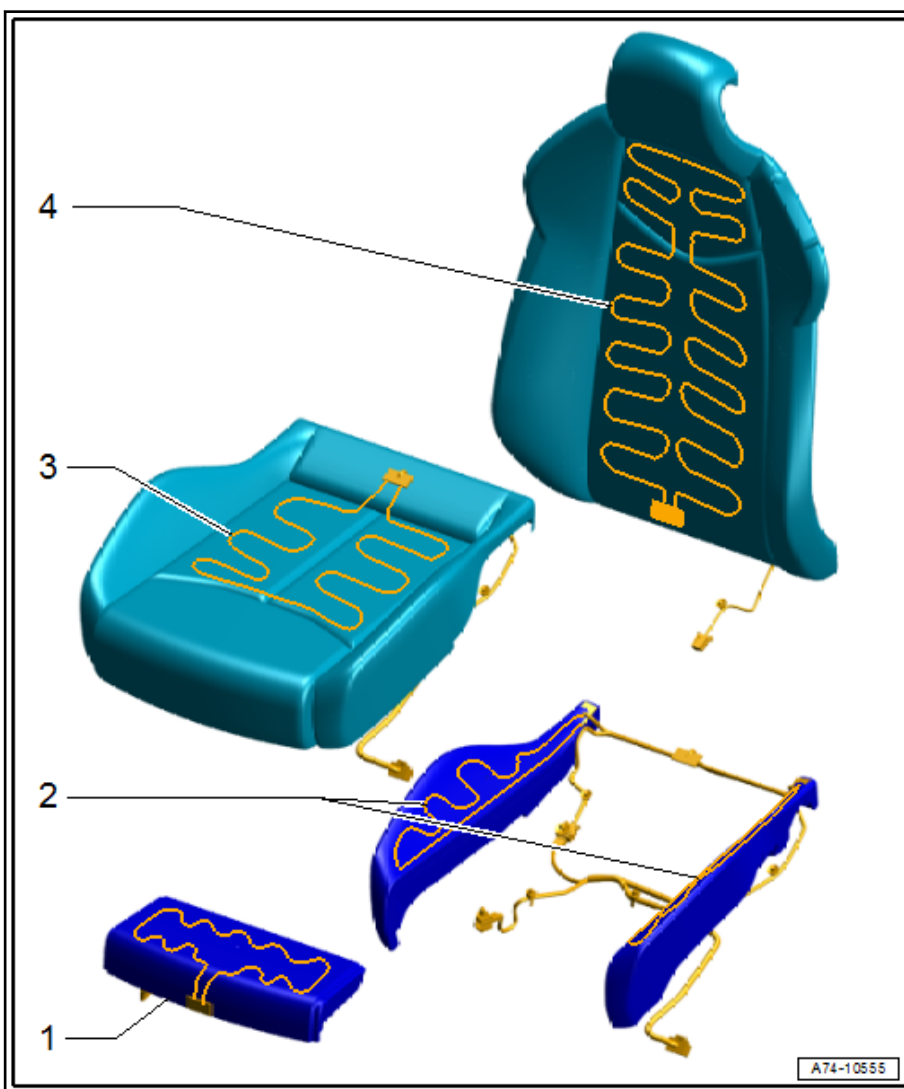
- ❑ Passenger side: left bolster heater for front passenger seat -Z80-/right bolster heater for driver seat -Z81-
- ❑ Heater element bonded onto seat bolster padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ [a1.4 nd installing seat pan cover and padding](#), page 427

**3 - Heated seat cushion for driver seat -Z6-**

- ❑ Passenger side: heated seat cushion for front passenger seat -Z8-
- ❑ Heater element stitched to seat cover; if defective, renew seat cover ⇒ [page 442](#)

**4 - Heated backrest for driver seat -Z7-**

- ❑ Passenger side: heated backrest for front passenger seat -Z9-
- ❑ Heater element stitched to backrest cover; if defective, renew backrest cover ⇒ [page 443](#)



**1.4 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding**

⇒ [a1.4.1 nd installing seat pan cover and padding](#), page 427

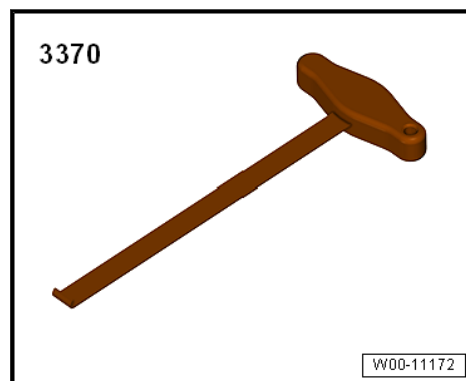
⇒ [a1.4.2 nd installing seat padding for seat depth adjuster](#), page 431

**1.4.1 Removing and installing seat pan cover and padding**

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

◆ Front-end hook -3370-



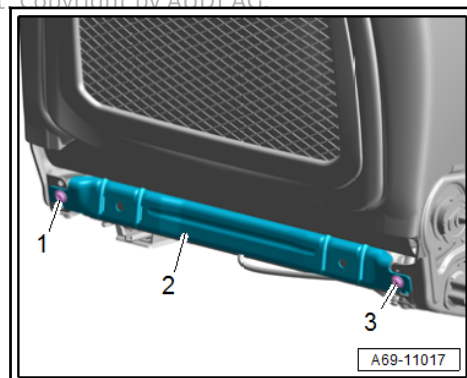
### Removing



#### WARNING

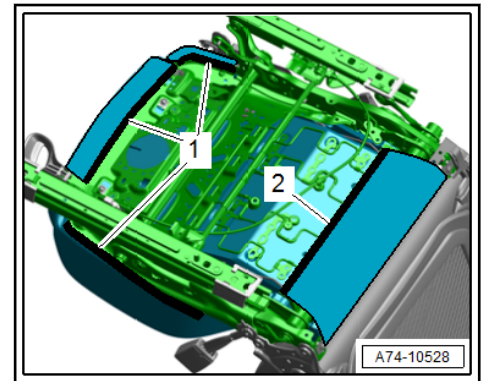
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*
- ◆ *Country-specific version with seat occupied recognition: Observe safety regulations for seat occupied sensors ⇒ [page 7](#) .*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
  - Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
  - Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
  - Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
  - Remove seat side trim and bracket for seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
  - If fitted: Move wiring harness for seat and bolster heating clear at seat pan ⇒ [page 361](#) .
  - Front passenger seat (NAR version): Remove seat occupied sensor ⇒ [page 177](#) .
  - Remove bolts -1, 3-
- Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



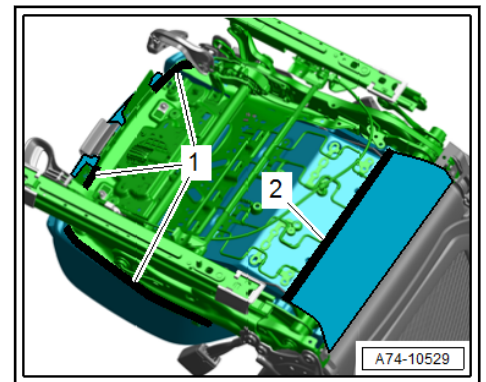
- Detach cross-piece/child seat anchor -2- from front seat towards rear.

#### Sports seat:



- Disengage piping -1- of cover using front-end hook -3370- (front and side sections).
- Disengage piping -2- of cover using front-end hook -3370- (rear section).

#### Super sports seat:



- Remove padding for seat depth adjuster with cover => [page 370](#).
- Disengage piping -1- of cover (front and side sections) using front-end hook -3370-.
- Disengage piping -2- of cover (rear section) using front-end hook -3370-.

#### Note

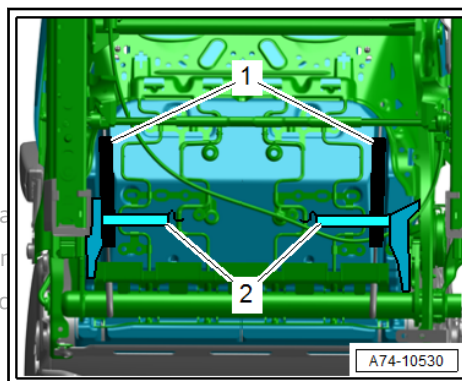
*Padding section of seat depth adjustment (seat padding) remains in seat cover.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

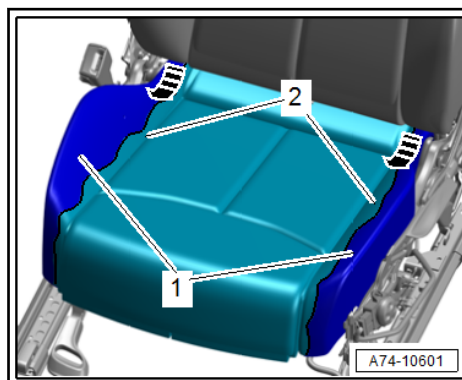
All seat versions (continued):



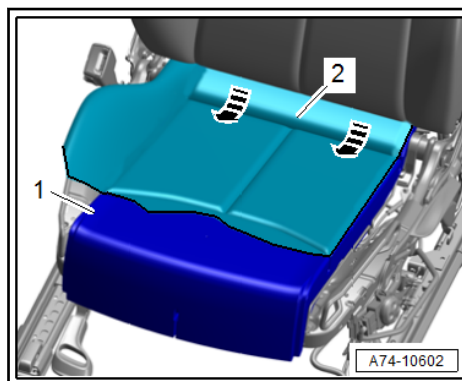
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Disengage hooks of tabs -2- at bottom of seat pan.
- Disengage piping -1- at bottom at bracket on seat pan.
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for bolster heater and move wiring clear.



- Detach seat cover -2- from padding in area of seat bolster padding.
- Release seat bolster padding -1- from seat pan and pull it out carefully towards front under backrest -arrows-; it may be necessary to move wiring harness for bolster heater clear while doing so.
- Unfasten padding -1- with cover -2- from seat pan and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.



- Detach cover with padding from seat pan and at the same time move clear wiring harness for seat heating (if fitted).
- Front passenger seat (NAR version): Guide out control unit with wiring harness and detach together with seat cover and padding.

## Installing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

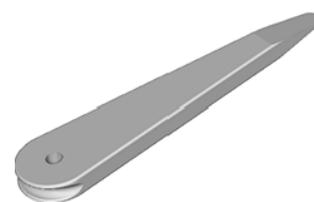
Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - seat pan cover and padding](#), [page 421](#)

### 1.4.2 Removing and installing seat padding for seat depth adjuster

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-

3409



W00-11118

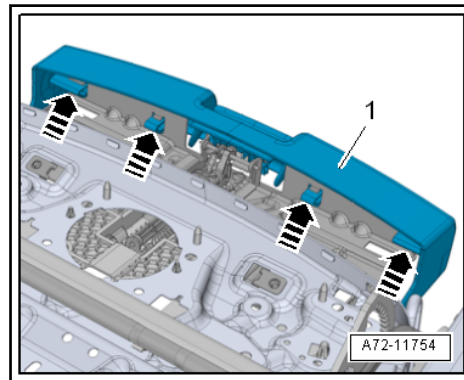
## Removing



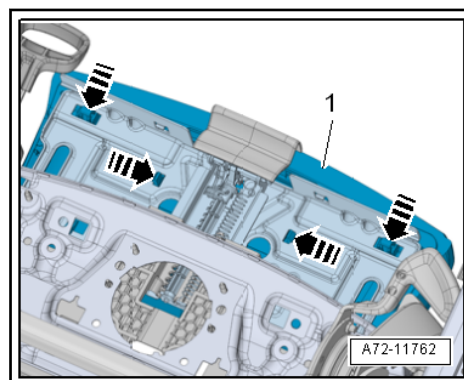
### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Remove storage compartment ⇒ [page 367](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Unplug electrical connector for heated seat extension.
- Set seat depth adjuster as far forwards as it will go.



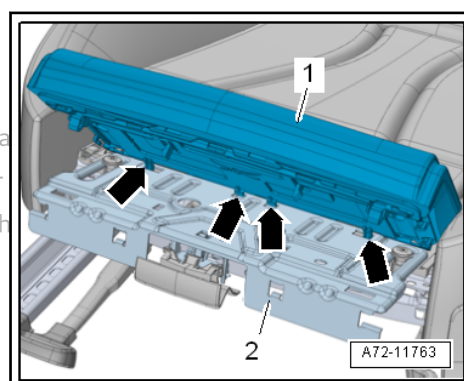
- Squeeze retaining tabs -arrows- at trim -1- using pliers or release them using removal wedge -3409-.
- Detach trim from seat depth adjuster.
- Release retaining tabs -arrows- on mounting bracket at seat depth adjuster using removal wedge -3409-.



- At the same time pull off mounting bracket -1- upwards with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster.
- Disengage lugs -arrows- at seat depth adjuster -2- and fold up mounting bracket with padding and cover.

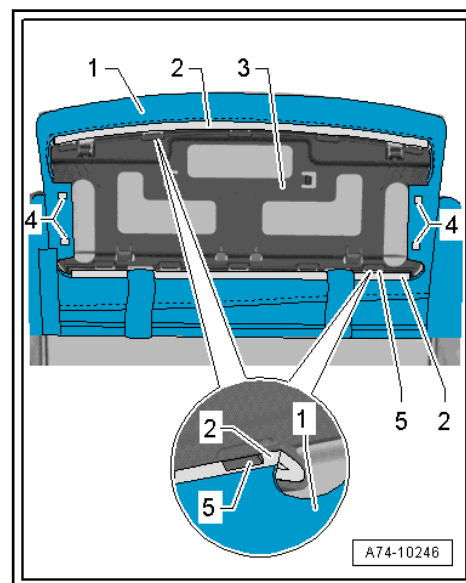


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © 2011 Audi AG



- Pull off mounting bracket -1- with padding and cover for seat depth adjuster at an angle (upwards and towards front).
- Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.





- Disengage cover from lugs -4- on both sides.
- Pull padding -3- for seat depth adjuster off cover -1-.

#### Installing

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.5.2 overview - seat pan](#), [page 323](#) , ⇒ [o1.1 overview - seat pan cover and padding](#), [page 421](#)

## 1.5 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding

⇒ [a1.5.1 nd installing backrest cover and padding - sports seat](#), [page 433](#)

⇒ [a1.5.2 nd installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat](#), [page 438](#)

### 1.5.1 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - sports seat

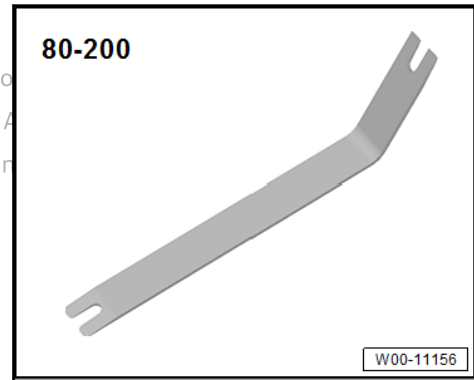
The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

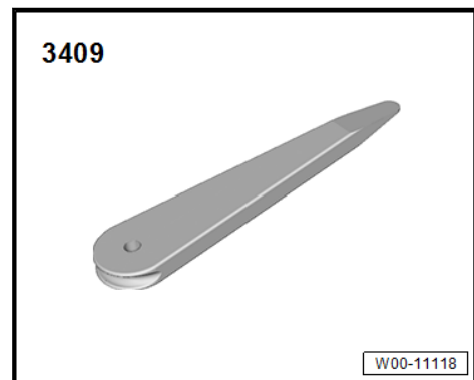


## ◆ Removal lever -80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial use is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG is not liable with respect to the correctness of information in this manual.



## ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



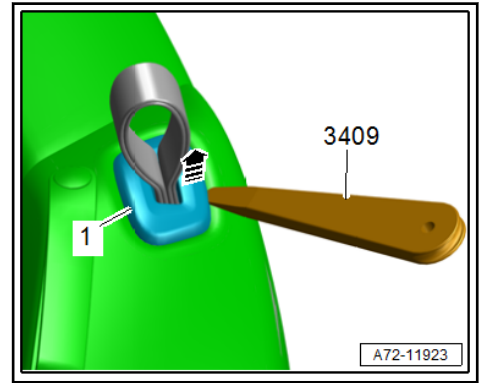
## Removing

**WARNING**

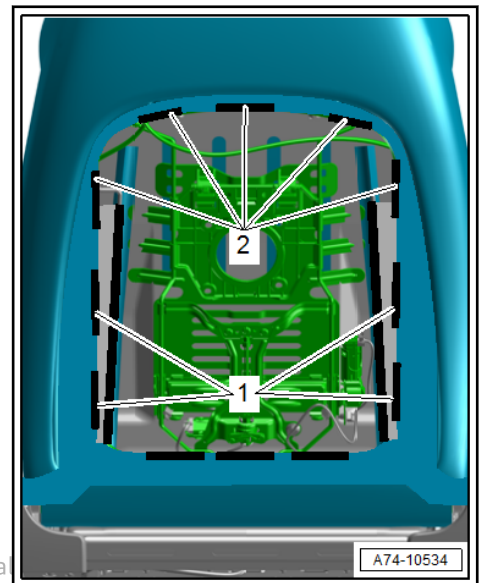
- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ [page 349](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Move wiring harness for backrest heating, airbag and lumbar support motor clear at seat pan ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 347](#) .
- Working alternately on both sides, unclip trim -1- for backrest release mechanism with removal wedge -3409- -arrow-.



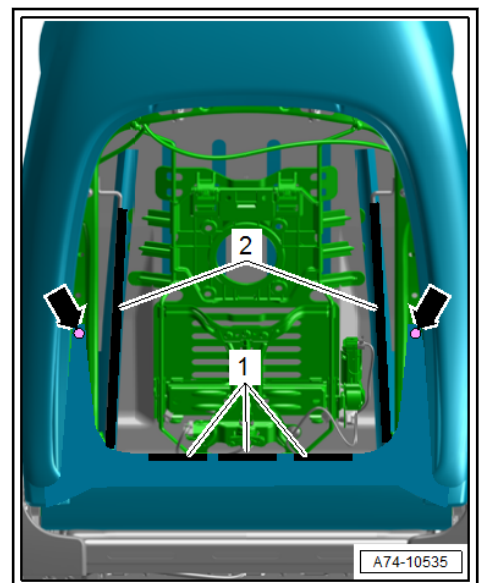


- Thread out pull strap and detach trim.
- Disengage piping -1- on sides of outer backrest frame.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial

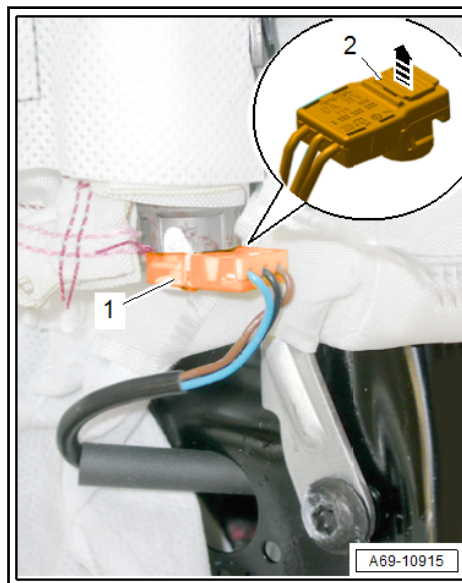
- Disengage piping -2- on top of outer backrest frame.
- Remove clips -arrows- at outer backrest frame using removal lever -80-200-.



- Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.



- Disengage piping -2- at retainers on outer backrest frame.



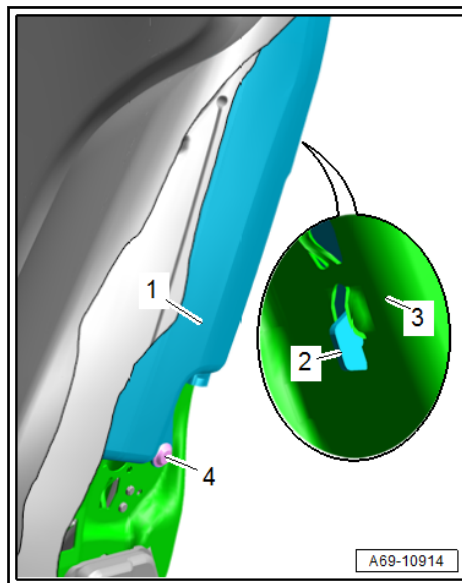
A69-10915



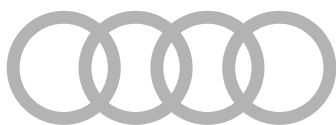
**WARNING**

*Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Release connector locking element -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at igniter for side airbag.
- In area of side airbag, carefully pull backrest cover with padding forwards as far as possible.



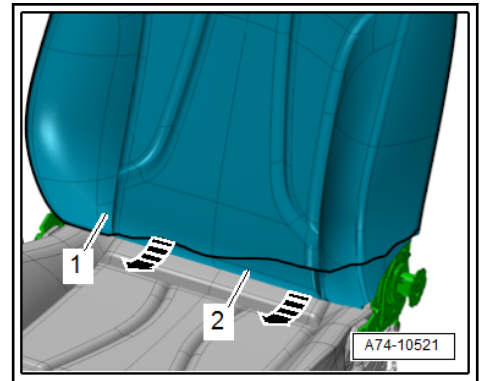
A69-10914



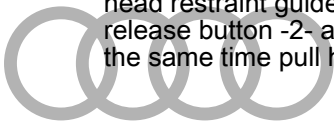
- Remove bolt -4-
- Disengage side airbag -1- with hook -2- from outer backrest frame -3- and detach.

Copyright by Audi AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted without the prior written consent of Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

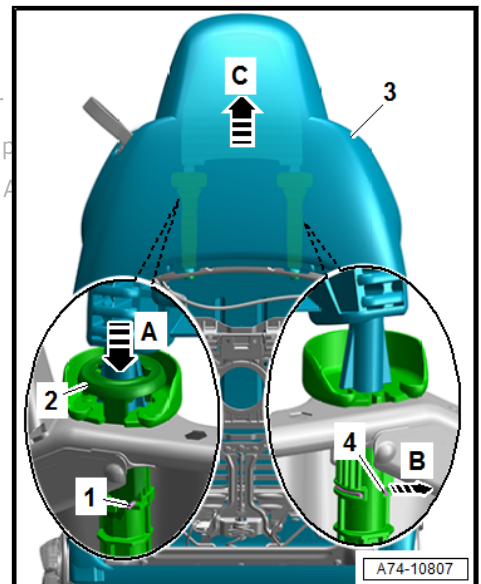
- Unfasten cover -1- with padding -2- from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.



- Version with release button: Release support wire -1- at head restraint guide, reach behind padding and press down release button -2- at head restraint guide -arrow A-, and at the same time pull head restraint out of fastener.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG



- Version without release button: Release support wire -4- at head restraint guide using screwdriver -arrow B-.
- Pull head restraint with padding and cover -3- upwards out of outer backrest frame -arrow C-.
- Unfasten padding and cover from outer backrest frame and lift off; depending on version, guide out wiring harness for backrest heating.

## Installing

**WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#).*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#).*

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.2 overview - backrest cover and padding](#), [page 424](#)

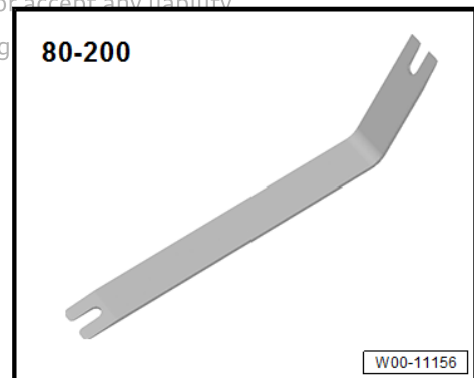
## 1.5.2 Removing and installing backrest cover and padding - super sports seat

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example.

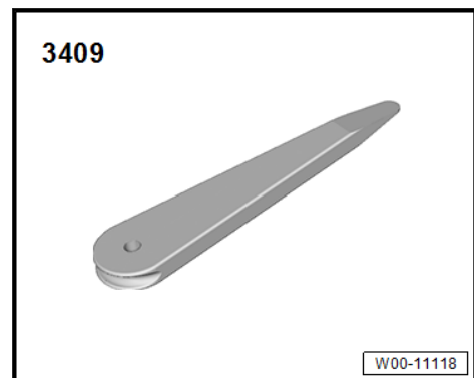
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Removal lever -80-200-



- ◆ Removal wedge -3409-



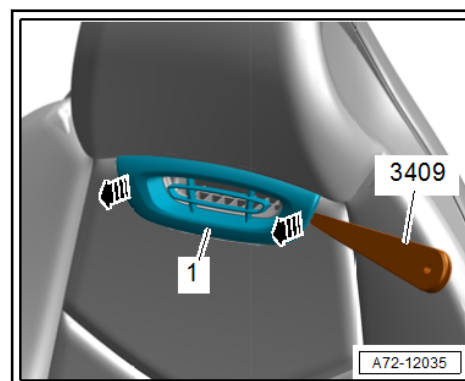
## Removing



### WARNING

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

- Remove front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ [page 338](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (tunnel side) ⇒ [page 366](#) .
- Remove seat side trim (sill side) ⇒ [page 365](#) .
- Remove backrest cover panel and side trim ⇒ [page 351](#) .
- Remove front side airbag ⇒ [page 134](#) .
- Move wiring harness for side airbag and backrest heating (if fitted) clear at seat pan ⇒ [page 361](#) .
- Remove front seat backrest ⇒ [page 347](#) .
- Depending on equipment version: Unclip neck heating vent -1- using removal wedge -3409- -arrows- and detach.



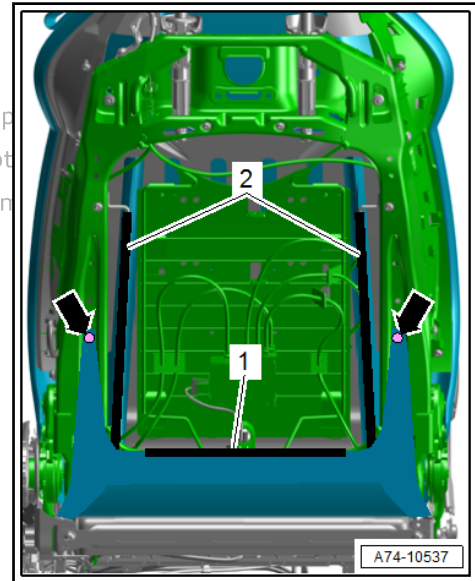
- Remove clips -arrows- at outer backrest frame using removal lever -80-200-.



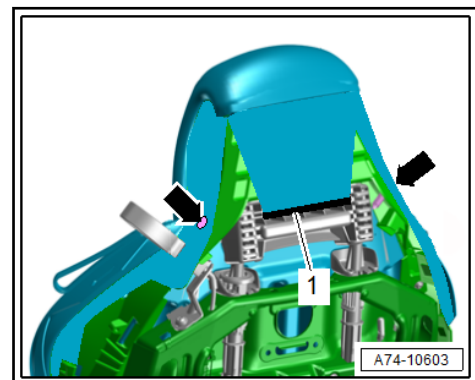
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



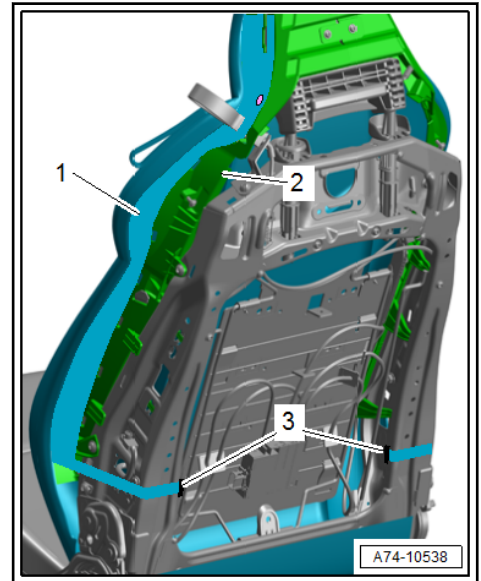
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Disengage piping -1- at bottom of outer backrest frame.
- Disengage piping -2- at retainers on outer backrest frame.
- Remove clips -arrows- from side bolster using removal lever -80-200-.

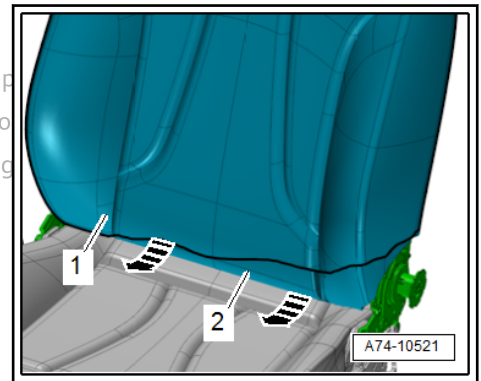


- Disengage fastening strip -1- for cover from head restraint.
- Disengage cover and padding -1- from retaining hooks of seat bolster -2- on both sides.



- Disengage tabs -3- of cover from outer backrest frame.
- Unfasten cover -1- with padding -2- from outer backrest frame and carefully pull it out under backrest towards front -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © Audi AG 2015



- Lift padding and cover off outer backrest frame; depending on version, guide out wiring harness for backrest heating.

### Installing

**⚠ WARNING**

- ◆ *Observe safety precautions when working on pyrotechnic components ⇒ [page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge any static electricity. This can be done by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- ◆ *Observe all measures to be taken when installing the front seat ⇒ [page 329](#) .*

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.2 overview - backrest cover and padding](#), page 424

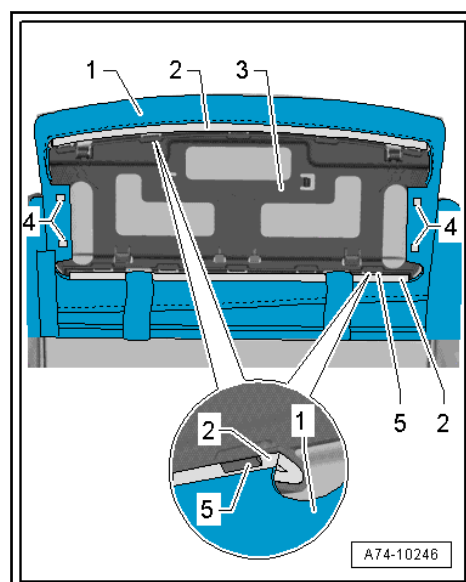
## 1.6 Separating seat pan cover and padding

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



### Removing



- Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ [page 427](#) .

#### Super sports seat:

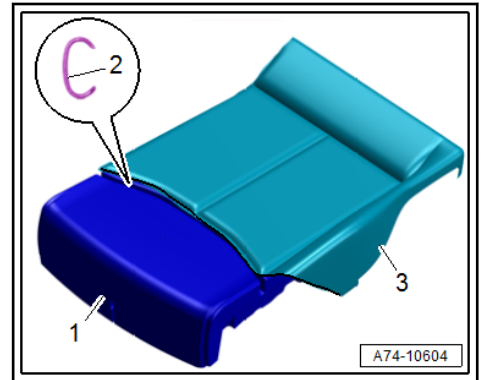
- Unclip fastening strips -2- from fasteners -5-.
- Disengage cover from lugs -4- on both sides.
- Pull padding -3- for seat depth adjuster off cover -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



All seat versions (continued):



- Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -2- using pliers.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating ⇒ [page 444](#)

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.1 overview - seat pan cover and padding](#), [page 421](#)

**1.7 Separating backrest cover and padding**

**Special tools and workshop equipment required**

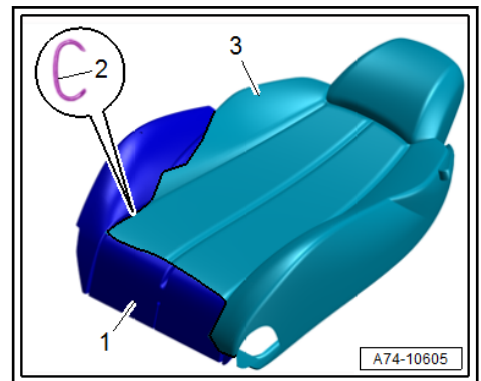
- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee the accuracy of the information with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying is prohibited.



**Removing**



- Remove seat cover and padding at backrest ⇒ [page 433](#) .
- Detach cover -3- as far as possible from padding -1- and cut through upholstery clips -2- using pliers.

**Note**

The illustration shows the sports seat as an example.

**Installing**

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Equipment version with seat heating ⇒ [page 445](#)

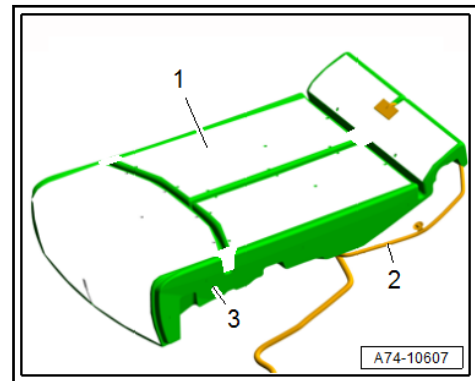
**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [01.2 overview - backrest cover and padding](#), page 424**

## 1.8 Removing and installing seat heater element -Z6-/Z8-

**Note**

- ◆ Depending on the equipment version, the seat heater element may be bonded to the padding or sewn into the seat cover ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.
- ◆ Defective seat heating is repaired by bonding a new seat heater element directly onto the defective seat heater element or by renewing the seat cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability for the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

**Procedure**

- Detach seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 442](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old heater element -1-.

**Note**

Old heater elements remain on padding -3-; new heater elements are bonded over old elements.

- Align new heater elements on padding.
- Peel protective film off heater elements one after the other, taking care not to damage heater elements.
- Bond heater elements exactly onto old heater elements without any creases.
- Route connection wires to individual heater elements in bottom of openings.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.3.1 verview - seat heater elements, sports seat](#)", page 425

## 1.9 Removing and installing backrest heater element -Z7-/Z9-

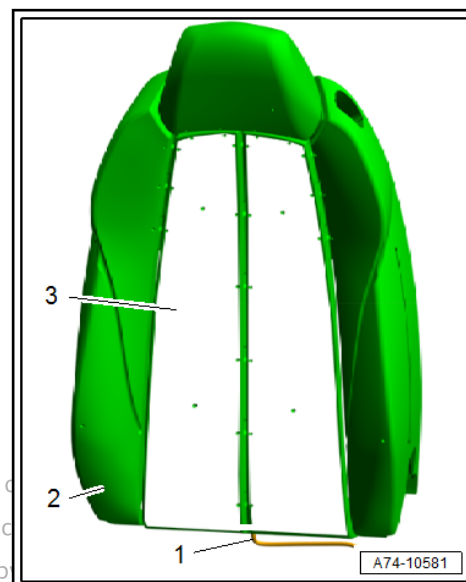
### Note

- ◆ Depending on the equipment version, the backrest heater element may be bonded to the padding or sewn into the backrest cover ⇒ *Electronic parts catalogue*.
- ◆ Defective seat heating is repaired by bonding a new backrest heater element directly onto the defective backrest heater element or by renewing the backrest cover.

### Procedure



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG



- Detach seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 443](#) .
- Cut off electrical wire -1- directly at old heater element -3-.
- Align new heater element on padding -2-.
- Peel protective film off heater element, taking care not to damage heater element.
- Bond heater elements exactly onto old heater elements without any creases.

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o1.3.1 verview - seat heater elements, sports seat](#)", page 425

## 2 Covers and padding on rear seats

⇒ [o2.1 overview - cover and padding](#)", page 446

⇒ [a2.2 and installing cover and padding](#)", page 447

⇒ [c2.3 cover from padding](#)", page 449

### 2.1 Assembly overview - cover and padding

⇒ [o2.1.1 overview - bench seat cover and padding](#)", page 446

⇒ [o2.1.2 overview - rear seat backrest cover and padding](#)", page 446

#### 2.1.1 Assembly overview - bench seat cover and padding

##### 1 - Padding

- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 449](#)
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

##### 2 - Upholstery clip

- For attaching cover to padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

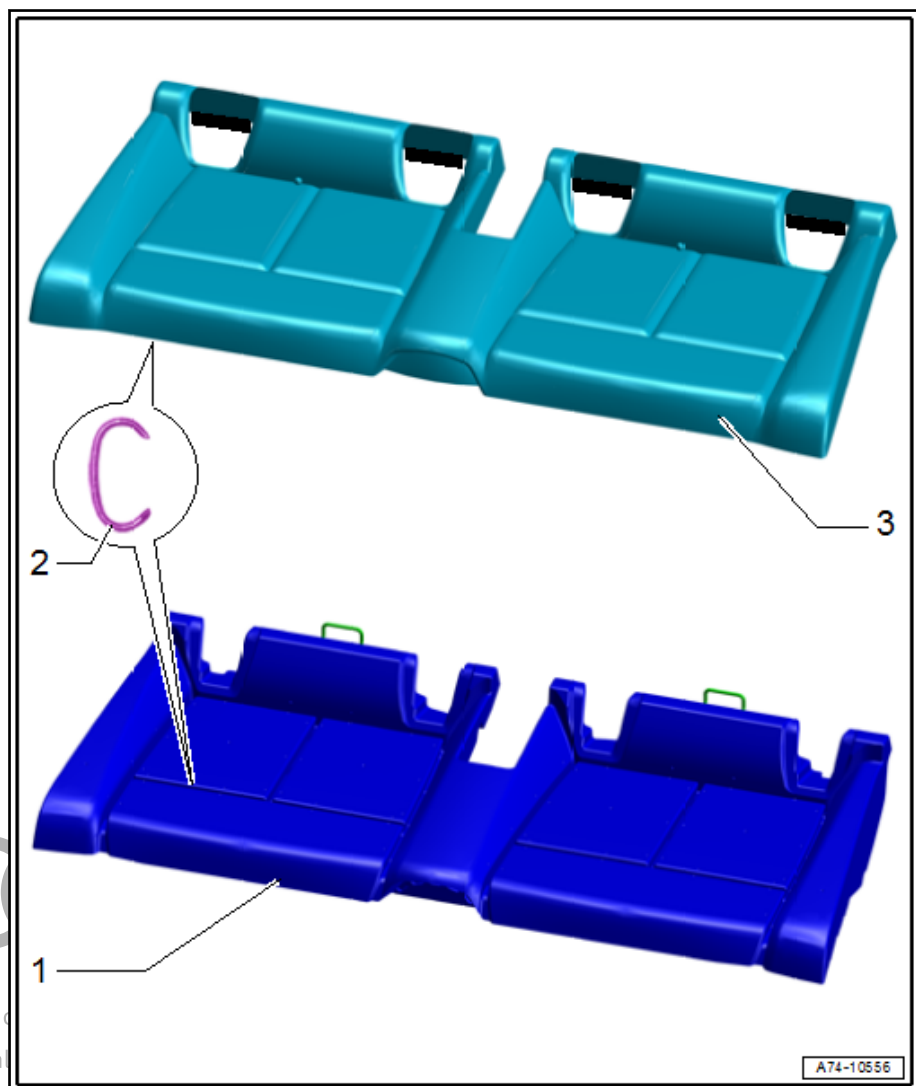
##### 3 - Seat cover

- Equipment versions:

##### ◆ Fabric

##### ◆ Leather

- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 449](#)
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- After installing, make sure there are no creases



Protected by copyright. All rights reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Audi AG. Audi AG is not liable for any errors or omissions in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### 2.1.2 Assembly overview - rear seat backrest cover and padding

### 1 - Padding

- Additionally bonded to backrest pan with two double-sided adhesive strips
- Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 447](#)
- Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 450](#)
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

### 2 - Upholstery clip

- Cover with upholstery clip only
- For attaching cover to padding
- Renew after removing
- Re-attach at the same location using upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- when installing

### 3 - Backrest cover

Equipment versions:

- ◆ Fabric
- ◆ Leather
  - Removing and installing cover and padding ⇒ [page 447](#)
  - Separating cover and padding ⇒ [page 450](#)
  - For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

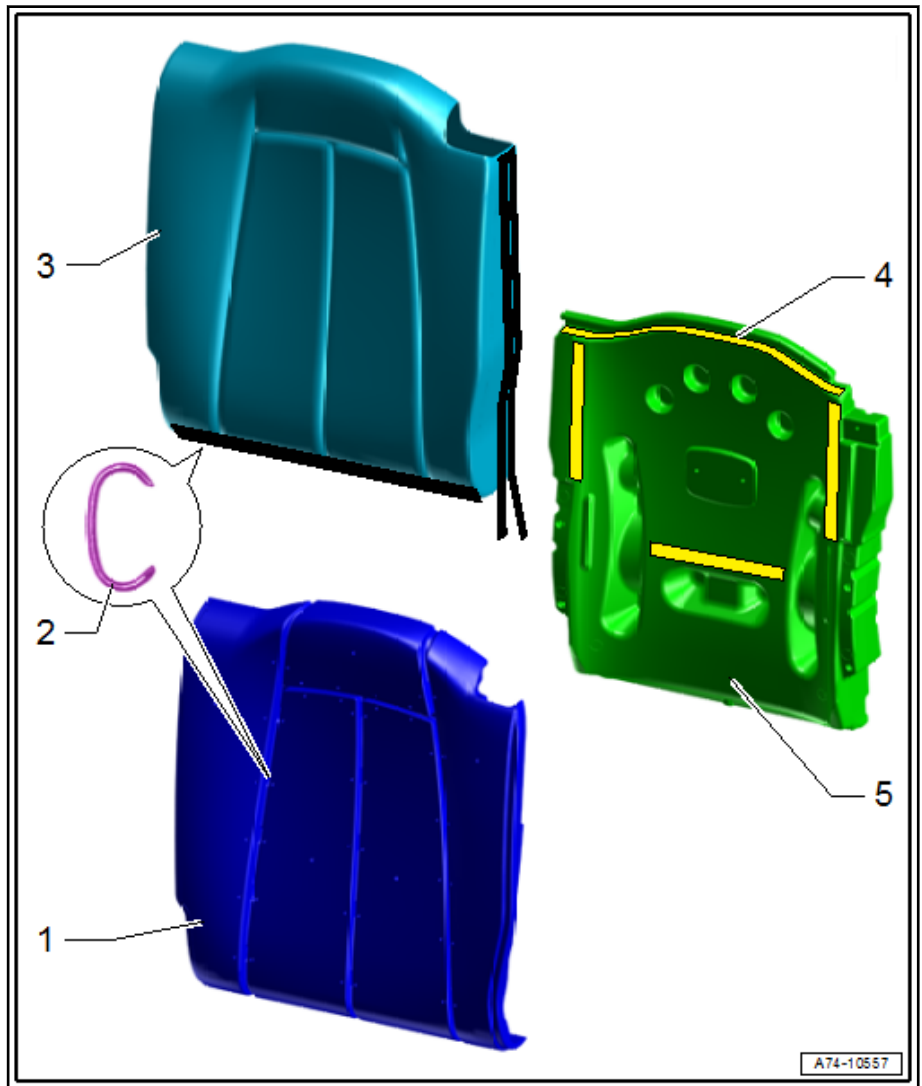
- After installing, make sure there are no creases

### 4 - Adhesive strip

- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

### 5 - Backrest pan

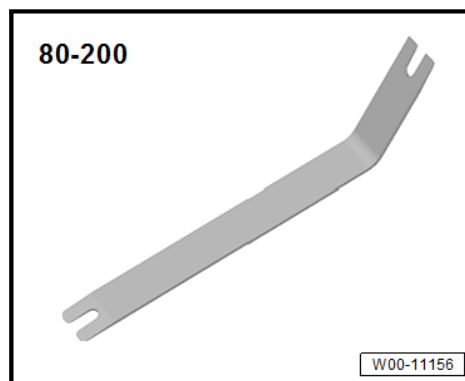
- For correct version, refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



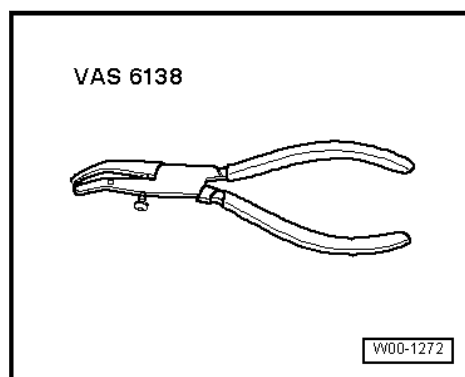
## 2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding

The removal and installation procedures are described for the left side of the vehicle as an example. **Special tools and workshop equipment required** not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

◆ Removal lever -80-200-

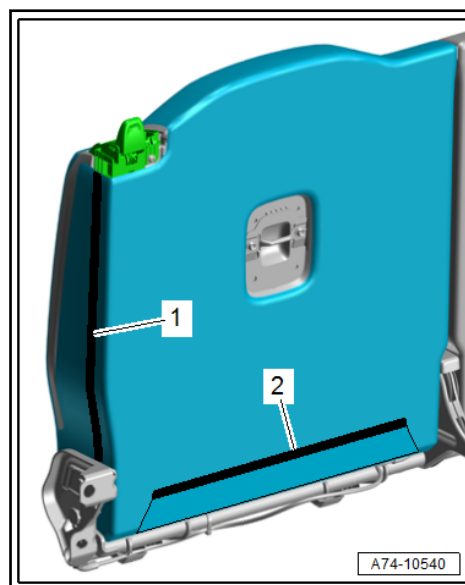


◆ Locking pliers for Audi A4 Cabriolet 2003> -VAS 6138-



◆ Double-sided adhesive tape ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

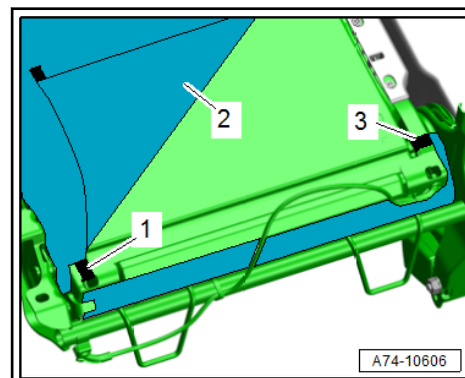
**Removing**



- Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ [page 397](#) .
- Remove cover for child seat anchor ⇒ [page 107](#) .
- Remove cover for retaining clip ⇒ [page 400](#) .
- Fold down one side of backrest.
- Cover with fastening strip: Open fastening strip -2- for cover using removal lever -80-200-.
- Cover with zip: Open zip -2- for cover using locking pliers for Audi A4 Cabriolet 2003> -VAS 6138-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- Open zip -1- for cover on both sides using locking pliers for Audi A4 Cabriolet 2003> -VAS 6138-.
- Disengage piping -1- of cover on both sides and fold cover -2- up.



- Disengage piping -3- of cover on both sides and carefully pull cover with padding towards front under backrest pan.
- Starting at bottom, carefully detach padding from adhesive strips on backrest pan.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - cover and padding](#), page 446

## 2.3 Detaching cover from padding

⇒ [b2.3.1 bench seat cover from padding](#), page 449

⇒ [c2.3.2 cover from padding - rear seat backrest](#), page 450

### 2.3.1 Detaching bench seat cover from padding

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

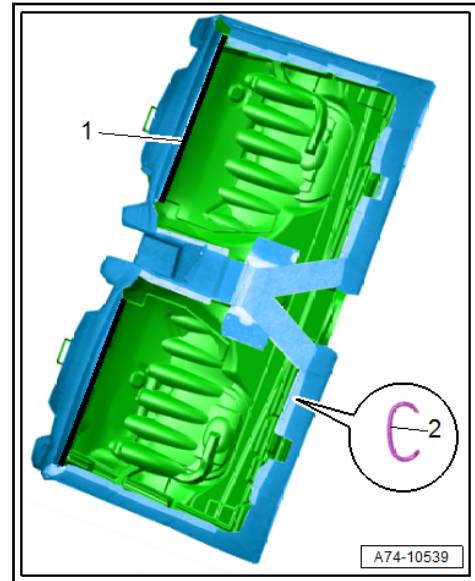
- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Removing



- Remove bench seat/individual seats => [page 395](#) .



### Caution

*Risk of damage to seat cover.*

- ◆ *Do not pull seat cover as it could tear.*

- Disengage piping -1- of cover from seat frame.
- Pinch off upholstery clips -2- for cover all around seat frame with pliers.
- Detach cover as far as possible from padding and cut through upholstery clips using pliers.
- Detach cover from padding.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

Notes for installation: [tightening torques, renewing components etc. => o2.1 overview - cover and padding, page 446](#)

### 2.3.2 Detaching cover from padding - rear seat backrest

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery clip pliers - V.A.G 1634 -

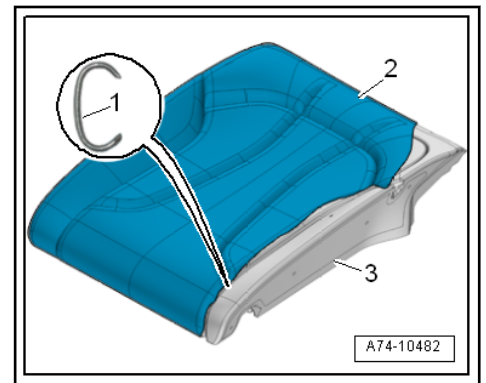
VAG 1634



W00-11535



## Removing



- Remove seat cover and padding ⇒ [page 447](#) .
- Detach cover -2- as far as possible from padding -3- and cut through upholstery clips -1- using pliers.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

**Notes for installation: tightening torques, renewing components etc. ⇒ [o2.1 overview - cover and padding](#), page 446**



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.